

Basic

Oxford Practice Grammar

with answers

irlanguage

Norman Coe
Mark Harrison
Ken Paterson

مرجع زبان ایرانیان

Basic

irlanguage

Oxford Practice Grammar

مرجع زبان ایرانیان

این مجموعه با لوگوی مرجع زبان ایرانیان
به صورت نشر بر خط و حامل به ثبت رسیده است.
کپی برداری از آن خلاف شرع، قانون و اخلاق است و شامل پیگرد خواهد شد.

Basic

Oxford Practice Grammar

with answers

Norman Coe
Mark Harrison
Ken Paterson

Contents

Introduction viii

Key to symbols ix

Tenses: present

1 **Be**: Present Simple (1) 2

2 **Be**: Present Simple (2) 4

3 Present Simple (1) 6

4 Present Simple (2) 8

5 Present Continuous (1) 10

6 Present Continuous (2) 12

7 Present Simple or Present Continuous 14

8 Imperative 16

Test A 18

Tenses: past

9 **Be**: Past Simple 20

10 Past Simple 22

11 Past Continuous 24

12 Past Simple or Past Continuous 26

13 Present Perfect (1) 28

14 Present Perfect (2) 30

15 Present Perfect (3) 32

16 Past Simple or Present Perfect 34

17 Present Perfect Continuous 36

18 Present Perfect Simple or Continuous 38

19 Past Perfect 40

20 **Used to** 42

Test B 44

Tenses: future

21 **Be going to** 46

22 **Will** and **shall** 48

23 **Will** or **be going to** 50

24 Present Continuous for the future 52

25 Present tense: **when, before, after, until,** etc. 54

26 Future 56

Test C 58

Sentences and questions

27 Nouns, verbs, adjectives, etc. 60

28 Word order: subject, verb, object 62

29 'Yes/no' questions 64

30 **Where, when, why, how** 66

31 **Who, what, which** 68

32 **How long/far/often ...?** 70

33 **What ... like?** 72

34 **Who** and **what**: subject and object 74

35 **Whose is this? ~ It's John's.** 76

36 Question tags 78

37 Short answers 80

38 **So am I, I am too, Neither am I,** etc. 82

Test D 84

Modal verbs

39 Ability: **can, can't, could, couldn't** ... 86
40 **Can/Could I? May I? Can/Could you?** ... 88
41 **Must, mustn't** ... 90
42 **Have to** ... 92
43 **Must/have to, mustn't/don't have to** ... 94
44 **Must, can't, may, might, could** ... 96
45 **Should, shouldn't** ... 98
46 **Should, ought to, had better** ... 100
47 **Need, needn't, needn't have** ... 102
48 **Had to do/go, should have done/gone** ... 104

Test E ... 106

Articles, nouns, pronouns, etc.

49 Articles (1): **a, an** or **the** ... 108
50 Articles (2): **a/an, the** or no article ... 110
51 Plural nouns; **one** and **ones** ... 112
52 **This, that, these, those** ... 114
53 Countable and uncountable nouns ... 116
54 **A, some, any, no** ... 118
55 **I** and **me** (subject and object pronouns) ... 120
56 **There** or **it/they** ... 122
57 **My, your; mine, yours** ... 124
58 **Myself, yourself,** etc.; **each other** ... 126
59 Direct and indirect objects ... 128
60 **Much, many; how much/many; more** ... 130
61 **A lot of, lots of, a little, a few** ... 132
62 **Something, anybody, nothing,** etc. ... 134
63 **Every/each; one/another/other/others** ... 136
64 **All, most, some, none** ... 138

Test F ... 140

Adjectives and adverbs

65 Adjectives (order) ... 142
66 Adjectives: **-ed** or **-ing** ... 144
67 Cardinal and ordinal numbers ... 146
68 Comparison: **(not) as ... as** ... 148
69 **Too** and **enough** ... 150
70 **So** and **such** ... 152
71 Comparative adjectives ... 154
72 Superlative adjectives ... 156
73 Adverbs (1): adjectives and adverbs ... 158
74 Adverbs (2): adverbs of frequency ... 160
75 Adverbs (3): place, direction, sequence ... 162
76 Adverb + adjective; noun + noun; etc. ... 164
77 Position of adverbs in a sentence ... 166

Test G ... 168

Prepositions

78 Prepositions of place and movement ... 170
79 Prepositions of time ... 172
80 **As/like; as if/as though** ... 174
81 **In; with;** preposition + **-ing** ... 176
82 Other uses of prepositions ... 178
83 Verb + preposition ... 180
84 Adjective + preposition ... 182

Test H ... 184

Verbs

85 **Have** and **have got** 186
86 **Make, do, have, get** 188
87 Phrasal verbs (1): meanings and types 190
88 Phrasal verbs (2): separability 192
89 Passive sentences (1) 194
90 Passive sentences (2) 196
91 **Have** (something) **done** 198
92 Infinitive with/without **to** 200
93 Verb + **-ing; like** and **would like** 202
94 Verb + **to** or verb + **-ing** 204
95 Purpose: **for ...ing** 206
96 Verb + object (+ **to**) + infinitive 208

Test I 210

Conditionals and reported speech

97 Zero Conditional and First Conditional 212
98 Second Conditional 214
99 Third Conditional 216
100 Reported speech (1) 218
101 Reported speech (2) 220
102 Reported questions 222

Test J 224

Building sentences

103 **And, but, so, both ... and, either,** etc. 226
104 **Because, in case, so, so that** 228
105 **Since, as, for** 230
106 **Although, while, however, despite,** etc. 232
107 Relative clauses (1) 234
108 Relative clauses (2) 236
109 Relative clauses (3) 238

Test K 240

Appendices

1 Nouns 242
2 Regular verbs 243
3 Irregular verbs 244
4 Adjectives and adverbs 245

Key to the exercises 246
Key to the tests 266

Exit test 270
Key to the Exit test 276

Index 277

Introduction

Oxford Practice Grammar is a series of three books, each written at the right level for you at each stage in your study of English. The series is intended for your use either in a classroom or when working independently in your own time.

The books are divided into units, each of which covers an important grammar topic. Each unit starts with an explanation of the grammar and this is followed by a set of practice exercises. Answers to the exercises are given at the back of the book.

You may want to choose the order in which you study the grammar topics, perhaps going first to those giving you problems. (Topics are listed in the Contents page at the front of each book and in the Index at the back.) Alternatively, you may choose to start at the beginning of each book and work through to the end.

Exam practice

The first level in the series is *Oxford Practice Grammar* – ***Basic***. This is suitable for elementary to pre-intermediate learners, and those working for the Oxford Test of English and Cambridge A2 Key and B1 Preliminary exams. The second is *Oxford Practice Grammar* – ***Intermediate*** for students who are no longer beginners but are not yet advanced in their use of English. It is suitable for those studying for the Oxford Test of English and Cambridge B2 First exam. *Oxford Practice Grammar* – ***Advanced*** is for those who have progressed beyond the intermediate level and who wish to increase their knowledge of English grammar and become more confident when using it. It helps students prepare for the C1 Advanced, C2 Proficiency, TOEFL, IELTS, and other advanced-level exams.

Oxford Practice Grammar – ***Basic*** is written for elementary to pre-intermediate students of English.

Grammar topics are explained simply and clearly and you are given lots of opportunity to practise.

Each new topic is presented on a left-hand page and the practice section follows on the same page or the facing page. You can therefore look across to the explanation while you are working through the exercises.

Appendices at the back of the book summarize how to form plurals of nouns, verb endings, comparative forms of adjectives, and adverbs. They also include a table of irregular verbs.

An exit test provides an opportunity for more practice, and prepares you for *Oxford Practice Grammar* – ***Intermediate***.

There is an interactive *Oxford Practice Grammar* website at www.oup.com/elt/practicegrammar.

Key to symbols

The symbol / (oblique stroke) between two words means that either word is possible. *We put **does** before **he/she/it*** means that *We put **does** before **he**, We put **does** before **she*** and *We put **does** before **it*** are all possible. In exercise questions this symbol is also used to separate words or phrases which are possible answers.

Brackets ( ) around a word or phrase in the middle of a sentence mean that it can be left out. *She said (that) she lived in a small flat* means that there are two possible sentences: *She said that she lived in a small flat* and *She said she lived in a small flat.*

The symbol ~ means that there is a change of speaker. In the example *When did Jasmine go to India? ~ In June.* the question and answer are spoken by different people.

The symbol ♦ in an exercise indicates that a sample answer is given.

1 Be: Present Simple (1)

1 Here are some examples of **be** in the Present Simple:

This is my brother. He's ten years old.
I'm a student. These are my books.
They aren't at home. They're at the theatre.

2 We form the Present Simple of **be** like this:

POSITIVE	FULL FORM	SHORT FORM
Singular	I am you are he/she/it is	I'm you're he's/she's/it's
Plural	we are you are they are	we're you're they're

NEGATIVE	FULL FORM	SHORT FORM
Singular	I am not you are not he/she/it is not	I'm not you aren't he/she/it isn't
Plural	we are not you are not they are not	we aren't you aren't they aren't

3 In speech, we usually use the short forms:

She's my sister. *He's my brother.*
I'm from Italy. *They're German.*

4 We use **be**:

- to say who we are:
  I'm Steve and this is my friend William. We're from Scotland.
  I'm Jessica and these are my sisters. This is Amber and this is Penelope. Amber and Penelope are doctors.
- to talk about the weather:
  It's cold today.
  It's a beautiful day.
  It's usually hot here
  It isn't very warm today.
- to talk about the time:
  It's ten o'clock.
  It's half past four.
  You're late!
- to talk about places:
  Milan is in the north of Italy.
  John and Mary are in Yorkshire.
- to talk about people's ages:
  My sister is six years old.

A Maria is from Brazil. She is writing about herself and her family. Put full forms of *be* in the gaps.

- ♦ I am a student from Brazil.
- ♦ My parents are not (not) rich.
1. My father ..... a teacher.
2. My mother ..... (not) Brazilian.
3. She ..... from America.
4. I ..... 20 years old.
5. My little brother ..... two.
6. My older brothers ..... (not) students.
7. They ..... in the army.
8. It ..... often very hot in Brazil.

B Now fill these gaps. This time, use short forms of *be*.

- ♦ I'm a doctor.
- ♦ I'm not (not) a bank manager.
1. She ..... (not) a teacher.
2. He ..... a student.
3. They ..... at home.
4. They ..... (not) in the park.
5. It ..... (not) cold today.
6. It ..... eight o'clock.
7. We ..... from Paris.
8. We ..... (not) from Bordeaux.
9. You ..... (not) 21 years old.
10. I ..... 24 years old.

C Choose words from the box to put in the gaps.

He's She's ~~They're~~ It's (x2) are is We isn't

♦ My parents live in Scotland. They're teachers.

1 New York ..... in England. ..... in America.

2 Paul ..... from Germany. ..... German.

3 My sister is a doctor. ..... 30 years old.

4 ..... six o'clock! ..... are late.

5 Look at the time! Chris and Mary ..... late.

D Look at these pictures. These people are saying who they are. Write sentences using the jobs from the box.

a pop star a farmer a bank manager ~~a footballer~~ a dentist a doctor
~~a police officer~~ an artist a teacher a film star a scientist a photographer

♦ Italy



Paolo Federico

names: I'm Paolo and this is Federico.

nationality: We're from Italy.

jobs: I'm a police officer and Federico is a footballer.

1 Sweden



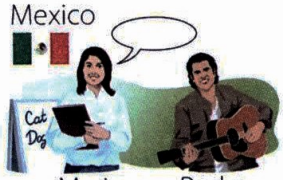
Bjorn Liv

names: .....

nationality: .....

jobs: .....

2 Mexico



Maria Pedro

names: .....

nationality: .....

jobs: .....

3 Australia



Jim Mary

names: .....

nationality: .....

jobs: .....

4 Japan



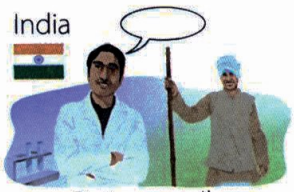
Tomoko Akira

names: .....

nationality: .....

jobs: .....

5 India



Rajiv Ikram

names: .....

nationality: .....

jobs: .....

2 Be: Present Simple (2)

1 We use **be**:

- to talk about how we feel:

I'm happy. *They're sad.*
They're bored. *She's tired.*
We're hungry. *I'm thirsty.*
He isn't afraid. *They're cold.*

- to greet people:

William: *Hello. How are you?*
Jasmine: *I'm fine thanks. How are you?*

- to apologize:

I'm sorry I'm late.

- to describe things:

It isn't expensive. It's cheap.
It's an old film. It isn't very good.
These photos are bad!

For other uses of **be**, see **Unit 1**.

2 We use **there** + **be** to talk about the existence of something. **There** + **be** can be used to talk about where things are:

Singular	*There's a supermarket in this street.* *There is a washing machine in the flat.*
Plural	*There are some good cafes in the centre of the town.*

We also use **there** + **be** to talk about when things happen:

There is a bus to London at six o'clock.
There are taxis, but there aren't any buses on Sunday.
There isn't another train to Manchester today.

3 We form questions with **be** in the Present Simple like this:

	QUESTIONS	
Singular	*Am I* *Are you* *Is he/she/it*	*late?*
Plural	*Are we* *Are you* *Are they*	*late?*

Here are some examples of questions using all the forms of **be**:

Am I late for the film?
Are you 20 years old?
Is he at home now?
Is she French or Italian?
Is it time to go home?
Are we ready to leave?
Are you both at university?
Are they in London today?

A Make sentences about the pictures using the words from the box. Use *He/She/They* and the Present Simple of *be*.

tired sad ~~thirsty~~ happy hungry bored afraid cold



♦ She's thirsty



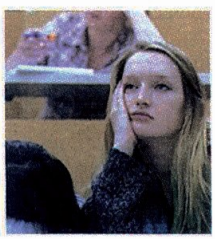
1 He .....



2 They .....



3 .....



4 .....



5 .....



6 .....



7 .....

B Use *there* + the correct form of *be* to say what we can and cannot find in the town of Smallwood.

♦ (a cinema: ✓) There's a cinema.
♦ (a river: ✗) There isn't a river.
♦ (restaurants: 10) There are ten restaurants.
1 (a castle: ✓) _____ a castle.
2 (baker's shops: 2) _____ two baker's shops.
3 (a zoo: ✓) _____ a zoo.
4 (banks: 6) _____ six banks.
5 (a luxury hotel: ✓) _____ a luxury hotel.
6 (a theatre: ✗) _____ a theatre.
7 (newsagents: 6) _____ six newsagents.
8 (many tourists: ✗) _____ many tourists.

C Write questions by putting the words in brackets ( ) in the correct order.

♦ (thirsty – you – are) Are you thirsty?
1 (a teacher – you – are) _____
2 (they – bored – are) _____
3 (is – afraid – he) _____
4 (she – tired – is) _____
5 (are – you – how) _____
6 (cold today – it – is) _____
7 (she – Spanish – is) _____
8 (they – from London – are) _____

D Complete the dialogues with the correct forms of *be*.

Steve: This ♦ is Jasmine, my sister.
Tom: Hello, Jasmine. [1] _____ you a student?
Jasmine: No, I [2] _____ a dentist. I work in Brighton.

Mike: How are you, Ellie?
Ellie: I [3] _____ fine, thanks.
Mike: [4] _____ you hungry?
Ellie: Yes. [5] _____ there a good restaurant near here?
Mike: Yes. There [6] _____ a good, and cheap, restaurant in Wellington Street.

E Write questions using the words in brackets ( ) and a form of *be*.

	QUESTIONS		ANSWERS
♦	(you/Spanish)?	Are you Spanish?	~ No, I'm French.
1	(you/hungry)?	_____?	~ No, I'm thirsty.
2	(she/your sister)?	_____?	~ No, she's my mother.
3	(I/late)?	_____?	~ No, you're on time.
4	(they/from America)?	_____?	~ No, they're from Canada.
5	(he/a tennis player)?	_____?	~ No, he's a footballer.
6	(you/happy)?	_____?	~ No, I'm sad.
7	(she/at home)?	_____?	~ No, she's at work.
8	(he/20)?	_____?	~ No, he's 18 years old.

3 Present Simple (1)

1 We form the Present Simple like this:

	POSITIVE
Singular	*I know* *you know* *he/she/it knows*
Plural	*we know* *you know* *they know*

*I **know** the answer.*
*She **starts** work at nine o'clock.*

We add **-s** after **he/she/it**:

I start → he starts *I live → she lives*

If a verb ends in **-ch**, **-o**, **-sh**, **-ss** or **-x**, we add **-es** after **he/she/it**:

I watch → he watches *you do → he does*
they go → it goes *we wash → she washes*

If a verb ends in a consonant (**b**, **c**, etc.) + **y** (e.g. **study**), we use **-ies** after **he/she/it**:

I study → he studies *I fly → it flies*

(For more examples, see **Appendix 2**, page 243.)

2 Now look at these examples of the negative:

*I **don't like** that music.*
*He **doesn't listen** to his teacher.*

NEGATIVE	
FULL FORM	SHORT FORM
I do not know. *You do not know.* *He/She/It does not know.*	*I don't know.* *You don't know.* *He doesn't know.*
We do not know. *You do not know.* *They do not know.*	*We don't know.* *You don't know.* *They don't know.*

Note that we say:
He does not know. (NOT ~~*He does not knows.*~~)

3 We use the Present Simple:

- to talk about things that happen regularly:
  *He **plays** golf every day.*
- to talk about facts:
  *She **comes** from France.* (= She is French.)
  *Greengrocers **sell** vegetables.*
  *I **don't speak** Chinese.*

A Add *-s* or *-es* to the verbs in the sentences if it is necessary. If it is not necessary, put a tick (✓) in the gap.

♦ He work~~s~~ in a bank.
♦ They live ✓ in France.
1 I watch ..... TV every day.
2 She go ..... to work by car.
3 The film finish ..... at ten o'clock.
4 We play ..... tennis every weekend.
5 They go ..... on holiday in August.
6 He speak ..... Italian and French.
7 She do ..... her homework every night.
8 We start ..... work at half past eight.

B Now finish these sentences using a verb from the box. Use each verb once. Remember to add *-s* or *-es* if necessary.

fly study finish ~~eat~~ sell write drink live

♦ He eat~~s~~ ..... toast for breakfast.
1 I ..... coffee three times a day.
2 My father ..... a new language every year.
3 She ..... to New York once a month.
4 He ..... a blog post every week.
5 They ..... in Ireland.
6 He ..... work at six o'clock.
7 I ..... fruit in a shop.

C Write sentences using the words in brackets ( ) and the negative form of the Present Simple.

♦ (He/not/live/in Mexico) He doesn't live in Mexico.

1 (She/not/work/in a bank) .....

2 (I/not/play/golf) .....

3 (Paul/not/listen/to music) .....

4 (We/not/speak/French) .....

5 (You/not/listen/to me!) .....

6 (My car/not/work) .....

7 (I/not/drink/tea) .....

8 (Michelle/not/eat/meat) .....

9 (I/not/understand/you) .....

D Complete the interview using the verbs from the box. Use each verb once.

leave start arrive ~~get~~ watch work brush eat have like drink go stop

Interviewer: How do you start the day, James?

James: Well, I ♦ get up at six o'clock. I get washed and dressed, and I [1] ..... breakfast at seven o'clock. After breakfast, I [2] ..... my teeth. I [3] ..... to work at eight o'clock.

Interviewer: When do you get to work?

James: I usually [4] ..... at my office at about half past eight. First, I [5] ..... a cup of coffee, and then I [6] ..... work at just before nine o'clock.

Interviewer: Where do you work?

James: I [7] ..... in a bank. I am a computer programmer. I [8] ..... my job. It's very interesting.

Interviewer: When do you eat lunch?

James: I [9] ..... work and I have lunch at one o'clock. I [10] ..... a cup of tea at half past three.

Interviewer: When do you finish work?

James: I [11] ..... the office at six o'clock. I eat dinner when I get home. Then I [12] ..... TV for an hour or two.

E Write facts about Jasmine using the table and the verbs in brackets ( ). A tick (✓) means that something is true. A cross (✗) means that something is not true.

♦	1	2	3	4
~~from Scotland~~ ✓	in a bank ✗	in a flat ✓	French ✓	new films ✗
~~from England~~ ✗	in a shop ✓	in a house ✗	Italian ✗	old films ✓

♦ (come) She comes from Scotland. She doesn't come from England.

1 (work) She ..... in a bank. She ..... in a shop.

2 (live) She ..... She .....

3 (speak) ....

4 (like) ....

4 Present Simple (2)

1 We use the Present Simple:

- to talk about feelings and opinions:



*I **like** pop music. I **don't like** classical music.*
*She **loves** football!*
*Raphael **wants** a new car.*
*I **don't want** a cup of tea, thanks.*
*He **feels** sick.*

- to talk about thoughts:



*I **don't think** she likes her new job.*
*I **don't know** the answer.*
*He **doesn't understand** me.*

For other uses of the Present Simple, see **Unit 3**.

2 We form Present Simple questions like this:

	QUESTIONS		
Singular	Do Does	I/you he/she/it	know?
Plural	Do Do Do	we you they	know?

Note that we put **do** before **I/you/we/they**:

__Do__ you __speak__ Spanish?
__Do__ you __work__ in the town centre?
__Do__ they __know__ the answer?

We put **does** before **he/she/it**:

__Does__ he __walk__ to work?
__Does__ Steve __enjoy__ his job?
__Does__ she __play__ the piano?

Note that we say:

Does he walk? (NOT ~~*Does he walks?*~~)

A Complete the sentences using the Present Simple form of the verbs from the box. Use each verb once.

like not have ~~love~~ feel think not like want not understand

♦ She thinks that films are fantastic! She loves films.
1 I _____ sick. Can I have a glass of water, please?
2 I don't know the answer because I _____ the question.
3 I _____ he's tired. He works too hard.
4 We _____ that new painting. We think it's terrible!
5 I want to call Jasmine, but I _____ her phone number.
6 They're thirsty. They _____ something to drink.
7 I _____ your new car. It's very nice. Was it expensive?

B Write sentences about Peter using the information in brackets ( ). (✓ = like, ✓✓ = love, ✗ = not like, ✗✗ = hate)

♦ (tennis: ✗) He doesn't like tennis.
♦ (music: ✓✓) He loves music.
1 (coffee: ✓) He _____
2 (films: ✗) He _____
3 (his job: ✓✓) _____
4 (fishing: ✗✗) _____
5 (holidays: ✓✓) _____
6 (golf: ✗) _____

C This is an interview with Mary Woods about herself and her husband, John. Write the questions using the ideas from the box.

like films	read books	listen to music	~~play golf~~
watch TV	play a musical instrument	go to the gym	go to the theatre
drive a car	like pop music	drink coffee	~~live in London~~
like dogs	speak any foreign languages		

	QUESTIONS	ANSWERS
♦	Do you live in London ?	~ Yes, I live in north London.
♦	Does John play golf ?	~ No, but he plays tennis.
1	..... ?	~ Yes, I speak French.
2	..... ?	~ Yes, I like some programmes on TV.
3	..... ?	~ Yes, he listens to music in the morning.
4	..... ?	~ No, but he loves cats.
5	..... ?	~ No, I don't like films.
6	..... ?	~ Yes, he has two cups in the morning.
7	..... ?	~ No, but I have a motorbike.
8	..... ?	~ Yes, he plays the piano.
9	..... ?	~ No, I prefer classical music.
10	..... ?	~ Yes, I love musicals.
11	..... ?	~ Yes, I read one book every week.
12	..... ?	~ No, but he likes running.

D You are on holiday, and you are in a Tourist Information Centre. Ask questions using the table below.

A	B	C
Do	~~you~~	stop at the railway station?
Does	~~the sports centre~~	finish before 11 o'clock?
	all the banks	start here?
	the number 38 bus	~~sell maps of the city?~~
	the restaurants	change tourists' money into pounds?
	the concert	sell souvenirs?
	the sightseeing tour	have a swimming pool?
	the museum	serve typical English food?

♦ Do you sell maps of the city?

1 ..... the sports centre .....

2 .....

3 .....

4 .....

5 .....

6 .....

7 .....

5 Present Continuous (1)

1 We form the Present Continuous like this:

be + -ing form
I am eating.

Here are the forms of the Present Continuous:

POSITIVE	
FULL FORM	*SHORT FORM*
I am eating. *You are eating.* *He/She/It is eating.*	*I'm eating.* *You're eating.* *He's eating.*
We are eating. *You are eating.* *They are eating.*	*We're eating.* *You're eating.* *They're eating.*

NEGATIVE	
FULL FORM	*SHORT FORM*
I am not eating. *You are not eating.* *He/She/It is not eating.*	*I'm not eating.* *You aren't eating.* *He isn't eating.*
We are not eating. *You are not eating.* *They are not eating.*	*We aren't eating.* *You aren't eating.* *They aren't eating.*

2 To make the **-ing** form, we add **-ing** to the verb:

listen → listening	*play → playing*
work → working	*read → reading*

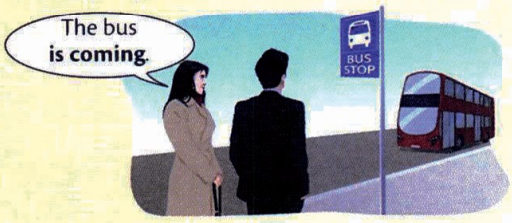
3 But notice these irregular spellings:

win → winning	*get → getting*
shop → shopping	*sit → sitting*
swim → swimming	*travel → travelling*
dance → dancing	*write → writing*
shine → shining	

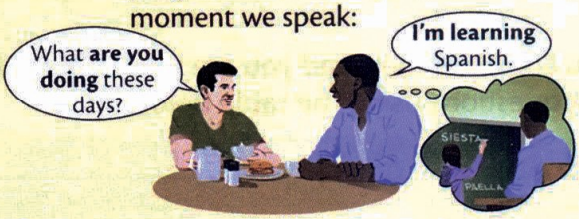
(For more details on the spelling of the **-ing** form, see **Appendix 2**, page 243.)

4 We use the Present Continuous:

- to talk about actions and situations in progress now:

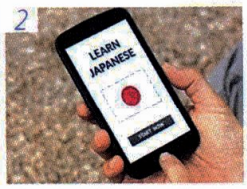


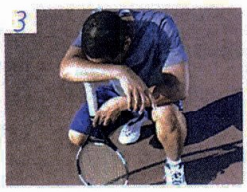
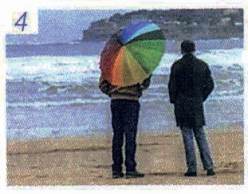
- to talk about actions and situations in progress around now, but not exactly at the moment we speak:



A Look at the pictures and the words in brackets ( ). Decide what is happening (✓) and what isn't happening (✗). Then write positive or negative sentences.





♦ (George/eat/breakfast) ✗ George isn't eating breakfast.
(George/sleep) ✓ George is sleeping.

1 (They/work) .....
(They/sit/in the garden) .....

2 (I/study/music) .....
(I/learn/Japanese) .....

3 (He/play/tennis) .....
(He/win) .....

4 (We/spend/a day at the seaside) .....
(The sun/shine) .....

B **Complete the postcard using the words in brackets ( ) in the Present Continuous. Use full forms (e.g. *is sitting*).**

Dear Peter,

Jenny and I ♦ *are staying* (stay) here for a week. The sun [1] ..... (shine) and it's very hot. We [2] ..... (sit) on the beach and I [3] ..... (drink) an orange juice. We [4] ..... (not/swim) because we're both tired. We [5] ..... (watch) the boats on the sea at the moment. They [6] ..... (travel) fast, but I can see 15 or 16. Jenny [7] ..... (read) her book, and I [8] ..... (write) all the postcards!

James and Jenny



C **Match the two halves of the sentences. Then put in the correct form of the verb in brackets ( ).**

♦ My aunt *is staying* ..... (stay) with us this week

1 I ..... (go) to work by bike this week

2 My father ..... (take) some medicine

3 Anna is not in the office this week

4 Olivia needs some exercise

5 We ..... (eat) in a restaurant this week

6 Charlotte doesn't feel well

7 Tom ..... (study) more now

a so he is feeling quite drowsy.

b because she ..... (work) at home.

c so she ..... (stay) at home today.

d so I am sleeping in the living room.

e because our oven is broken.

f because he wants to get a good mark.

g because I haven't got money for petrol.

h so she ..... (walk) to school this week.

♦ d 1 ..... 2 ..... 3 ..... 4 ..... 5 ..... 6 ..... 7 .....

irlanguage
مرجع زبان ایرانیان

6 Present Continuous (2)

1 Look at these questions:

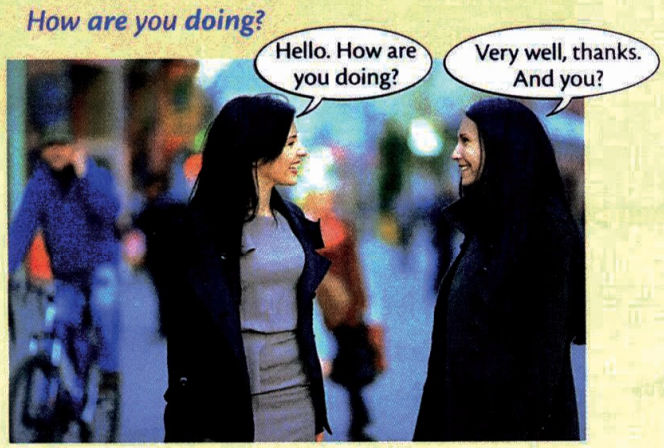
Are you enjoying that drink, Anna?
Is he watching TV at the moment?
Are they working hard?

2 We form Present Continuous questions like this:

	QUESTIONS	
Singular	Am I Are you Is she/he/it	winning?
Plural	Are we Are you Are they	winning?

3 Here are three common Present Continuous questions. They all mean 'How are you?':

How's it going?
How are you getting on?
How are you doing?



4 We do not usually use the Present Continuous to talk about opinions or thoughts:

I like tennis. I know your sister. (NOT ~~*I'm liking tennis. I'm knowing your sister.*~~)

We do not usually use these verbs in the Present Continuous:

like	*believe*	*hate*
love	*understand*	*know*
mean	*remember*	*want*

5 **think** and **have**:

- we cannot use **think** in the Present Continuous to express opinions:
  I think he's nice. (NOT ~~*I'm thinking he's nice.*~~)
- we can use **think** in the Present Continuous to talk about an action:
  She's thinking about the film.
- we cannot use **have** in the Present Continuous to talk about possessions:
  I have a ticket. (NOT ~~*I am having a ticket.*~~)
- we can use **have** to talk about actions:
  I'm having breakfast. He's having fun.

A Make questions by putting the words in brackets ( ) in the correct order.

♦ (enjoying – your work – you – are – ?) Are you enjoying your work?
1 (she – having lunch – is – ?) .....
2 (playing football – are – they – ?) .....
3 (the cat – sleeping – is – ?) .....
4 (the sun – is – shining – ?) .....
5 (you – are – coming – to the cinema – ?) .....
6 (listening – are – they – ?) .....
7 (eating – at the moment – she – is – ?) .....
8 (it – raining hard – is – ?) .....
9 (I – getting better – at tennis – am – ?) .....
10 (are – winning the match – we – ?) .....

B Make questions and answers using the words in brackets ( ) and the Present Continuous.

	QUESTIONS	ANSWERS
♦	(she/work/in Peru this year?) Is she working in Peru this year?	(No, she/study/in Mexico) ~ No, she's studying in Mexico.
1	(you/study/English at the moment?)	(Yes, I/work/hard) ~ .....
2	(they/listen/to the radio?)	(No, they/play/music) ~ .....
3	(Peter/wash/now?)	(Yes, he/have/a bath) ~ .....
4	(they/live/in Madrid at the moment?)	(Yes, they/learn/Spanish) ~ .....
5	(David/sing/in a band this year?)	(No, he/work/in a restaurant) ~ .....

C Put a tick (✓) next to the correct sentences, and a cross (✗) next to the incorrect sentences.

♦ She's liking pop music. ✗
1 They're enjoying the film.
2 We're loving ice cream.
3 She's believing he's right.
4 John's thinking about my idea.
5 He's having lunch at the moment.
♦ He's learning French. ✓
6 She's eating a banana.
7 He thinks it's a good idea.
8 'Huge' is meaning 'very big'.
9 Mick is knowing Jasmine.
10 She's hating classical music.

D Complete this conversation. Use the verbs in brackets ( ) in the Present Continuous.

Paul: Hi Steve! What are you doing?
Steve: ♦ I'm going (I/go) to the bank. What are you doing?
Paul: [1] ..... (I/shop). [2] ..... (I/look) for a new tennis racket. [3] ..... (I/play) a lot of tennis at the moment, and I need a new racket.
Steve: Where is Lily? Do you know?
Paul: Yes. She isn't in England at the moment. [4] ..... (She/work) in France for a month.
Steve: What [5] ..... (she/do) in France?
Paul: [6] ..... (She/sing) in a show.
Steve: Really? What about Jacob and Lucy? What [7] ..... (they/do)?
Paul: [8] ..... (They/study) for an exam. They're always in the library at the moment.
Steve: How is your sister? Is she all right?
Paul: Yes, she's fine, but she's tired. [9] ..... (We/paint) the living room. It's hard work.
Steve: Can I help you?
Paul: No, it's OK. My father [10] ..... (help).
Steve: Well, I hope you find a good racket.

7 Present Simple or Present Continuous

Compare the Present Simple and the Present Continuous:

1 We use the Present Simple to talk about facts (things which are true at any time):

*Anna **speaks** good Spanish.*

*Journalists **write** newspaper articles.*

*I **come** from Norway.* (= I am Norwegian.)

We use the Present Continuous to talk about actions in progress at the time of speaking:

*Anna's busy. She's **speaking** on the phone.*

*What **are you writing**? ~ An essay for college.*

*Look! The bus **is coming**.*

---

2 We use the Present Simple for situations that exist over a long time, and for actions that are repeated (e.g. people's habits, or events on a timetable):

*Mike **works** for an advertising company.*

*He **lives** in Paris.* (= His home is in Paris.)



*Jasmine **travels** a lot in her job.*

*I **do** a lot of sport.*

We can use words like **usually**, **often**, **every**:

*We **usually go** out to dinner at weekends.*

*I **often go** to football matches on Sundays.*

*The buses **leave** every hour.*

We use the Present Continuous for things that continue for a limited period of time around now (e.g. holidays, visits, temporary jobs, school or university courses):

*John **is working** in the USA for six months.*

*He's **living** in New York.*



*Jasmine's **travelling** around Europe for a month.*

*I'm **doing** a one-year course in tourism.*

*We're **painting** the flat.*

---

3 We use the Present Simple with thinking and feeling verbs (e.g. **know**, **forget**, **notice**, **understand**, **recognise**, **remember**, **like**, **love**, **hate**, **want**, **prefer**, **need**):

*I **don't know** which train to catch.*

We do not usually use the Present Continuous with thinking and feeling verbs:

NOT ~~*I'm knowing someone who lives in Venice.*~~

---

4 We use **have** in the Present Simple to talk about possession:

*I **have** a new car.*

We use **think** in the Present Simple to express opinions:

*I **think** she's interesting.*

We use **have** and **think** in the Present Continuous to talk about actions:

*I'm **having** fun.*

*He can't come, he's **having** dinner at the moment.*

*I **am thinking** about my work.*

A Complete the sentences with the verbs in brackets ( ). Use the Present Simple (*I do*) or the Present Continuous (*I am doing*).

♦ I *leave* (leave) home at seven o'clock every morning.

1 She usually _____ (work) in the Sales Department in London, but at the moment she _____ (do) a training course in Bristol.

2 Emilia _____ (wash) her hair every day.

3 He _____ (try) very hard in every game that he _____ (play).

4 Excuse me. I think that you _____ (sit) in my seat.

5 _____ (you/listen) to music very often?

6 Don't talk to me now. I _____ (write) an important essay.

7 Why _____ (they/drive) on the left in Britain?

8 It _____ (not/get) dark at this time of year until about ten o'clock.

9 It usually _____ (rain) here a lot, but it _____ (not/rain) now.

10 A: What are you doing?
B: I _____ (bake) a cake. Why _____ (you/smile)? _____ (I/do) something wrong?

B **This is Anna's first message in English to David. There are some mistakes in it. Cross out the incorrect forms and write in the correct form. Put a tick (✓) if the form of the verb is correct.**

Hi David,

I live ♦ ✓ in a large flat in Rome. ~~I'm having~~ ♦ have two sisters. They are called Rosa and Maria. We are getting up [1] at seven o'clock every morning, and we have [2] coffee and a small breakfast. I leave [3] the flat at eight and walk to the university. I am finishing [4] classes at five every day, and I arrive [5] home at six. This month I work [6] very hard for my first exams.

At the moment, I eat [7] breakfast in the kitchen of our flat: my mother drinks [8] coffee, and my sisters are messaging [9] their friends.

On Saturday afternoons I am playing [10] tennis with my friends, or I go [11] to the cinema. Today, I'm going to see a new English film! Sometimes I am watching [12] American films on TV, but I'm not understanding [13] the words! Are you liking [14] films?

With best wishes,

Anna

C **Write the sentences using the words in brackets ( ) and the Present Simple or the Present Continuous.**

♦ (Usually she/work/at the office, but this week she/work/at home.)
Usually she works at the office, but this week she's working at home.

1 (You/not/eat/very much at the moment. Are you ill?)

2 (She/know/three words in Italian!)

3 (I/take/the bus to work this week, but usually I/walk.)

4 (I/study/Japanese this year. It's very difficult.)

5 (you/watch/the television at the moment?)

6 (I/not/remember/the name of the hotel.)

7 (She/speak/three languages.)

8 (The sun/shine/. It's a beautiful day!)

irlanguage
مرجع زبان ایرانیان

8 Imperative

1 These are imperatives:

Go. Help. Come. Wait.

We use the imperative like this:

Come in! Have a cup of tea.
Turn left at the pharmacy.
Don't touch! It's hot.

Note that sometimes the imperative is one word, but often we give more information:

Help!
Help me!
Help me with my suitcase.

We can say **please** after an imperative to be more polite:

Help me with my suitcase, please.
Hurry up, please. We're late.
Come here, please.
Listen to me, please.

2 We form the negative like this:

Don't be late.
Don't forget your books!
Don't wait for me.

We normally use the short form **Don't**.

3 We use the imperative:

- to give instructions:
  Turn right at the corner.
  Don't forget your passport.
- to give warnings:
  Look out! There's a car coming.
  Be careful! That box is very heavy.
- to give advice:
  Have a rest. You look tired.
  Take a coat. It's cold today.
  Don't see that film. It's terrible!
- to ask people to do things:
  Come in please, and sit down.
  Listen to this song. It's wonderful.
  Pass the butter, please.
- to make offers:
  Have another orange juice.
  Make yourself a cup of coffee.
- to 'wish' things:
  Have a good trip!
  Have a nice holiday!

A Make complete sentences by filling the gaps with words and phrases from the box. Use each word or phrase once.

Turn left	Come in	~~Don't wait~~	Don't forget	Stop the car!	Help me!	Have
Don't listen	Pass	Don't be late!	Open	Come	Catch	Take

♦ Don't wait for me. I'm not coming tonight.
1 ..... an umbrella with you. It's raining.
2 ..... a rest. You look tired.
3 ..... at the end of the road.
4 ..... I can't swim!
5 ..... to take your passport.
6 ..... There's a cat in the road.
7 ..... to my party, please.
8 ..... your books at page 84.
9 ..... the salt, please.
10 ..... to that song. It's terrible.
11 ..... The bus leaves at nine o'clock.
12 ..... and have a glass of lemonade.
13 ..... the first train in the morning.

B Steve is emailing a friend. Put the verbs from the box into the gaps.

open forget ~~come~~ be bring have turn wait make

Hi Paul,

♦ *Come* ..... and see me next weekend. I'm staying in a house by the sea. Don't [1] ..... to bring your swimming costume with you! It isn't difficult to find the house. When you get to the crossroads in the town, [2] ..... right and drive to the end of the road. [3] ..... careful because it is a dangerous road! [4] ..... some warm clothes with you because it is cold in the evenings here. If I am not at home when you arrive, don't [5] ..... for me. The key to the house is under the big white stone in the garden. [6] ..... the front door and [7] ..... yourself a cup of tea in the kitchen! [8] ..... a good journey!

Best wishes,

Steve

C What are these people saying? Look at the pictures and match the words from the box to make imperatives.

♦



1



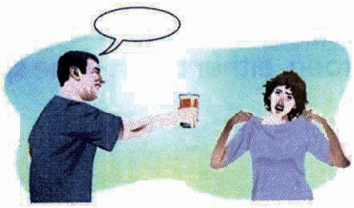
2



3



4



5



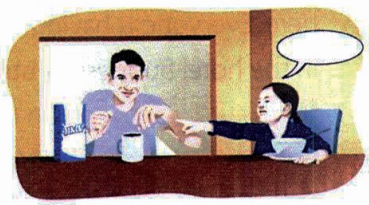
6



7



8



Come	right.
Have	out!
Pass	~~me!~~
Turn	an orange juice.
~~Help~~	your umbrella.
Don't	in.
Don't forget	to me!
Listen	the milk, please.
Look	touch it!

♦ *Help me!*

1 .....

2 .....

3 .....

4 .....

5 .....

6 .....

7 .....

8 .....

Test A Tenses – present

A **Kate and Amber are talking about their daily lives. Complete their conversation using the verbs in brackets ( ) in the Present Simple. Use short forms if you can.**

Kate: • Do you get up (you/get/up) early?

Amber: No, not really. [1] (My sister/go) to the bathroom first at about eight o'clock. [2] (not/get up) until about eight thirty. What about you?

Kate: Well, [3] (Mike/try) to get me up at about seven, but [4] (he/not/usually/succeed)!

Amber: [5] (I/be/not) very hungry in the morning. What about you? [6] (you/eat) much for breakfast?

Kate: [7] (I/not/usually/like) to eat much, but [8] (Mike/study) for an hour before breakfast, so [9] (he/eat) quite a lot.

Amber: [10] (he/have) a big lunch as well?

Kate: [11] (I/not/know). [12] (He/not/tell) me!

Amber: [13] (you/drive) to work?

Kate: Yes. [14] (there/not/be) any buses. What about you?

Amber: Well, [15] (my sister/want) to buy a new car, but at the moment, [16] (we/both/walk).

B **Felix is on holiday in Portugal with his wife, Charlotte, and their children, Tom and Ellie. He's emailing their oldest child, Simon, who is at home in England. If the Present Continuous form is correct, put a tick (✓). If it's wrong, either change the spelling or change it to the Present Simple.**

Hi Simon,

How are you geting • getting on? We're thinking • We think it's great here. Everyone is having • ✓ a good time. I'm siting [1] in the hotel Business Centre. Tom is swiming [2] in the pool. Ellie is lying [3] on the beach, and Charlotte is shoping [4]. We're liking [5] Portugal. We're all relaxing. [6]. What are you doing? Are you working hard [7] at the moment? I'm knowing [8] your exams start tomorrow. Good luck! Is it raining [9] in England? The sun is shineing [10] here, of course! I'm learning [11] a bit of Portuguese, but not very much. I'm understanding [12] some of the things that people say, but only if the words are similar to English. Hope to hear from you soon!

Love,

Dad

C **Hazel and Isaac are on the phone. Complete their conversation using the verbs in brackets ( ) in either the Present Simple or Present Continuous. Use short forms if you can.**

Isaac: ♦ Are you working ? (you/work)

Hazel: Yes. [1] (I/finish) a piece of homework for tomorrow. Why? What are you doing?

Isaac: Well, [2] (I/think) about my homework, but I'm afraid [3] (I/not/actually/do) it at the moment. I'm tired and bored. [4] (you/want) to go out?

Hazel: No. Look at the weather. [5] (it/rain). [6] (I/never/go out) in the rain. By the way, [7] (you/know) the new girl in our class, the one with glasses? [8] (I/think) [9] (she/come) from Venezuela. Anyway, [10] (she/stay) with Peter's family this month.

Isaac: Yes, I know. [11] (she/do/well) at school, isn't she? Peter says [12] (she/speak) three languages: Spanish, English and French. [13] (I/not/speak/any languages) other than English!

D **This is the opening part of a book. One unnecessary word has been crossed out already as an example. Find 21 more and cross them out.**

Today is the 1 June 1964. The sun ~~shines~~ is shining and the birds sing are singing. What is does everyone doing do? Well, Mrs Green is reads reading a newspaper. She is reads reading a newspaper every day before breakfast. Her husband, Mr Green, is danceing dancing in the garden. He likes is liking dancing in the morning.

Have you another cup of coffee, darling', says Mr Green.

But I'm still drink drinking my first cup, dear', replies Mrs Green, 'and anyway, where's our daughter today? She is usually bringing brings me my coffee.'

Mary,' says Mr Green (but he doesn't stop dance dancing), 'she's she works working in London this week. Don't you remember?'

Stopping Stop dancing and listening listen to me. I never forget forgetting anything. I was just giving you a little test. Anyway, it's time for work.'

'Alright, darling, but don't forget not your briefcase.'

Thank you, dear. Don't dancing dance too hard!'

E **It's the beginning of a new term at university. Complete these sentences for new students, using the words from the box.**

~~leave (✗)~~ show (✓) smoke (✗) ~~work (✓)~~ check (✓) give (✗) copy (✗)

♦ Work hard, but take a break now and again!

♦ Don't leave your bags or coats in the lecture hall.

1 ..... that you know all the examination dates.

2 ..... your computer password to another student.

3 ..... your ID card when you enter the building.

4 ..... in the lecture halls or classrooms.

5 ..... your essays from the Internet!

irlanguage
مرجع زبان ایرانیان

9 Be: Past Simple

1 We form the Past Simple of **be** like this:

	POSITIVE
Singular	*I **was***
	*you **were***
	*he/she/it **was***
Plural	*We/you/they **were***

	NEGATIVE	
	FULL FORM	SHORT FORM
Singular	*I **was not***	*I **wasn't***
	*you **were not***	*you **weren't***
	*he/she/it **was not***	*he/she/it **wasn't***
Plural	*we/you/they **were not***	*we/you/they **weren't***

	QUESTIONS	
Singular	*Was I*	*right?*
	Were you	
	Was he/she/it	
Plural	*Were we/you/they*	*right?*

Here are some examples with **was** and **were**:

*I **was** in New York last week.*
*We **were** at home yesterday evening.*
*They **weren't** late this morning.*
Was it a good film?

2 Look at these examples of how we use the Past Simple of **be**:

▶ **was/were** + facts about the past:

*John F. Kennedy **was** an American president.*
*Our first house **was** in the centre of town.*
A: *Were your answers correct?*
B: *No, they **were** all wrong!*
*Olivia **wasn't** at the party.*

▶ **was/were** + place and time:

	+ PLACE	+ TIME
*We **were***	*in Spain*	*in June.*
*She **wasn't***	*at home*	*last night.*

*George and Joanna **weren't** in London at the weekend. They **were** in Brighton.*
*Steve and Mary **were** here at six o'clock.*

▶ **was/were** + adjective (e.g. **cold**, **tired**):

*It **was cold** yesterday.*
*They **were tired** after the journey.*
*The train **was late** again this morning.*
A: *Were your exams easy?*
B: *The first exam **was** easy, but the second one **wasn't**.*

A Complete the sentences using *was* or *were*.

♦ Today I am happy but yesterday I was sad.
1 Now Jasmine is at home but last week she ..... on holiday.
2 Today it's raining but yesterday it ..... sunny.
3 This year there is a jazz festival here and last year there ..... a pop festival.
4 Today Mr Brown is at work but yesterday he ..... ill.
5 These days there are houses here but 100 years ago there ..... trees.
6 Today I feel fine but yesterday I ..... in bed all day.
7 My mother is a manager now but she ..... a shop assistant last year.
8 Today is Saturday and we are at home, but yesterday we ..... at school.
9 This summer we are staying at home but last summer we ..... in Greece.
10 Today Tina and Jack are tired because yesterday they ..... at the gym.

B Mary spent last weekend in Madrid. Ask her some questions using the words in brackets ( ) and *was* or *were*.

♦ (your hotel/good?) Was your hotel good?
1 (your room/comfortable?) .....
2 (the weather/nice?) .....
3 (the streets/full of people?) .....
4 (the shops/expensive?) .....
5 (the city/exciting at night?) .....
6 (the museums/interesting?) .....
7 (the people/friendly?) .....
8 (your flight/OK?) .....

C George and Sally have been married for 50 years. They are talking about their first house. Complete their conversation using words from the box, and following the model of the two examples.

new Italian ~~big~~ green cheap ~~cold~~ bad

George: The house was warm.
Sally: No, it ♦ wasn't warm, it was cold.
George: The garden was small.
Sally: No, it ♦ wasn't small, it was big.
Sally: The neighbours were French.
George: No, they [1] .....
George: The living room was red.
Sally: No, it [2] .....
Sally: Our first chairs were expensive.
George: No, they [3] .....
George: The kitchen was old.
Sally: No, it [4] .....
George: The local shops were good.
Sally: No, they [5] .....

D Complete these conversations with *was, wasn't, were,* or *weren't.*

Peter: ♦ Was ..... Paul at work today?
Julie: No, he [1] ..... in the office. I think he's sick.

Henry: [2] ..... you in South America last year?
Steve: Yes. I [3] ..... in Bolivia on business, and then my wife and I [4] ..... in Brazil for a holiday.

Olivia: Raphael and I [5] ..... at home in London last week. We [6] ..... at Mike's house in Cornwall. It was lovely there. Do you know Mike?
Jasmine: Yes, I [7] ..... at Mike's party in Oxford in the summer. [8] ..... you there?
Olivia: No, we weren't there. Raphael and I [9] ..... in Portugal in the summer.

10 Past Simple

1 We form the Past Simple of regular verbs by adding **-ed** to the verb:

walk → walked	*watch → watched*
open → opened	*ask → asked*

There are some exceptions:

- verbs ending with **-e**:

+ -d:	*live → lived*	*like → liked*

- verbs ending with a consonant and **-y**:

-y → -ied:	*apply → applied*	*try → tried*

- most verbs ending with one vowel and one consonant:

-p → -pped:	*stop → stopped*	*plan → planned*

(For more details on the form of the Past Simple, see **Appendix 2,** page 243.)

2 Many verbs have an irregular Past Simple form:

do → did	*have → had*
take → took	*buy → bought*
come → came	*stand → stood*
find → found	*ring → rang*
go → went	*say → said*

(For more details, see **Appendix 3**, page 244.)

3 We form the negative with **didn't** and the infinitive (e.g. **do**, **take**, **understand**):

*I **didn't understand**.* (NOT ~~*didn't understood*~~)

We form questions with **did** and the infinitive (e.g. **watch**):

*Did you **watch** the film?*

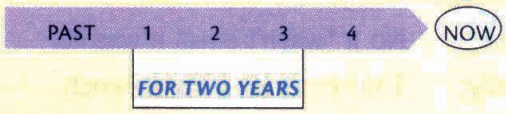
4 We use the Past Simple to talk about an action or situation in the past which is finished. We often say when it happened (e.g. **yesterday**, **last night**):

*Chris **phoned** me **yesterday**. He **wanted** to ask me something.*

*Did you **enjoy** the concert **last night**?*

5 We can use the Past Simple with **for** to talk about something that continued for a period of time, and ended in the past:

*I **lived** in Rome **for two years**. Then I went to work in Japan.*



A Put a tick (✓) next to the correct forms of the Past Simple, and cross out those which are incorrect. You can look at **Appendix 3**, page 244, before you do the exercise.

walked ✓	drinked	went	played	writed	swam
~~taked~~	wrote	cooked	gived	spent	finded
drank	asked	flew	made	sended	buyed
gave	meeted	took	left	found	winned
met	passed	stoped	followed	sent	eated
won	cryed	comed	drove	bought	brought
leaved	swimmed	cried	stopped	ate	crossed

B Complete the sentences using the Past Simple form and the words in brackets ( ).

♦ We went (go) on holiday to Scotland last year.

1 I ..... (take) a taxi from the airport to the city centre.

2 We ..... (walk) to the park and then we ..... (play) tennis.

3 The man in the shop ..... (say) something to the woman, but she ..... (not/hear) him.

4 I ..... (ring) the doorbell and a woman ..... (open) the door.

5 I ..... (download) three films at the weekend, but I only ..... (watch) one.

6 A: ..... (you/understand) the film?
B: No. I ..... (try) to understand it, but the actors ..... (speak) very quickly.

7 A: ..... (you/buy) some clothes at the market?
B: Yes, I ..... (buy) a pair of trousers and a shirt.

8 A: ..... (you/enjoy) the festival?
B: Yes. It ..... (not/rain) and we ..... (listen) to some good music.

C **Make sentences using the Past Simple form and the words in brackets ( ).**

♦ (When/you/leave/the party?) *When did you leave the party?*

1 (When/you/finish/your exams?)
.....

2 (I/wait/for an hour, but he/not/phone.)
.....

3 (you/watch/the news on TV last night?)
.....

4 (Mark/stop/playing tennis, and he/start/playing golf instead.)
.....

5 (He/ask/me a question, but I/not/know/the answer.)
.....

6 (I/live/there for a few years, but I/not/like/the place.)
.....

D **It's the beginning of a new term at university. Two students, Nick and Elliot, are talking about the summer holidays. Complete their conversation using the Past Simple form of the words in brackets ( ).**

Nick: What ♦ *did you do* ..... (you/do) in the summer?

Elliot: I [1] ..... (take) a trip around Europe by train.

Nick: [2] ..... (you/go) on your own, or with some friends?

Elliot: A couple of friends [3] ..... (come) with me.

Nick: How many countries [4] ..... (you/visit)?

Elliot: I [5] ..... (go) to six or seven countries. I [6] ..... (have) a great time, and I really [7] ..... (love) all of them.

Nick: Which one [8] ..... (you/like) most?

Elliot: Sweden, I think. I [9] ..... (enjoy) exploring the marvellous countryside and I [10] ..... (take) lots of photographs.

Nick: When [11] ..... (you/arrive) back home?

Elliot: Last week. I'm still rather tired.

11 Past Continuous

Tenses: past

1 We form the Past Continuous like this:

POSITIVE		
I/He/She/It	was	waiting.
You/We/They	were	

NEGATIVE	FULL FORM	SHORT FORM	
I/He/She/It	was not	wasn't	waiting.
You/We/They	were not	weren't	waiting.

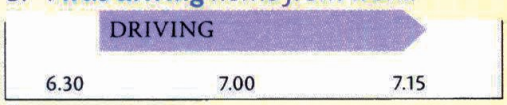
QUESTIONS	
Was I/he/she/it	waiting?
Were you/we/they	

(For rules on the spelling of **-ing** forms (e.g. **waiting**), see **Appendix 2**, page 243.)

2 Look at these examples:

A: *What **were** you **doing** at seven o'clock last night?*

B: *I **was driving** home from work.*



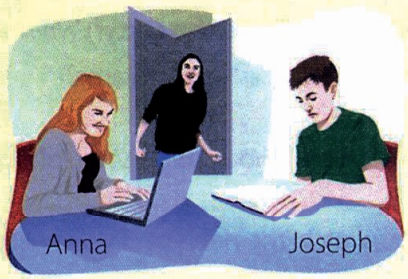
*I **was living** in Japan in 2001. (I lived there from 1999 to 2003.)*

We use the Past Continuous for an action or situation that was in progress at a particular time in the past (e.g. at 7 p.m., in 2001).

3 Now look at this:

*When I **walked** into the room, Anna **was working** on her laptop and Joseph **was reading**.*

We use the Past Simple (walked) for a completed action. We use the Past Continuous (was working) for an action in progress in the past.



4 **We can use when or while before the Past Continuous:**

*I met her **when/while** we **were working** for the same company. (**when** = during the time)*

We can only use when (NOT ~~while~~) before the Past Simple:

***When** I **met** her, we were working for the same company. (**when** = at the time)*

A Complete the sentences using the Past Continuous form of the words in brackets ( ).

♦ It was snowing (snow) when I left home this morning.

1 I tried to explain my problem to her, but she _____ (not/listen).

2 He _____ (talk) on the phone when I arrived.

3 A lot of people _____ (wait) for the seven-thirty bus last night.

4 I _____ (live) in London when I met them.

5 I nearly had an accident this morning. A car _____ (come) towards me, but I moved quickly out of the way.

6 At the end of the first half of the game, they _____ (win).

7 It was a sunny afternoon and people _____ (sit) on the grass in the park. Then it suddenly started to rain.

8 Which hotel _____ (you/stay) in when you lost your passport?

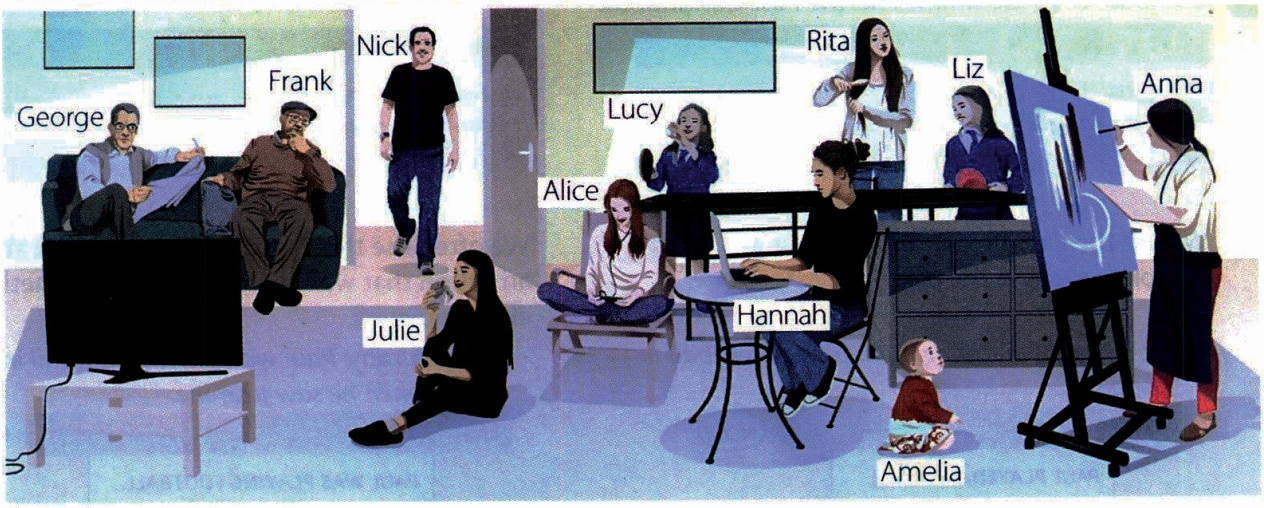
9 Fortunately, I _____ (not/drive) too fast when the child walked into the road in front of me.

10 I looked out of the window, and I saw that it _____ (not/rain) any more.

11 What _____ (you/do) at three o'clock yesterday afternoon?

B Describe what the people in the picture were doing when Nick came into the room. Use the correct verb from the box in the Past Continuous.

brush watch ~~read~~ listen write eat paint sit play



♦ George was reading a newspaper.

1 Julie ..... a sandwich.
2 Lucy and Liz ..... table tennis.
3 Frank ..... television.
4 Amelia ..... on the floor.
5 Hannah ..... an essay.
6 Rita ..... her hair.
7 Alice ..... to some music.
8 Anna ..... a picture.

C Look at the information about Sian and Nathan. Complete the sentences about them using the Past Continuous (*I was doing*) or the Past Simple (*I did*).

SIAN	
2000–06	lived in New York
2003–06	studied at university
2006	left university
2006–10	worked as a translator
2009	met Nathan
2012	married Nathan

NATHAN	
2002–10	lived in Washington
2003–05	did a course in computing
2005–10	worked as a computer programmer
2009	met Sian
2010–15	ran his own company
2012	married Sian

♦ In 2002, Sian was living in New York.

1 In 2004, Nathan ..... in Washington.
2 In 2004, Sian ..... at university.
3 In 2004, Nathan ..... a course in computing.
4 When Sian ..... university in 2006, Nathan ..... as a computer programmer.
5 When Nathan ..... Sian, she ..... as a translator.
6 While Sian ..... as a translator, she ..... Nathan.
7 In 2012, Nathan ..... his own company.
8 While he ..... his own company, Nathan ..... Sian.

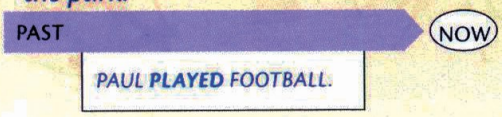
12 Past Simple or Past Continuous

1 Compare the Past Simple and the Past Continuous:

PAST SIMPLE	PAST CONTINUOUS
*He **talked** to her last week.*	*He **was talking** to her when I saw him.*
*I **didn't talk** to her yesterday.*	*I **wasn't talking** to anyone, I was watching the TV.*
*Did you **talk** to your sister?*	*Were you **talking** to her before I came?*

2 We use the Past Simple to talk about a complete event in the past:

*Last Saturday morning, Paul **played** football in the park.*

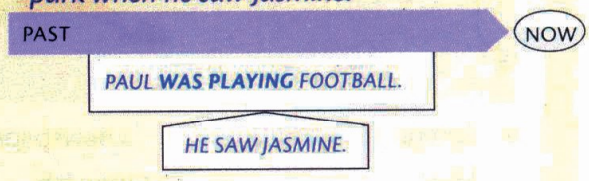


Here are some more examples:

*On Sunday I **made** a cake.*
*It **rained** a lot on Saturday morning.*

We often use the Past Continuous to talk about an action that was in progress, when something else happened:

*Last Saturday, Paul **was playing** football in the park when he saw Jasmine.*



Here are some more examples:

*My phone rang while I **was making** a cake.*
*It **was raining** when we left home.*

3 We often use the Past Simple to talk about one event that followed another event:

*When Anna James **left** university, she **went** to work for a bank. She **left** the bank after five years, and **wrote** a book which ...*

In a story we often use the Past Continuous to say what was in progress, when something happened:

*The sun **was shining**. People **were sitting** under the trees or **walking** around the park. Suddenly a car **drove** into the park ...*

A Use the Past Simple and the Past Continuous to make sentences from the words in brackets ( ).

♦ (The police/arrive/while/I/have/breakfast)
The police arrived while I was having breakfast.

1 (The storm/start/while/they/drive/home)

2 (I/see/an accident/while/I/wait/for the bus)

3 (Mary/go/to several concerts/while/she/stay/in London)

♦ (I/have/breakfast/when/the police/arrive)
I was having breakfast when the police arrived.

4 (My father/cook/the dinner/when/he/burn/his fingers)

5 (The soldiers/prepare/to leave/when/the bomb/explode)

B **Complete these texts using the Past Simple or the Past Continuous of the verbs in brackets ( ).**

♦ Beethoven wrote (write) nine symphonies; he was writing (write) another symphony when he died.

1 Last Saturday Tom wanted to make two salads. He _____ (make) the first one in five minutes. He _____ (make) the second one when his guests _____ (arrive), and they _____ (help) him to finish it.

2 The artist Gaudí _____ (design) several houses in Barcelona, Spain. Later he _____ (start) work on a church. He _____ (work) on the church when he _____ (die).

3 Last month a bank robber _____ (escape) while the police _____ (take) him to prison. Later they _____ (catch) him again, and this time they _____ (lock) him up without any problem.

4 Raphael's football team were lucky last Saturday. After 20 minutes they _____ (lose), but in the end they _____ (win) the game by four goals to two.

5 John Lennon _____ (sing) and _____ (play) on many records with the Beatles. After that he _____ (record) several songs without the Beatles. He _____ (prepare) a new record when Mark Chapman _____ (shoot) him.

6 The evening was getting darker; the street lights _____ (come) on. People _____ (hurry) home after work. I _____ (stand) in a queue at the bus stop. Suddenly, somebody _____ (grab) my bag.

C **A police officer is interviewing Mary Croft about last Friday evening. Look at the pictures and complete the conversation. Use the Past Simple or the Past Continuous of the words in brackets ( ).**



Police officer: What time ♦ did you get (you/get) home from work?

Mary: At about six o'clock.

Police officer: And what [1] _____ (you/do) after you got home?

Mary: I read the news.

Police officer: Did anything happen while [2] _____ (read)?

Mary: Yes, my phone [3] _____ (ring).

Police officer: What [4] _____ (you/do) when your husband came home?

Mary: I was watching TV, and I [5] _____ (drink) a cup of coffee.

Police officer: Did you and your husband stay at home?

Mary: No, I [6] _____ (drink) my coffee. Then I put on my raincoat, and we [7] _____ (go) out at seven o'clock.

Police officer: Why [8] _____ (you/put) your raincoat on?

Mary: Because it [9] _____ (rain), of course.

13 Present Perfect (1)

1 We form the Present Perfect using the present tense of **have** + a past participle:

POSITIVE	
FULL FORM	SHORT FORM
I/you **have arrived**	I've arrived
he/she/it **has arrived**	he's arrived
we/you/they **have arrived**	we've arrived

NEGATIVE	
FULL FORM	SHORT FORM
I/you **have not arrived**	**haven't arrived**
he/she/it **has not arrived**	**hasn't arrived**
we/you/they **have not arrived**	**haven't arrived**

QUESTIONS
Have I/you **arrived?**
Has he/she/it **arrived?**
Have we/you/they **arrived?**

2 Regular past participles end in **-ed** or **-d**:

played travelled arrived washed

(For more regular past participles see **Appendix 2**, page 243.)

Many past participles are irregular:

buy → bought make → made go → gone

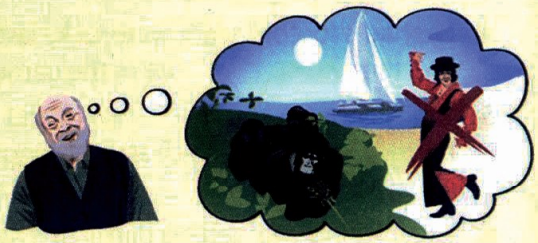
(For irregular past participles see **Appendix 3**, page 244.)

3 We use the Present Perfect:

- to talk about recent actions:

At 18.00, Anna arrived home.
At 18.01, we can say: *Anna **has arrived** home.*
From 18.30 to 19.00, Anna ate her dinner.
At 19.01, we can say: *She's **eaten** her dinner.*

- to talk about our lives:



*I've **sailed** across the Atlantic.*
*I've **seen** gorillas in Africa.*
*I **haven't danced** the Flamenco.*

4 When we ask people about their lives, we often use **ever** (= at any time):

*Have you **ever** been to Australia?*
ANSWER: *Yes, I have./No, I haven't.*

When people talk about their lives, they sometimes use **never** (= not at any time):

*I've **never** learnt French.*

Note that **ever** and **never** come before the past participle.

A Use short forms (*I've seen, she's gone*) of the Present Perfect to make positive or negative sentences with the words in brackets ( ).

♦ (He/lose/his passport.) He's lost his passport.
♦ (She/not/see/her sister.) She hasn't seen her sister.
1 (We/finish/our work.) .....
2 (They/buy/a new house.) .....
3 (They/not/phone/the doctor.) .....
4 (They/go/to the cinema.) .....
5 (You/eat/four bananas!) .....
6 (You/not/take/any photographs.) .....

Now use the words in brackets ( ) and the Present Perfect to make questions.

♦ (you/see/John?) Have you seen John?

7 (you/be/to Canada?) .....

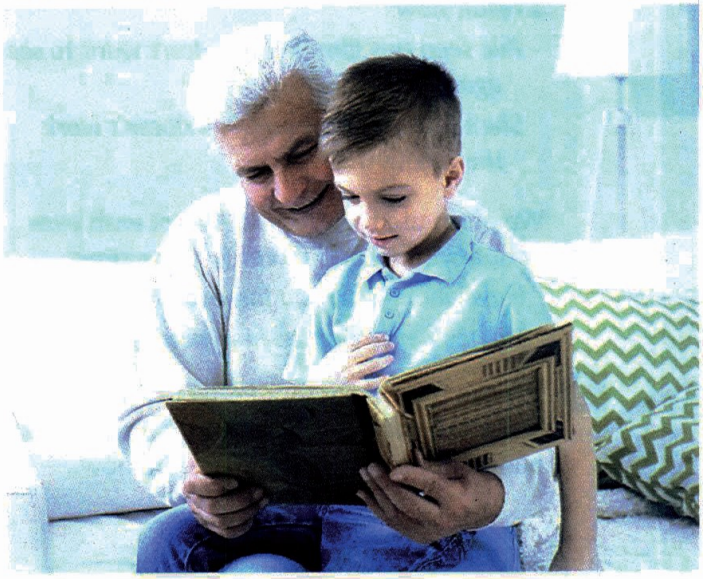
8 (they/cook/our breakfast?) .....

9 (Jasmine/make/any mistakes?) .....

10 (we/visit/all the museums?) .....

B **James is talking about his life. Put the past participle of the verbs in brackets ( ) in the gaps.**

I've ♦ *seen* (see) a lot of beautiful places in my life, and I've [1] ..... (do) a lot of interesting things. I've [2] ..... (travel) in North and South America, for example. I've [3] ..... (visit) all the big American cities. I've [4] ..... (drive) across Mexico. I haven't [5] ..... (be) to Argentina, but I've [6] ..... (work) in Peru and Bolivia. I've [7] ..... (swim) in the Pacific Ocean, the Atlantic Ocean, and the Mediterranean Sea. I've [8] ..... (eat) in the best restaurants in Paris, and I've [9] ..... (sing) Italian songs in Rome. I haven't [10] ..... (make) much money in my life, but I've [11] ..... (meet) a lot of interesting people and I've [12] ..... (take) a lot of wonderful photographs!



C **Read the questions. If they refer to a recent event, put a tick (✓). If they refer to someone's life, rewrite the sentence using *ever*.**

♦ Have you had coffee? ✓

♦ Have you been to Jamaica? Have you *ever* been to Jamaica?

1 Have you bought your ticket? .....

2 Have you flown in a helicopter? .....

3 Have you washed your hands? .....

4 Have you spoken to a prince or princess? .....

5 Have you had anything to drink? .....

D **Write true short answers (*Yes, I have./No, I haven't.*) to the following questions.**

1 Have you ever been to New York? .....

2 Have you bought a newspaper this week? .....

3 Have you played a computer game today? .....

4 Have you ever made a grammatical mistake in English? .....

5 Have you learnt something new today? .....

6 Have you ever danced the tango? .....

7 Have you used your phone yet today? .....

14 Present Perfect (2)

1 We use the Present Perfect to talk about something that happened in the past, but we do not say exactly when it happened:

I've seen this film before. (= before now)

We often use the Present Perfect in this way for things that happened in the past, and that have a result now:

I've seen this film before. I don't want to see it again now.

She's left the company. She doesn't work there now.

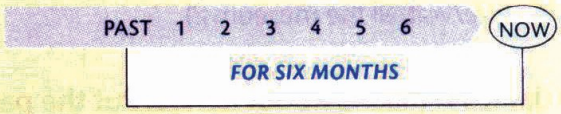
We often use the Present Perfect with **ever** (= at any time) and **never** (= at no time):

Have you ever met a famous person?

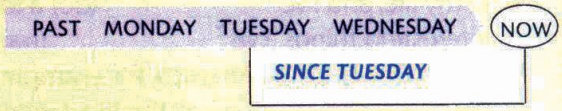
He has never worked in a factory.

2 We can use the Present Perfect with **for** and **since** to talk about situations or actions in a period of time from the past until now.

We use **for** with a period of time (e.g. **three months**), and **since** with a point in time (e.g. **Tuesday**):



*We've lived here **for six months**.*



*I haven't seen Tom **since Tuesday**.*

3 **Gone** and **been**

Look at the difference between these two sentences:

*He's **been** to Paris.* (= He is now at home again.)

*He's **gone** to Paris.* (= He is in Paris now.)

He's been means 'he has finished his trip'.
He's gone means 'he has begun his trip'.

A Look at the pictures that show what Jenny has done in her life. Complete the sentences about her, using the Present Perfect form of the verbs in brackets ( ).



♦ She has worked (work) as a secretary and as a schoolteacher.

1 She _____ (live) in Paris since 2015.

2 She _____ (visit) Canada and the USA.

3 She _____ (be) married for four years.

4 She _____ (write) four books.

5 She _____ (climb) Mont Blanc twice.

B Complete the sentences using the Present Perfect form of the verbs in brackets ( ).

♦ Don't take my plate away. I haven't finished (not/finish) my meal.

1 A: What's that book about?
B: I don't know. I ..... (not/read) it.

2 I ..... (lose) my pen. Can I borrow yours, please?

3 My father ..... (buy) an expensive new car.

4 A: I ..... (book) a room here for tonight.
B: Yes madam, what's your name, please?

5 I ..... (make) some sandwiches. Would you like one?

6 I'm not sure what the problem with the car is. It ..... (not/happen) before.

7 A: ..... (you/reply) to that letter from the bank?
B: No I haven't, but I'll do it soon.

C Write this conversation using the Present Perfect and the words in brackets ( ).

♦ Rob: (you/ever/want/to work in another country?)
Have you ever wanted to work in another country?

1 Noah: (Yes, in fact I/work/abroad twice.)
.....

2 (I/work/in Ireland and in Brazil.)
.....

3 (What about you?/you/ever/have/a job abroad?)
.....

4 Rob: (No, I/never/want/to leave my home town.)
.....

5 (I/live/here for 20 years, and I/never/think/of working abroad.)
.....

6 Noah: (Really? Well, I/apply/for another job abroad.)
.....

D Make sentences using the words in brackets ( ) with the Present Perfect and *for* or *since*.

♦ (I/not/play/tennis/last summer.)
I haven't played tennis since last summer.

1 (I/know/her/more than ten years.)
.....

2 (I/not/eat/anything/lunchtime.)
.....

3 (you/live/in this town/a long time?)
.....

4 (Charlotte/be/a good friend/we were at school together.)
.....

5 (you/see/Jack/the party last week?)
.....

15 Present Perfect (3)

1 We use **just** with the Present Perfect to talk about things that happened a short time before now:

have + just + PAST PARTICIPLE
It has just finished.

*Could I speak to Jasmine, please? ~ I'm afraid **she has just left**.* (= She left a short time ago.)

*Is that a good book? ~ I don't know. I've **just started** it.* (= I started it a short time before now.)

2 Look at this example with **already**:

*Do you want something to eat? ~ No thanks, **I've already eaten**.* (= I ate before now.)

We use **already** with the Present Perfect to emphasize that something happened before now, or before it was expected to happen. We use **already** like this:

have + already + PAST PARTICIPLE
I've already heard that story.

Here is another example:

Nicola: *Is Sarah going to phone you later?*
Robert: *No. She's* (= She has) ***already phoned** me.* (= Sarah phoned before Nicola expected her to phone.)

3 We use **yet** with a negative verb to say that something has not happened, but we think that it will happen:

*The post **hasn't arrived yet**.* (= The post has not arrived, but it probably will arrive.)

*I **haven't finished** this work **yet**.* (= I haven't finished this work, but I will finish it.)

*They **haven't replied** to my letter **yet**.*

We use **yet** in questions to ask whether something that we expect to happen has happened:

***Have you paid** the bill **yet**?* (= Perhaps you have not paid the bill, but you are going to pay it soon.)

***Has it stopped** raining **yet**?* (= Perhaps it has not stopped raining, but it will stop raining soon.)

***Have you found** a job **yet**?*

Notice that we usually put **yet** at the end of a negative statement or question:

*They haven't replied to my message **yet**.*
*Have you found a job **yet**?*

A Complete the dialogues using *just* and the words in brackets ( ). Use the Present Perfect.

♦ A: What's happening in this programme?
B: I don't know. It's just started. (It/start).

1 A: ..... (I/come) back from my holiday.
B: Did you have a good time?

2 A: Could I have a copy of *Sports World*, please?
B: Sorry. ..... (I/sell) the last copy.

3 A: How's Lucy?
B: She's very happy. ..... (She/finish) her exams.

4 A: ..... (I/have) a message from Mike.
B: Oh yes? What did he say?

5 A: Have you heard from Alice and Frank recently?
B: Yes, ... (they/move) to another town.

6 A: Have you still got the same car?
B: No, ... (I/buy) a new one.

7 A: Would you like something to eat?
B: No, thanks. ..... (I/have) breakfast.

B **Make sentences using the Present Perfect with *already* or *yet* and the words in brackets ( ). Use the Present Perfect.**

♦ (I/not/read/today's news.) yet
I haven't read today's news yet.

1 (you/decide/which one to buy?) yet
.....

2 (I/explain/this to you three times.) already
.....

3 (Their baby son/start/talking.) already
.....

4 (you/phone/Jasmine?) yet
.....

5 (The game/not/finish.) yet
.....

6 (I/have/lunch.) already
.....

7 (He/spend/all his money.) already
.....

C **Complete the conversation using *just*, *already* or *yet* and the words in brackets ( ). Use the Present Perfect.**

Julia: Are you having a good time here?

Anna: Yes, I haven't been here long, and ♦ I've already visited (I/visit) a lot of interesting places.

Julia: [1] ..... (you/visit/the Art Gallery).

Anna: No, [2] ..... (I/not/do/that), but I'm going to do it.

Julia: What about the theatre? [3] ..... (you/see/a play)?

Anna: No, but [4] ..... (I/book/a ticket) for one. It's called *The Friends*. I did it online five minutes ago. Would you like to come with me?

Julia: Thanks, but [5] ..... (I/see/that play). I saw it last month.

Anna: [6] ..... (I/hear) that The Adventurers are going to give a concert next week. Do you like them?

Julia: Yes, I do. [7] ..... (they/make) a really good new album. It came out a couple of days ago.

Anna: I really want to get a ticket.

Julia: [8] ..... (they/not/sell/all the tickets). But be quick! They're a very popular group.

16 Past Simple or Present Perfect

Compare the Past Simple and the Present Perfect:

1 We use the Past Simple to talk about something that happened at a particular time in the past:

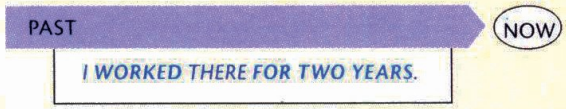
*I **met** John **at four o'clock**.*
*When **did** Jasmine **go** to India? ~ **In June**.*
*Martin **bought** a new car **last week**.*

We use the Present Perfect to talk about the past, but not about when things happened:

*I**'ve met** John's girlfriend. She's nice.*
***Have** you ever **been** to India? ~ Yes, I **have**.*
*I **have never bought** a new car.*

2 We use the Past Simple for situations or actions during a period of time that ENDED in the past:

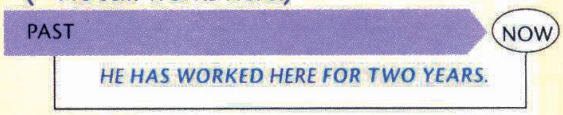
*I **worked** there **for two years**. I left last year.*



*We **lived** in that house **for a long time**; then we moved to this one.*
*Our company **opened** two new shops **last summer**.*

We use the Present Perfect for situations or actions during a period of time from the past to NOW:

*He **has worked** here **for two years**.*
(= He still works here.)



*We**'ve lived** in this flat **since we got married**.*
(= We still live in it.)
*We opened two shops last summer. **Since then** (= since that time), **we have opened** two more.*

3 Notice how we often move from the Present Perfect to the Past Simple:

Peter: ***Have you ever played** this game before?*
Maria: ***Yes, I played** it once when I was in England.*
Peter: ***Did you win?***
Maria: ***No, I lost**.*

A Complete the conversation by choosing the correct form in brackets ( ).

Sarah: • Have you ever been (Have you ever been/Did you ever go) to the United States?
James: Yes, [1] ..... (I've been/I went) to California last year.
Sarah: [2] ..... (Have you liked/Did you like) it?
James: Yes, [3] ..... (I've enjoyed/I enjoyed) the trip a lot.
Sarah: What [4] ..... (have you done/did you do) there?
James: [5] ..... (I've visited/I visited) Hollywood, Disneyland and San Francisco.
[6] ..... (Have you been/Did you go) to California, Sarah?
Sarah: No, but [7] ..... (I've booked/I booked) a holiday there. I've got my ticket and I'm going next week!

B Complete the dialogues using the Present Perfect (*I have seen*) or Past Simple (*I saw*) of the words in brackets ( ).

A: I • saw (see) Jack last night.
B: Oh really. I [1] ..... (not/see) him for months. How is he?

A: We [2] ..... (go) to the theatre last Saturday.
B: [3] ..... (you/enjoy) the play?
A: Yes, it [4] ..... (be) very good.

A: I [5] ..... (never/hear) of this group before. Are they famous in your country?
B: Yes, they are very popular. They [6] ..... (be) famous in my country for years.

A: What [7] ..... (you/do) last weekend?
B: I [8] ..... (stay) at home. I [9] ..... (need) a rest.

A: [10] ..... (you/ever/win) a competition?
B: Yes, I [11] ..... (win) a photography competition in 2015.

A: So, John is your best friend. [12] ..... (you/meet) him when you were at university?
B: Yes. We [13] ..... (be) friends for more than ten years.

C **Complete this paragraph about the London Underground using the Present Perfect or Past Simple forms of the verbs in brackets ( ).**



The London Underground

London • has had ..... (have) an underground train system since the 19th century. The London Underground [1] ..... (start) in 1863, when Victorian engineers and workers [2] ..... (build) the Metropolitan railway. This railway line [3] ..... (go) from Paddington Station to Farringdon Street Station, and steam engines [4] ..... (pull) the coaches. 12 more lines [5] ..... (open) since then. The world's first underground electric railway [6] ..... (open) in 1890. This line [7] ..... (go) from the City of London to Stockwell in South London. Since the London Underground [8] ..... (begin), many other cities, such as New York and Moscow, [9] ..... (build) their own systems.

17 Present Perfect Continuous

1 We form the Present Perfect Continuous like this:

POSITIVE		
	FULL FORM	SHORT FORM
I/You/We/They	have been cooking.	've been cooking.
He/She/It	has been cooking.	's been cooking.

NEGATIVE		
I/You/We/They	have not	haven't
He/She/It	has not been cooking.	hasn't been cooking.

QUESTIONS		
Have	I/you/we/they	been cooking?
Has	he/she/it	been cooking?

(For details about **-ing** forms see **Appendix 2**, on page 243.)

2 We use the Present Perfect Continuous for an action or situation that began in the past and continues until now:

*You're late! **I've been waiting** for you.*

We often use **for** and **since** with the Present Perfect Continuous. We use **for** with a period of time, and **since** with a point in time:

*I've been waiting for you **for two hours.***

*I've been waiting for you **since six o'clock.***

3 Here are some more examples:



PAST



NOW

*Julia **has been talking** on the phone for an hour.* (= She started talking on the phone an hour ago and she is still talking.)

You've been sitting there since one o'clock. (= You started sitting there at one o'clock and you are still sitting there.)

4 We use the Present Perfect Continuous for actions that are done many times in a period of time from the past until now:

She's been having driving lessons for a couple of months. (= She started a couple of months ago; she is still having lessons.)

I've been playing tennis since I was a small child.

5 We can use **How long ...?** with the Present Perfect Continuous:

How long have you been living here? I have been living here for three years.

A Complete the sentences by putting the verbs in brackets ( ) into the Present Perfect Continuous.

♦ She has been learning (she/learn) Spanish for six months.

1 The roads are very wet; (it/rain) for hours.

2 (we/play) this game for hours. Let's stop now!

3 (Emilia/learn) French at school for three years.

4 (I/read) this book for months, but I haven't finished it yet.

5 (we/watch) this programme for hours.

6 (the neighbours/make) a lot of noise again today?

7 (I/save) my money for a holiday.

8 (you/listen) to me carefully?

B Put *for* or *since* into the gaps.

♦ I've been working in this office since last summer.

1 Have you been doing this course _____ a long time?

2 I've been driving this car _____ more than ten years.

3 She has been planning the party _____ the beginning of the month.

4 George has been telling the same stories _____ several years.

5 We've been waiting for a reply _____ we contacted them last week.

6 What have you been doing _____ the last time that I saw you?

7 You've been writing that application _____ more than two hours.

8 He's been feeling ill _____ a few days.

C Write sentences to describe what each member of the Wyatt family has been doing to prepare for Christmas. Use words from the box and the Present Perfect Continuous to describe the pictures.

wrap	make
decorate	shop
write	~~put up~~
a cake	cards
~~decorations~~	presents
the tree	for food

♦ 

1 

2 

3 

4 

5 

♦ John has been putting up decorations.

1 Mary and Steve _____

2 Martha _____

3 Mia _____

4 Tom _____

5 Joseph _____

D Write a sentence for each of the following situations, using the Present Perfect Continuous and *for* or *since*.

♦ She started her course a month ago and she is still doing it.
She has been doing her course for a month.

♦ I started reading this novel last weekend and I'm still reading it.
I have been reading this novel since last weekend.

1 It started raining at three o'clock and it is still raining.
_____

2 He started playing chess when he was ten years old and he still plays it.
_____

3 I started work at eight o'clock and I'm still working.
_____

4 Helen started looking for another job two months ago and she's still looking.
_____

5 We arrived here two hours ago and we're still waiting.
_____

18 Present Perfect Simple or Continuous

1 Compare the Present Perfect Simple and Present Perfect Continuous:

We use the Present Perfect Simple (**have painted**) to talk about a past activity that is now completed:

We've painted the rooms. (= The rooms are now painted.)

Anna's mended her bike. (= She can ride it now.)

We use the Present Perfect Continuous (**have been painting**) to emphasize the activity itself, which may or may not be completed:

We've been painting the flat. That's why it smells. We still have three rooms to paint.

Anna's hands are dirty because she's been mending her bike.

2 We use the Present Perfect Simple to ask and answer **How many?** and **How much?**:

A: *How many rooms have you painted?*
B: *We've painted three of them.*

We usually use the Present Perfect Continuous to ask **How long?**, and with **since** and **for**:

I have been travelling for six months.

A: *How long have you been waiting? Have you been queuing for a long time?*
B: *Yes, I've been waiting since two o'clock.*

For more details about **How long?**, **How many?** and **How much?** see **Unit 32**.

3 Note that we usually use the Present Perfect Simple (not the Continuous):

- to talk about short actions with **have**, **stop**, **break**, etc.

  Anthony has had an accident on his bike.

- with verbs of thinking (e.g. **know**, **decide**, **forget**, **notice**):

  I'm sorry. I've forgotten your name.

- to talk about the last time that something happened:

  I haven't eaten meat for two years. (= I last ate meat two years ago.)

Note that we can use the Present Perfect Simple or the Continuous with **work**, **teach**, and **live**, with no difference in meaning:

I have taught here for two years.
OR *I have been teaching here for two years.*

A Write out the sentences in brackets ( ). Use the Present Perfect Simple (*I have done*).

♦ He's late again. (How many times/he/arrive/late this month?)
How many times has he arrived late this month?

1 What a good week! (We/sell/much more than we expected.)

2 (How much money/you/spend/this week?)

3 (How many people/Jasmine/invite/to her party?)

Now use the Present Perfect Continuous (*I have been doing*).

4 It's still raining. (It/rain/for hours.)

.....

5 That noise is awful. (They/drill/holes in the wall all morning.)

.....

6 Are you still here? (How long/you/sit/here?)

.....

B **Five friends have just finished some jobs. Look at the table and complete the dialogues. Use the Present Perfect Simple or the Present Perfect Continuous.**

	ACTIVITY	NOW
Lucas	~~sweep the floors~~	he is sweating
Rachel	~~cut the grass~~	she is tired
Paul	do the washing-up	he has soft hands
Laura	peel the onions	she has red eyes
Tim	defrost the freezer	he has cold hands

♦ Lucas, why are you sweating? ~ Because I *have been sweeping the floors.*

♦ Is the lawn finished? ~ Yes, Rachel *has cut the grass.*

1 Paul, why are your hands so soft? ~ Because I .....

2 Are the onions ready for the pan? ~ Yes, Laura ..... them.

3 Rachel, you look tired. ~ Yes, I .....

4 Tim, your hands are very cold. ~ Yes, I .....

5 Are the floors clean? ~ Yes, Lucas ..... them.

6 Why are your eyes red, Laura? ~ Because I .....

7 Are the plates clean? ~ Yes, Paul .....

8 Is the freezer all right now? ~ Yes, Tim .....

C **Complete the conversations using the verbs in brackets ( ). Use the Present Perfect Simple or the Present Perfect Continuous.**

Ellen: Where are you and your family going to live?

Owen: Well, we've ♦ *been talking* (talk) about that for weeks, but we haven't ♦ *decided* (decide) anything yet.

Tina: Excuse me. Have you [1] ..... (stand) in this queue for a long time?

Jacob: Yes, I've [2] ..... (queue) for almost an hour.

Sara: Why are you crying?

Joe: Because my brother has [3] ..... (have) an accident. He's [4] ..... (break) both his legs.

Lucy: Excuse me. Has someone [5] ..... (leave) this bag here?

Ben: I don't know. I've [6] ..... (sit) here all afternoon, but I haven't [7] ..... (notice) it until now.

19 Past Perfect

1 We form the Past Perfect with **had** and the past participle of a verb (e.g. **started**, **taken**):

	FULL FORM	SHORT FORM
I/You/He/She/It/ We/They	*had started.*	*'d started.*

*I **had taken** it.* OR *I'd **taken** it.*
*They **had not started**.*
OR *They **hadn't started**.*

2 Look at this:

A year ago:
Jenny is flying to Rome. She thinks, 'I have never been on a plane before now.'

Now:
Jenny flew to Rome last year. She had never been on a plane before that.

When we talk about an event or situation in past time we use the Past Simple (e.g. **flew**); if we talk about an event before that time, we use the Past Perfect (e.g. **had been**). Here is another example:

Last Saturday at the cinema:
Mary: *We don't need to queue because I've already bought the tickets.*

Now, talking about last Saturday:
Mary: *We didn't need to queue because I had already bought the tickets.*

Note that we can use **never** and **already** before the past participle (e.g. **been**, **bought**).

3 If we talk about a series of past events in order, we use the Past Simple:

A: *I saw a beautiful bird in my garden.*
B: *I went to get my phone to take a photo.*
C: *The bird **flew** away.*
D: *I returned with my phone.*

PAST A B C D NOW

We need the Past Perfect to make it clear that one of the events is not in order:

D: *I returned with my phone.*
C: *The bird **had** already **flown** away.*
(= The bird had gone before I returned.)

Also, compare these sentences using **when**:



Past Simple: ***When** I returned with my phone, the bird **flew** away.* (= It went after I returned.)



Past Perfect: ***When** I returned with my phone, the bird **had flown** away.* (= It went before I returned.)

4 The Past Perfect is used in reported speech:

'I have suffered from asthma for many years.'
*She told the doctor that she **had suffered** from asthma for many years.*

(For more on reported speech, see **Units 100–102**.)

A Write sentences about what these people had already done or had never done before. Use the Past Perfect, and *already* or *never*.

♦ Last summer Mary won a gold medal for the third time.
She had already won two gold medals before that.

♦ Last year Nathan visited Scotland for the first time.
He had never visited Scotland before that.

1 Last weekend Tom rode a horse for the first time.
He _____ before that.

2 Last summer Julian ran in a marathon for the sixth time.
He _____ before that.

3 Last week Lucy wrote a poem for the first time.
She _____ before that.

4 Last week Anna appeared on TV for the first time.
She ..... before that.

5 Last summer Anthony played tennis at Wimbledon for the fifth time.
He ..... before that.

6 Last year Abigail wrote her third novel.
She ..... before that.

B **In each case you have two events in the order in which they took place. Write the information in one sentence using the words in brackets ( ).**

♦ **A:** The driver started the car. **B:** Lady James appeared.
(When Lady James/appear/, the driver/already/start/the car)
When Lady James appeared, the driver had already started the car.

1 **A:** We put the fire out. **B:** The firefighters arrived.
(When the firefighters/arrive/, we/already/put/the fire out.)
.....

2 **A:** James finished the work. **B:** The manager came back.
(When the manager/come/back, James/already/finish/the work.)
.....

3 **A:** I went to bed. **B:** Raphael called.
(When Raphael/call/, I/already/go/to bed.)
.....

4 **A:** Alice and Jack had lunch. **B:** Their children came home.
(When their children/come/home, Alice and Jack/already/have/lunch.)
.....

5 **A:** Owen prepared the supper. **B:** His wife got home from work.
(When his wife/get/home from work, Owen/already/prepare/the supper.)
.....

6 **A:** The thieves spent the money. **B:** The police caught them.
(The thieves/already/spend/the money/when the police/catch/them.)
.....

C **Use the Past Perfect to complete the sentences.**

♦ Last summer Grace said, 'I've always wanted to fly in a helicopter.'
Grace said that she had always wanted to fly in a helicopter.

1 Jacob said, 'Jack has just gone out.'
Jacob told us that Jack .....

2 Robert said to Charlotte, 'Have you been to Cambridge?'
Robert asked Charlotte if she .....

3 When the boys came home, Mrs Brock said, 'I've made some sandwiches.'
Mrs Brock told the boys that she .....

4 'I know your cousin,' said Tom. 'I met her in Amsterdam.'
Tom said he knew my cousin because he .....

5 Rob was talking to Abigail, and he said, 'Have you ever been to Japan?'
Rob asked Abigail if she .....

20 Used to

1 We can use the Present Simple to talk about present situations or habits:

- situations:
  *My sister **works** as a translator.*
  *Andrew **lives** in London.*
- habits:
  *Peter usually **wears** jeans.*
  *I often **eat** a sandwich for lunch.*
  *Mike **doesn't smoke** anymore.*
  ***Does** John **drive** to work every day?*

2 Look at these sentences with the Past Simple:

- situation:
  *Henry **lived** in France for many years.*
- habit:
  *When I was young, I **ran** three miles every day.*

The verbs are in the Past Simple and the sentences are about past situations or habits.

3 Look at these sentences with **used to**:

*Charlotte **used to live** in Ireland.*
*Many people **used to make** their own bread.*
*My husband **used to work** at home.*

We use **used to** to talk about a past situation or habit that continued for months or years, and to emphasize that the situation today is different:

*Charlotte doesn't live in Ireland **now**.*
***Nowadays** people usually buy bread from a shop.*
*My husband doesn't work at home **now**.*

Compare the Past Simple and **used to**:

- Past Simple:
  *When he was young, he **ran** three miles every day.* (He may or may not run three miles every day now.)
- **used to**:
  *When I was young, I **used to run** three miles every day. I don't do that now.* (I don't run three miles every day now.)

We make negative sentences and questions with **did** + **use to**:

*Lucy **didn't use to like** black coffee.*
*Paul **didn't use to smoke**.*
***Did** Oliver **use to cycle** to school?*
***Did** your parents **use to read** to you?*

4 We do not use **use to** for present situations or habits; we use the Present Simple:

*Anna **sings** in a band.* (NOT ~~*Anna uses to sing in a band.*~~)
*Joe **doesn't cycle** to school.* (NOT ~~*Joe doesn't use to cycle to school*~~)

A Look at the table of people who have changed what they eat or drink and complete the sentences.

name		in the past		now	
Anna	Grace	meat	tap water	fish	bottled water
Tom	Mary	coffee	tinned fruit	tea	fresh fruit
Robert	Lucy	white bread	margarine	brown bread	butter

♦ Anna *used to eat* meat, but now she *eats fish*.
♦ Tom *drinks tea* now, but *he used to drink* coffee.
1 Robert _____ white bread, but now _____ brown bread.
2 Grace _____ tap water, but now _____ bottled water.
3 Mary _____ fresh fruit now, but _____ tinned fruit.
4 Lucy _____ butter now, but _____ margarine.

Now complete these questions.

♦ Did Anna use to eat meat? ~ Yes she did, but now she eats fish.

5 _____ white bread? ~ Yes he did, but now he eats brown bread.

6 _____ tinned fruit? ~ Yes she did, but now she eats fresh fruit.

7 _____ tap water? ~ Yes she did, but now she drinks bottled water.

Now complete these sentences.

♦ Anna didn't use to eat _____ fish, but she does now.

♦ Tom drinks tea now, but he didn't use to drink _____ it.

8 Lucy _____ butter, but she does now.

9 Mary eats fresh fruit now, but she _____ it.

10 Grace drinks bottled water now, but she _____ it.

B **Tick (✓) the sentences which are correct and cross out the sentences which are incorrect.**

♦ When he was at primary school, Anthony used to work very hard. ✓

♦ ~~Last year Peter used to get a new bicycle for Christmas.~~

1 I didn't use to watch TV much, but I do now.

2 When he was a teenager, my grandfather used to buy all the Beatles' records.

3 Paul used to go the cinema almost every weekend.

4 Did Grace used to go to the concert last night?

5 Paul used to be really fit when he played a lot of volleyball.

6 John use to spend a lot of money on that new jacket he bought last week.

7 Kate didn't use to come to school yesterday because she was sick.

8 Jasmine used to play tennis a lot, but she doesn't have time now.

9 Did you use to go to the seaside for holidays when you were a child?

10 We used to live in Canada before we came here.

C **Complete the sentences with the words in brackets ( ) to say what these people used to do and what they do now.**

♦ (Andrew/get up/seven o'clock/now/half past seven)
Andrew used to get up at seven o'clock, but now he gets up at half past seven.

♦ (I/swim/before work/now/after work)
I used to swim before work, but now I swim after work.

1 (Dan/play/violin/now/guitar)
_____

2 (Anna/be/best friends/Annie/now/Cathy)
_____

3 (Lucy/have/dancing lessons/now/riding lessons)
_____

4 (I/buy CDs/now/download all my music)
_____

5 (John and Abigail/live/London/now/Cardiff)
_____

6 (David/drive/Fiesta/now/Jaguar)
_____

Test B Tenses – past

A **Anna is emailing her new Spanish friend, Pilar. If the verb tenses are wrong, correct them. If they are right, put a tick (✓).**

I'll try to answer some of your questions. • I have moved I *moved* to London from Bristol in 2009. That means • I've been here ✓ for almost ten years now. (Wow! Time flies, doesn't it?) [1] I was living in the south of the city when [2] I was starting going out with my husband, Mel. (We were both studying French at the time [3] we have met at University College.) In fact, [4] I've stayed in flats all over London! My favourite flat [5] had a balcony and you could see a small park in the square. [6] I had never forgotten that flat, or my flatmates. Anyway, that's enough about me. How long [7] have you lived in Madrid? [8] Have you been born there? London and Madrid are so big, aren't they? [9] I didn't see all the different parts of London yet! I saw an old friend by chance about a week ago when [10] I walked to work, and she lives on a boat in north London. [11] I have visited her last week. [12] I've never seen such a small kitchen! My friend cooked a meal for us.

B **Sara is talking to her husband. They've been married for 40 years. Six Past Simple verb forms should be Past Perfect. One has been corrected for you as an example. Find the other five, cross them out and rewrite them.**

Sara: We first met in 1977, didn't we, at the cinema?

Brian: Yes. When we arrived, • ~~the film already began.~~ *the film had already begun.*

Sara: I saw it before anyway.

Brian: Really? You didn't tell me that.

Sara: No. I wanted you to take me to the cinema the following week!

Brian: So you already decided you liked me!

Sara: And then you took me to your favourite restaurant, but it closed a week before!

Brian: Oh dear. What did we do next?

Sara: We went to a pub to meet your friends, but it was empty. Everyone went home, because England was playing Germany at Wembley.

Brian: What an evening!

Sara: That's not all! When I got home I couldn't open the front door because I left my keys at the pub.

C **Anna is talking to her mother on the phone. Underline the verbs that should be in the Present Perfect Continuous or Past Continuous form, and then correct them. One has been done as an example. Find five more.**

I've been studying

'I'm so tired, Mum. I've studied all day from five o'clock this morning. In fact, I did some maths when you rang just now. I still haven't finished and now I've got a headache because I've worked harder than I've ever done before! Sorry, what did you say? You've never had a problem with maths? But you're a teacher! You've read books and things all your life! Dad says you learnt French verbs on Saturday morning in the park when he first met you! Anyway, I haven't finished yet. My friend Stevie will be OK, though. Every time I've visited her in the last month, she has worked hard.'

D **Paul, Caroline, Jo and Rob are talking about some of the holidays they've had. Put the verbs in brackets ( ) in the Past Simple, Past Continuous or Present Perfect form.**

Paul: Do you remember when * we went (we go) to Morocco, Caroline?

Caroline: Unfortunately, yes. [1] ..... (You/lose) your passport, just after we arrived.

Paul: That's right. [2] ..... (We/sail) near the coast, and I was looking at the fish, and [3] ..... (it/just drop) into the sea! [4] ..... (you/two/visit) North Africa?

Jo: No. [5] ..... (We/be) to Ghana, though. [6] ..... (We/fly) there in 2001, didn't we, Rob?

Rob: Sorry, Jo. [7] ..... (I/not/listen). [8] ..... (I/have) such a busy day today! Actually, [9] ..... (I/fall) asleep on the sofa when [10] ..... (Paul/ring) and invited us around.

Jo: So you need a holiday, don't you?

Caroline: [11] ..... (Paul and I/go) to this really great country hotel, The Woodland Spa, about a month ago. [12] ..... (We/read) the Sunday newspapers, and [13] ..... (we/see) this advertisement. [14] ..... (Paul/not/stop) talking about it since we got back!

Paul: It was fantastic!

Rob: [15] ..... (it/have) a jacuzzi in the bathroom?

Jo: [16] ..... (be/there) a bowl of fruit in your bedroom?

Caroline: All of that. And [17] ..... (you/never/see) such a beautiful swimming pool in your life!

Jo: It sounds lovely. Better than that hotel [18] ..... (Rob and I/stay) in last year in Devon.

Rob: Oh dear. [19] ..... (It/be) terrible. One night [20] ..... (we/talk) in our room, and the owner knocked on the door at ten o'clock in the evening and told us to go to sleep!

Jo: [21] ..... (I/not/enjoy) a holiday in the UK for years, I'm afraid.

21 Be going to

1 We form sentences with **be going to** like this:

BE GOING +	TO	+ INFINITIVE
It is going	*to*	*snow.*

POSITIVE	
I am / *He/She/It is* / *We/You/They are*	*going to leave.*

NEGATIVE	
I am / *He/She/It is* / *We/You/They are*	*not going to leave.*

QUESTIONS	
Am I / *Is he/she/it* / *Are we/you/they*	*going to start?*

2 Note that we usually use the short form of **be** (**I'm**, he/she/it**'s**, we/you/they**'re**):

They're going to leave.
He's going to spend a week by the sea.

3 The negative short form is **I'm not going to**:

I'm not going to play tennis today.

With **he**, **she** and **it**, there are two negative short forms:

*He/she/it **isn't** going to come.*
*He/she/it's **not** going to come.*

With **you**, **we** and **they**, there are also two negative short forms:

*You/we/they **aren't** going to come.*
*You/we/they're **not** going to come.*

4 We use **be going to** for the future. We use it:

- to talk about things we have decided to do in the future:

A: *What are you going to do tomorrow?*
B: *I'm going to visit Paul in Brighton.*
A: *Are you going to drive?*
B: *No, I'm going to take the train.*

- to predict the future, using information we know now:

Look at that blue sky! It's going to be hot.
I've eaten too much. I'm going to be ill.
Look at the time. It's two o'clock. They aren't going to come now.

A Paul has decided what he's going to do in his life. Complete the sentences, using short forms of *be going to* and the verbs in brackets ( ).

♦ I *'m going to study* (study) music at university.
1 I _____ (travel) all over the world.
2 I _____ (not/work) in an office.
3 I _____ (marry) a very rich woman.
4 We _____ (have) 11 boys.
5 They _____ (become) a football team.
6 They _____ (win) the World Cup.
7 I _____ (play) the piano every night in a cafe.
8 My wife _____ (not/cook) or clean.
9 We _____ (eat) in restaurants every day.

B Write positive sentences with short forms of *be going to* and the words in brackets ( ).

♦ (I/see/a film tonight.) *I'm going to see a film tonight.*
1 (She/buy/a new car tomorrow.) _____
2 (They/work/hard this year.) _____
3 (It/rain/this afternoon.) _____

Write negative sentences with short forms of *be going to* and the words in brackets ( ).

♦ (They/not/catch/that train!) They're not going to catch that train!

4 (Paul/not/drive/to Scotland.) .....

5 (We/not/finish/it today.) .....

6 (She/not/buy/a new house.) .....

Write questions with *be going to* and the words in brackets ( ).

♦ (you/have/a holiday this year?) Are you going to have a holiday this year?

7 (they/win/the match?) .....

8 (Mary/leave/her job?) .....

9 (you/take/the exam in June?) .....

C Keiko is Japanese. She's going to spend a week by the sea in England. Ask her some questions. Use *be going to*, the verbs in brackets ( ), and the words from the box.

an umbrella	in a luxury hotel	to a club	fish and chips
in the sea	~~a lot of English~~	golf every day	

♦ (speak) Are you going to speak a lot of English? .....

1 (play) .....

2 (take) .....

3 (swim) .....

4 (eat) .....

5 (stay) .....

6 (go) .....

D Make sentences about the pictures using short forms of *be going* to and the words from the box.

It/rain.
They/eat/a pizza
They/not/play/tennis
He/not/win/the race
She/have/a swim
They/watch/a film
~~He/make/a phone call~~
He/play/the piano

♦ He's going to make a phone call. .....

1 .....

2 .....

3 .....

4 .....

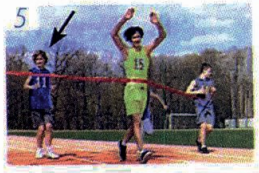
5 .....

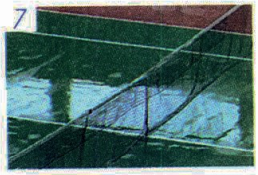
6 .....

7 .....







22 Will and shall

1 We use **will** to talk about the future. Look at this example:



It's now five o'clock. I'll stop work at six.

2 We make sentences with **will** like this:

WILL + INFINITIVE
I will stop.

We use **I will** or **I'll**, and **I will not** or **I won't**. We usually use the short forms (**I'll**, **he'll**, **I won't**, **he won't**) when we speak.

POSITIVE	FULL FORM	SHORT FORM
I/He/She/It/We/You/They	will go.	'll go.

NEGATIVE	FULL FORM	SHORT FORM
I/He/She/It/We/You/They	will not go.	won't go.

QUESTIONS	FULL FORM	SHORT FORM
will go.	I/he/she/it/we/you/they	go?

3 We use **will** to talk about future facts, and things that we think will happen in the future:

*My father **will be** 50 years old tomorrow.*
*Jasmine **will love** your new dress.*
*He's a good manager. He **won't make** any mistakes.*

We also use will to ask about the future:

Will they win this game?

4 We use **I'll** when we make a quick decision to do something. For example, when the doorbell rings, we say:

I'll answer it.

Here is another example:

A: *Does anyone want to come with me tonight?*
B: *Yes, I'll come.*

We use **Shall I ...?** or **I'll ...** when we want to do things for other people:

OFFER:	*Shall I make you a cup of coffee?*
OFFER:	*I'll make you a cup of coffee.*

We use **Shall we ...?** to suggest things that we can do:

SUGGESTION:	*Shall we see a film tonight?*

A Complete the dialogues with *will* or *won't* and the verbs from the box. Use short forms of *will* where you can.

have take ~~phone~~ finish be (x2) win make

♦ A: Are you coming to the cinema on Sunday?
B: I'm not sure. I'll phone ..... you on Saturday.

1 A: Don't change your clothes now. We ..... late.
B: No, we won't. We ..... a taxi.

2 A: George is going to have a party at the weekend.
B: Why?
A: It's his birthday. He ..... 30 on Saturday.

3 A: She ..... the tennis match tomorrow.
B: Why not?
A: She ..... mistakes. She always makes mistakes in important matches.

4 A: ..... Steve ..... the work tonight?
B: No, he won't finish. He ..... time.

B Put the best phrase from the box in each gap. Start your sentences with *I'll*.

phone for a taxi	help you to look for it	~~carry some of them~~
go with you	give you some money	make you a sandwich
open a window	ask her to phone you tonight	give you the name of a language school

♦ A: I want to take these books home, but they're very heavy.
B: I'll carry some of them.

1 A: I feel sick. It's so hot in this room.
B: .....

2 A: I want a cup of coffee, but I don't have any money.
B: .....

3 A: I'm hungry. I didn't have any lunch.
B: .....

4 A: I want to learn Japanese.
B: .....

5 A: I've lost my passport.
B: .....

6 A: It's ten o'clock. I'll be late if I walk.
B: .....

7 A: I want to speak to Jasmine. It's very important.
B: .....

8 A: I want to go to the museum, but I don't know the way.
B: .....

C Put *Shall I* or *Shall we* in the gaps to complete the dialogues.

♦ A: I'm hungry. Are you going to the shops?
B: Yes. Shall I ..... get you something to eat?

♦ A: We need a holiday.
B: What a good idea! Shall we ..... go to Florida?

1 A: I'm going to get some tickets for the concert next week. ..... buy you one?
B: Yes please. I'd love to come.

2 A: ..... go to a restaurant tonight?
B: OK, but I don't have any money. Will you pay for me?

3 A: I want to go to Italian classes, but I've never learnt a foreign language before.
B: ..... come with you?
A: That's very kind of you.

4 A: Where is our meeting?
B: At John's office on Baker Street.
A: ..... walk or take a taxi?

5 A: You look thirsty. ..... get you a drink?
B: Yes, please. Can I have an orange juice or some water?

6 A: It's a beautiful day! ..... have a picnic?
B: Wonderful idea! Who shall we invite?

23 Will or be going to

1 Compare **will** and **be going to**:

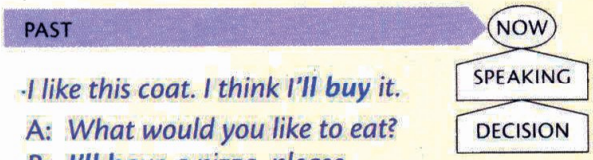
We use **will** with an infinitive (**do**, **go**, **be**, **arrive**, etc.):

INFINITIVE
John will arrive tomorrow.

We use **be going** with **to** + infinitive (**to do**, **to be**, **to rain**, etc.):

TO + INFINITIVE
It's going to rain soon.
My friends are going to come tonight.
It isn't going to rain today.
What are you going to do on Sunday?

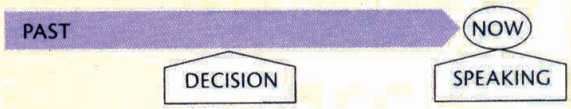
2 We use **will** for actions that we decide to do now, at the moment of speaking:



I like this coat. I think I'll buy it.
A: *What would you like to eat?*
B: *I'll have a pizza, please.*

We can use **will** for offers and promises:
I'll carry your case for you. (OFFER)
I won't forget your birthday again. (PROMISE)

We use **be going to** for actions that we have decided to do before we speak:



I'm going to clean my room this afternoon.
(I decided to clean it this morning.)

We can ask questions about people's plans:
Are you going to take the three o'clock train?
(= Have you decided to take the three o'clock train?)

3 We use **will** to talk about things that we think or believe will happen in the future:
I'm sure you'll enjoy the film.
I'm sure it won't rain tomorrow. It'll be another beautiful, sunny day.

We use **be going to** for something that we expect to happen, because the situation now indicates that it is going to happen:
He's running towards the goal, and he's going to score.

A Complete the sentences using the words in brackets ( ) and *'ll* or a form of *be going to*.

♦ A: Are you going to watch TV tonight?
B: Yes, I'm going to watch (I/watch) my favourite programme at nine o'clock.

1 A: What (you/eat) tonight? What food have you bought?
B: I haven't bought any food.
A: Well, why don't you come to my house? (I/cook) us something nice to eat.

2 A: I'm going into the centre of town tomorrow. (I/buy) some new clothes.
B: Oh, what (you/get)?
A: (I/look) for a T-shirt and some jeans.
B: I'd like to go into the centre too. (I/come) with you.

3 A: (I/leave) work late tomorrow. There is a meeting at six o'clock.
B: Oh, I didn't know that. Well, (I/see) you after the meeting.

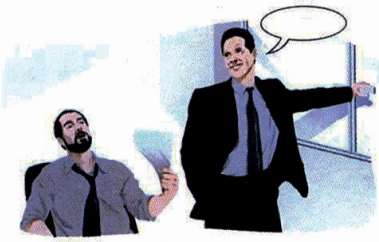
4 (I/phone) Tom at six o'clock. I promised to phone him this evening.

5 A: Are you going to have a holiday in the summer?
B: Yes, (I/travel) around Europe with a friend.

B Look at the office scenes in the pictures and match them to the sentences. Cross out the incorrect sentences.



♦ a



1 .....



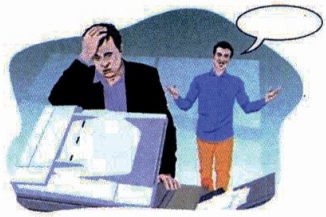
2 .....



3 .....



4 .....



5 .....

♦ Relax, I'll answer it. / ~~Relax, I'm going to answer it.~~

a You look hot, I'll open a window. / You look hot, I'm going to open a window.

b Next year, we're going to enter the Japanese market. / Next year, we'll enter the Japanese market.

c Thanks, I'm going to have an orange juice. / Thanks, I'll have an orange juice.

d Have a rest, I'm going to do the photocopying. / Have a rest, I'll do the photocopying.

e Thursday is no good for me, I'm afraid. I'll meet the new manager of our Tokyo office. / Thursday is no good for me, I'm afraid. I'm going to meet the new manager of our Tokyo office.

C You are at a party. Here are some of the questions you are asked. Reply using the words in brackets ( ) and *will* or *be going to*.

♦ A: Hi, nice to see you. Would you like a drink?
B: (I/have/a coke, please) I'll have a coke, please.

1 A: What are you doing these days?
B: (Nothing much, but I/start/a new job soon) .....

2 A: Would you like something to eat?
B: (Thanks, I/have/a sandwich) .....

3 A: What are your plans for the weekend?
B: (I/do/some shopping tomorrow and I/go/for a swim on Sunday) .....

4 A: Why is Maria standing by the piano?
B: (She/sing/, I'm afraid) .....

5 A: This cake looks delicious. Are you going to have some?
B: (No, but I'm sure you/enjoy/it) .....

6 A: How are you getting home?
B: (David/give/me a lift) .....

24 Present Continuous for the future

Tenses: future

1 Look at these examples:

I'm flying home tomorrow.
He's starting a new job on Monday.
Anthony and Anna are coming at the weekend.

In each example, we are using the Present Continuous (see **Units 5** and **6**), but we are talking about the future, not the present.

2 Look at this example:

You bought a plane ticket **last week**.

You can now say:
*I'm flying home **next week**.*



We use the Present Continuous to talk about things we have arranged in the past to do in the future.

Here are some more examples:

A bank wrote to Steve and asked him to start work **next week**.

We can now say:
*He's starting a new job **next week**.*

John said to Anthony and Anna:
Would you like to come for dinner on Sunday?

Anthony and Anna said:
Yes.

John now says:
Anthony and Anna are coming on Sunday.

3 The important part of a Present Continuous for the future sentence is often a time or day (e.g. **next week**, **in July**, **tomorrow**, **on Sunday**):

PRESENT: *I'm leaving **now**.*
FUTURE: *I'm leaving **tomorrow**.*
PRESENT: *We're having a party **at the moment**. Can I phone you **tomorrow**?*
FUTURE: *We're having a party **in July**.*

4 We do not use the Present Continuous for future events that we cannot arrange or have not arranged:

The sun will shine tomorrow.
(NOT ~~*The sun is shining tomorrow.*~~)
The Irish team will win next week.
(NOT ~~*The Irish team are winning next week.*~~)

A Write sentences about the past events in brackets ( ) using the words from the box. Use short forms of the Present Continuous for the future.

I/eat/in a new restaurant tonight	I/go/to the doctor tomorrow
I/fly/to Florida in August	~~I/study/English in London in May~~
I/go/to a concert next Tuesday	I/see/Mary this weekend

♦ (You paid for an English course in London yesterday.)
I'm studying English in London in May.

1 (You booked a table at a new restaurant last week.)
.....

2 (You bought a ticket for a concert last month.)
.....

3 (You called your doctor this morning.)
.....

4 (You paid for a holiday at a travel agent's last week.)
.....

5 (You talked to Mary on the phone this morning.)
.....

B Mark is an explorer. Look at the things he has arranged to do. Match the pictures with the words from the box. Write sentences about what he is doing next year using the Present Continuous. Say when he is doing each thing.

he/drive/across the Sahara
he/walk/across the Antarctic
~~he/run/across/Africa~~
he/fly/over the Amazon
he/climb/Mount Everest
he/sail/across the Pacific



♦ *January*



1 March



2 May



3 July



4 September



5 November

♦ He is running across Africa in January.

1 .....

2 .....

3 .....

4 .....

5 .....

C Complete these dialogues using the Present Continuous for the future and the words in brackets ( ). Use short forms where possible.

♦ **Steve:** Are you doing ..... (you/do) anything this weekend?
♦ **Megan:** I'm seeing ..... (I/see) a film on Sunday. Do you want to come?

1 **Pete:** Jasmine, Joe and Ellie ..... (come) to my house on Friday night.
Mark: ..... (you/have) a party?
Pete: No, we aren't. ..... (We/play) cards. Would you like to come?

2 **David:** ..... (I/fly) to New York on Sunday.
Chris: ..... (you/see) John there?
David: Yes, ... (we/meet) at the airport.

3 **Raphael:** Mary and I ..... (drive) to Scotland next Wednesday.
Mike: ..... (you/stay) in Edinburgh?
Raphael: No. ..... (we/visit) my mother in Aberdeen.

4 **Paul:** ..... (I/start) a new job on Monday.
Arthur: Really? What is it?
Paul: ..... (I/sell) cars. Do you need a new car?

25 Present tense: when, before, after, until, etc.

1 Look at this sentence:

When the programme ends, I'll do the washing-up.

To talk about an event in the future, we usually use the Present Simple (e.g. **ends**) after **when**, **before**, **after**, **until** and **as soon as**. We do not use **will**:

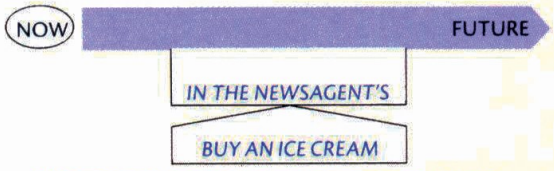
I'm going to finish this work before I go.
(NOT ... ~~*before I will go.*~~)

Wait here until I get back.

I'll phone you as soon as I arrive.

2 We can use **when** + Present Simple to refer to a time when something will happen:

I'll buy an ice cream when I'm in the newsagent's.



When you see her, give her my message.

We use **until** + Present Simple to mean from now to a time in the future:

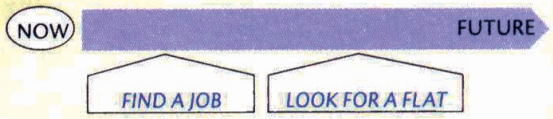
We'll sit outside until it gets dark. (= We'll sit outside from now to when it gets dark.)

We use **as soon as** + Present Simple with the meaning 'immediately after':

They'll start playing as soon as it stops raining. (= They will start playing immediately after the rain stops.)

3 We use **when** + Present Perfect (e.g. **I have done**) to talk about an action that must, or will, happen before the next action can happen:

When I've found a job, I'll look for a place to live. (= First I will find a job; then I will look for a place to live.)



When Simon has saved enough money, he'll buy a car. (= First Simon must save the money; then he can buy a car.)

4 With **after** we can use either the Present Simple or the Present Perfect with no difference in meaning:

After she takes/has taken the course, she'll be a qualified teacher. (= When she has done her course, she'll be a qualified teacher.)

A Complete the sentences by putting *when*, *before*, *after*, *as soon as* or *until* into the gaps. Sometimes more than one answer is possible.

◆ I'll stay in this job until ..... I find a better one.

1 I'm going to keep working ..... I finish this.

2 Remember to buy some stamps ..... you're in the post office.

3 ..... I speak to him on the phone tonight, I'll ask him.

4 We can go for a meal ..... we've seen the film.

5 I'll keep looking for it ..... I find it.

6 I'll wait for them ..... it gets dark, and then I'll leave.

7 Don't forget to lock the door ..... you go out.

8 ..... I've found the information, I'll phone you.

9 We'll wait ..... it stops raining, and then we'll go out.

10 ..... you see John, give him my regards.

11 Put in your application ..... the closing date arrives.

12 You shouldn't wait. You should reply ..... you receive the invitation.

13 Book a table ..... you go to the restaurant. It's often full.

B Complete the dialogues using the Present Simple or *will* forms of the verbs in brackets ( ). Sometimes you do not need to change the word in brackets.

♦ A: Could you post this letter for me today, please?
B: Yes, I *'ll do* (do) it when I *go* (go) to the shops.

1 A: I might be late tonight.
B: OK. I _____ (wait) until you _____ (arrive).

2 A: I'm leaving next week.
B: I _____ (see) you before you _____ (go), won't I?

3 A: Have you decided what you're going to do at the weekend yet?
B: No, but I (phone) you as soon as I _____ (know) what I'm going to do.

4 A: Have you done that homework yet?
B: No, not yet. I _____ (do) it when I _____ (have) enough time.

5 A: I don't want to go to that party tonight.
B: Well, I'm sure you _____ (enjoy) it when you _____ (get) there.

6 A: Could you tell Tom to call me, please?
B: Yes, I _____ (tell) him when I _____ (see) him tomorrow.

7 A: Mr Jackson isn't in at the moment.
B: I see. Well, I _____ (wait) until he _____ (come) back.

8 A: Have you booked a hotel in London yet?
B: No, but we _____ (book) one before we _____ (go) there.

9 A: Don't forget to write to Peter.
B: OK. I _____ (do) it as soon as I _____ (get) home.

10 A: _____ (you/see) Jack when you _____ (be) in Madrid?
B: Yes, I hope I will. I _____ (phone) him when I _____ (arrive) in Spain.

C Complete the sentences using the Present Perfect or *will* forms of the verbs in brackets ( ).

♦ When you have *wrapped* (wrap) that parcel, I *'ll* _____ (post) it for you.

1 I _____ (pay) the bill when I have borrowed some money from somebody.
2 When I've found a car that I want to buy, I _____ (ask) my bank to lend me the money to buy it.
3 After the plane _____ (land), you may unfasten your safety belts.
4 When you _____ (check) all your answers, hand in your question paper.
5 I _____ (read) this book when I'm on holiday.
6 When I _____ (read) this magazine, I'll start work.
7 You _____ (feel) better when you have had something to eat.
8 When you _____ (finish) your work, you can go home.
9 She _____ (be) pleased when she hears the news.
10 Let's go for a walk after we _____ (have) dinner.

26 Future

1 We can talk about future time with different verb forms, for example:

- **will:** *I'll come with you.*
- **be going to:** *He's going to come with us.*
- Present Continuous:
  We're coming tomorrow.
- Present Simple:
  When he arrives, we'll have dinner.

2 When we talk about events in the future that we expect to happen but that are not in our control, we can use **will** or **be going to**:

Anna will be (OR *is going to be*) *12 next week.*
We won't see (OR *aren't going to see*) *those birds again until next spring.*
Will they finish (OR *Are they going to finish*) *the building soon?*

3 When we talk about events in the future that are in our control (i.e. we can decide what will happen), we use **will** differently from **be going to**. We use **will** at the time we decide what to do; we use **be going to** after we have decided what to do. Look at these examples:

John: *Can somebody help me, please?*
Helen: *Yes, I'll help you.*
(Here, Helen decided after John asked.)

Now compare:

Laura: *John needs some help.*
Helen: *I know. I'm going to help him.*
(Here, Helen had decided before Laura spoke.)

4 Look at these examples:

If it rains, they'll stay (OR *they're going to stay*) *at home.*
We'll have (OR *we're going to have*) *lunch after the programme finishes.*

When a sentence has two parts that refer to the future, we use the Present Simple after **if**, **when**, **before**, **after**, **as soon as** and **until**, and in the other part of the sentence we use **will** or **be going to**:

WHEN/AFTER ETC. +	SIMPLE PRESENT	+ WILL/BE GOING TO
After	*it finishes*	*we'll have lunch.*

5 We use the Present Continuous to talk about a future arrangement that we have made with someone else:

A: *Can you come and see us this evening?*
B: *I can't. I'm playing squash with Sam.*
Peter can't come to the cinema with us tonight because he's meeting Jasmine for dinner.

A Liz has come back to London from Amsterdam. Her brother Tom has just met her at Liverpool Street Station. In the sentences below, think about when the person decides to do something. Put a tick (✓) if you think the underlined phrase is correct. Otherwise write the correct form of *will* or *be going to* in the gaps.

Tom: Hi Liz. Do you want some tea or coffee after your journey?

Liz: Thanks. ♦ I'll ✓ have a tea.

Tom: ♦ I'm going to I'll carry your bag – you look tired. [1] We'll go to that cafe, over there. Here we are. So, welcome back to England. How was Holland?

Liz: Well, it was great to have some time to think, and I've made some decisions. [2] I'll talk to the boss tomorrow, and [3] I'll ask him if I can move to another department.

Tom: Good. I'm sure [4] he'll give you what you want. Now, would you like something to eat?

Liz: Um, yes. [5] I'm going to ..... have a sandwich. Thanks. What about you?

Tom: No, thanks, I don't want to spoil my appetite. I've reserved a table for this evening at the Mexican restaurant in Leicester Square. [6] I'll ..... take Charlotte. What are you going to do this evening?

Liz: I haven't thought about it. [7] I'll ..... probably cook something. Oh, and I must ring Dad. Did you remember that it's his birthday tomorrow?

Tom: Yes, I remembered. [8] He'll ..... be 50. Promise me you'll relax a bit?

Liz: Sure.

Tom: OK. [9] I'll ..... get you a taxi. Call me tomorrow. [10] You won't ..... forget, will you?

B Write sentences using the words in brackets ( ), *will* and the Present Simple.

♦ (Tom/help/us/when/he/come/home) Tom will help us when he comes home.

1 (I/buy/the tickets/before/I/go/to work) .....

2 (As soon as/Henry/arrive, we/have/something to eat) .....

3 (The play/start/after/the music/stop) .....

4 (He/not/stop/until/he/finish/the job) .....

5 (When John/get/here, we/go/to the beach) .....

C Look at Anna's diary for next week and complete the sentences. If Anna has an arrangement with someone else, use the Present Continuous, but if she does not, use be *going to*.

	MORNING	AFTERNOON/EVENING
Monday	10.00 take Tim to the airport	wash the car
Tuesday	do some shopping	
Wednesday	11.00 take the dog to the vet	tidy my flat
Thursday	12.30 cook lunch for mother	buy a new squash racket
Friday	9.00 play squash with Mary	paint her bedroom
Saturday	wash my hair	6.00 meet Tim at the airport

♦ Anna is taking ..... Tim to the airport on Monday morning.

♦ On Monday evening Anna is going to wash ..... the car.

1 On Tuesday she ..... some shopping because on Thursday she ..... lunch for her mother.

2 She can't see anyone on Wednesday morning because she ..... the dog to the vet.

3 On Wednesday evening she ..... her flat.

4 On Thursday afternoon she ..... a new squash racket because ..... squash with Mary on Friday morning.

5 On Friday afternoon she ..... her bedroom.

6 She ..... her hair on Saturday morning because she ..... Tim at the airport at six o'clock.

Test C Tenses – future

A **Alex is talking on the phone to his girlfriend, Rosemary. Use *shall* or short forms of *will* or *be going to* to complete the conversation.**

Alex: Hi! It's Alex here.

Rosemary: Hi! I'm drying my hair at the moment.

Alex: • *Shall I ring* (I/ring) you back?

Rosemary: No, it's OK. [1] (I/finish) drying it later. How are things going?

Alex: Not bad, thanks. What [2] (you/do) on Saturday after you've seen your mum?

Rosemary: I'm not really sure. [3] (we/meet up) around six in the evening?

Alex: OK. But I may be a little late. [4] (I/watch) the final at tennis club in the afternoon. [5] (I/get) you a ticket, if you like.

Rosemary: No thanks. It sounds a bit boring. I'm sure [6] (you/enjoy) it more on your own. Anyway, [7] (I/buy) some new books in town, I think, if I've got enough money.

Alex: [8] (I/lend) you some. I've just been paid.

Rosemary: Don't worry. I'll have my credit card.

B **Steve is writing an email to Joanna, a work colleague. Complete his message using the words in brackets and the Present Continuous, *shall* or a short form of *will*.**

Hi Joanna,

I've just arrived in Mexico City. I didn't get much sleep on the plane so I think • *I'll go* (I/go) to bed for an hour or two this morning. As you know from my schedule, [1] (I/meet) Carl this afternoon, and then [2] (I/fly) to Monterrey tomorrow morning. [3] (I/send) you the documents after Carl has signed them? By the way, Carl says [4] (you/come) to Mexico at the weekend. If [5] (you/stay) near the Hotel Victoria, [6] (you/bring) me the green folder on my desk? I forgot it, I'm afraid. Also, I'm sorry but [7] (not/be able) to meet you at the airport. I'm sure you've heard already that [8] (I/visit) the new headquarters building of Carl's company in Acapulco.

Best wishes,
Steve.

C **Mike is talking to his teenage daughter about the visit of her uncle and his children. Complete their conversation with the words from the box.**

I'm / taking / you're / ~~is~~ / I'll / am / won't / will / Shall / arrive

Ellie: I just want to go out, Dad.

Mike: I know, but your Uncle Paul • *is* coming tomorrow with Steve and Sara.

Ellie: So? What's it got to do with me?

Mike: You know [1] moving out of your room tomorrow morning, don't you?

Ellie: I [2] ..... move! I don't want to! Why should I?

Mike: We've talked about this already. [3] ..... I tell Uncle Paul that he can't come?

Ellie: Where [4] ..... I going to sleep then?

Mike: Before they [5] ....., we'll make a bed for you in my room.

Ellie: OK. But that's all [6] ..... going to do.

Mike: Almost. Remember you're [7] ..... the children to the circus on Sunday.

Ellie: I won't go. Circuses are cruel to animals!

Mike: It's a circus without animals. We've talked about this before. I'll give you some money. When you get there, the kids [8] ..... want some ice cream.

Ellie: OK. I'll sleep in your room and [9] ..... take little Steve and Sara to the circus, but next weekend I'm going to Michelle's party, and I'll need a new pair of jeans, but I don't have any money. Can you help?

D **Jasmine is telling her classmates what will happen when they arrive at the school's mountain centre in Scotland. Cross out the word *will* or the form *'ll*, if they are wrong.**

'You'll meet Tim, one of the team of guides, as soon as you ~~will~~ arrive at the centre. He'll show you where to eat and sleep. Tim will check your bags when you will get up, to make sure you're ready for the day. It's important to have food and drink and an extra pullover. Before you'll start walking, Tim will make sure you have your own map, in case you get lost. It's a fantastic place to go walking. You'll be able to see the sea after you will get to the top of the mountain! But it can become cold very quickly. You'll have to listen to Tim until you'll know the right thing to do if the weather changes suddenly. Don't worry, though. You'll have a good time. You'll enjoy the views as soon as you will get there!'

E **Four friends are in a restaurant on holiday. Complete their conversation by crossing out the incorrect future forms.**

Laura: [0] Are you going to/~~Shall you~~ order some food, Tom?

Tom: Yes, but I'll have a chat with the waiter first when he [1] comes/will come to the table. There are some dishes I just don't understand.

Ben: We haven't made any plans for this afternoon, have we? What are we [2] doing/going to do?

Karen: It's too hot to go for a walk again.

Tom: Don't worry. [3] I'm carrying/I'll carry you!

Ben: After you [4] finish/will finish lunch, you won't be able to carry anyone!

Karen: Don't order too much food, Tom. [5] I'm playing/I'll play in a volleyball match on the beach this evening. It's not a serious game, but there is an interesting prize.

Ben: What is it?

Karen: [6] I'll/I'm going to tell you if you agree to play a practice match with me this afternoon.

Tom: [7] Am I calling/Shall I call the waiter? [8] I'm dying/I'm going to die of hunger in a moment.

Laura: Look. He's coming over. Ben, for the first time in your life, why don't you have something different from a pizza?

27 Nouns, verbs, adjectives, etc.

1 Look at this:



2 Nouns describe things or people or animals:

butter *car* *woman* *dog* *problem*

Some nouns (proper nouns) are the names of people, places and things. We begin proper nouns with capital letters (A, B, etc.):

Jasmine *Paris* *Oxford Street* *June*
a Rolls-Royce *the Tower of London*

3 Verbs describe actions or situations:

work *play* *live* *meet* *stay* *see*

*They **work** hard.* (**work** = verb)
*I **saw** Peter.* (**saw** = verb)

4 We use auxiliary verbs (**be**, **have**, **do**, **will**, **can**, **may**, **must**, etc.) before another verb:

*They **are working** hard.* (**are** = auxiliary)
*I **have seen** Peter.* (**have** = auxiliary)
*I **must go** now.* (**must** = auxiliary)

5 We put adjectives (e.g. **wonderful**) before nouns:

*We had a **wonderful** day.*

We can also use adjectives after the verbs **be**, **look**, **seem**, **feel**:

*He's **hungry**.* *She **looks tired**.*

Sometimes we put **very** before adjectives:

*It's **very hot** today.*
*He bought a **very expensive** car.*

6 We normally use adverbs to describe verbs:

*She walked **quickly**.* *He sings **well**.*

Most adverbs end in **-ly**:

clearly *slowly* *badly*

7 We use pronouns (**I**, **you**, **he**, **she**, etc.) to replace nouns:

*David has a new job. **He** is enjoying **it**.*

8 We use prepositions (**in**, **on**, **at**, etc.) when we are talking about places and times:

PLACE:	*She's at home.* *It's in the box.*
TIME:	*I'll see you on Monday.* *They went on holiday in June.*

A Put the underlined words in the correct columns in the table.

NOUN	VERB	AUXILIARY	ADJECTIVE	ADVERB	PROUNOUN	PREPOSITION
			wonderful			

I had a wonderful holiday in Spain last year.
She lives in a large flat in New York.
Peter walked quickly to work.
We met them in Green Street on Friday.
You must come and visit me in Scotland.
My teacher spoke slowly but I didn't understand her.
Mary and Lily are studying Japanese at college.
I have lost my bag.
They bought a big old house in the country.
She swims fast and she can ski well, too.

B Complete the sentences with words from the box. Use each word once.

NOUN	VERB	AUXILIARY	ADJECTIVE	ADVERB	PROUNOUN	PREPOSITION
~~job~~	find	~~has~~	beautiful	badly	I	on
match	pass	must	sick	easily	you	at
Saturday	do	carefully	in			

♦ Paul has just started a new job.

1 You'll _____ the books _____ the table.

2 _____ bought some _____ flowers and gave them to my wife.

3 She played _____ and lost the tennis _____.

4 _____ haven't seen your grandfather for a long time – you _____ visit him at the weekend.

5 Don't worry! You'll _____ the exam _____.

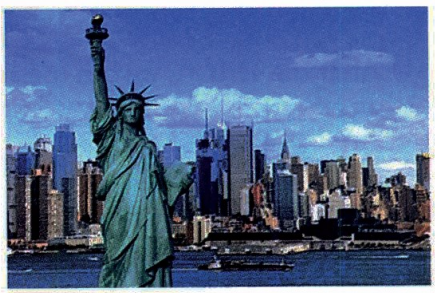
6 Listen _____! The money is _____ the box.

7 I'm playing golf on _____. _____ you want to play with me?

8 I feel _____. What did we eat _____ the restaurant?

C In this text, circle the letters that should be capital letters.

Josephine got a job in new york in june. She went there with her husband, mike. They are living in an apartment on madison avenue. Yesterday, they wanted to look at the sights. They saw the statue of liberty and walked through manhattan. Last monday, josephine started her new job. Josephine and mike want to live the rest of their lives in america.



D Put the word in brackets ( ) in the correct place (a–i).

♦ (on) I'm [a] flying [b] to [c] Mexico on [d] Sunday. d

1 (interesting) I [a] saw [b] a [c] very [d] film [e] last [f] night. _____

2 (quickly) Go [a] or [b] you'll [c] miss [d] the [e] train! _____

3 (can) I [a] see [b] the [c] mountains [d] from [e] my [f] window. _____

4 (it) She [a] sent [b] me [c] a [d] ticket [e] but [f] I [g] left [h] at [i] home. _____

5 (go) You [a] look [b] sick. You [c] must [d] and [e] see [f] a [g] doctor. _____

6 (in) I [a] stayed [b] there [c] for [d] a [e] week [f] June. _____

7 (very) Mary [a] gave [b] Christopher [c] a [d] expensive [e] present. _____

8 (road) There's [a] snow [b] on [c] the [d] so [e] drive [f] carefully. _____

28 Word order: subject, verb, object

1 In English, the order of words in a statement is subject + verb + object:

SUBJECT	+ VERB	+ OBJECT
I	*enjoy*	*good food.*
Peter	*is watching*	*TV.*
She	*drank*	*a cup of coffee.*

2 Some verbs (e.g. **go**) do not have an object:

*Steve **has gone**.*
*The train **didn't arrive**.*
*Anna and Tom **are swimming**.*

Some verbs (e.g. **like**) always need an object:

SUBJECT	+ VERB	+ OBJECT
I	*like*	*music.*
She	*wants*	*a drink.*

3 After the verb **be**, we can use an object or an adjective:

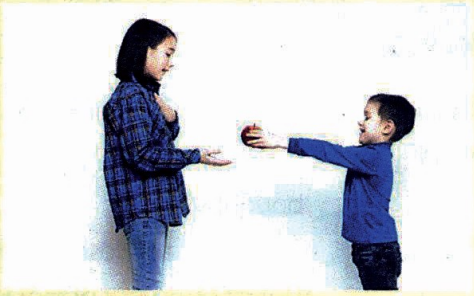
	OBJECT
She is	*a doctor.*

	ADJECTIVE
Mary is	*tired.*

We can also put adjectives after the verbs **look**, **seem** and **feel** (see **Unit 65**):

*Mary **looks tired**.*

4 Now look at this example:



*John gave **Mary** an apple.*
*John gave **her** an apple.*

After some verbs (e.g. **give**, **send**, **bring**), we can talk about a person (**Mary**, **her**) and an object:

	VERB	+ PERSON	+ OBJECT
He	*sent*	*Jasmine*	*a book.*
Anna	*made*	*Tom*	*a cup of tea.*
Anna	*brought*	*him*	*a cup of tea.*
He	*left*	*them*	*some money.*
She	*wrote*	*him*	*an email.*

5 We usually put information about times or places at the end of the sentence:

	PLACE
I had a holiday	*in Spain.*

	TIME
They gave their son a watch	*yesterday.*

A There are ten sentences in the box. Circle each sentence.

She didn't come he is rich they like sport we are studying she is a teacher the bus hasn't arrived
they've gone I didn't like the programme they sent me a postcard Paul and Joe have left

B Put the words in brackets ( ) in the correct order.

♦ (bought – she – a TV) She bought a TV.
1 (the match – won – they) .....
2 (is eating – he – a pizza) .....
3 (Anna – films – loves) .....
4 (saw – three cats – I) .....
5 (tennis – we – played) .....
6 (wants – a new house – Steve) .....
7 (forgot – my passport – I) .....

8 (a photo – she – is taking) .....
9 (drank – an orange juice – he) .....
10 (golf – they – like) .....
11 (Joe – Mexico – visited) .....
12 (lost – we – our money) .....

C If the words are in the correct order, put a tick (✓). If not, write the correct sentence.

♦ Mary has phoned. ✓
♦ Brilliant was the film. The film was brilliant.
1 The boys are playing football. .....
2 Michael not has come. .....
3 The children are looking tired. .....
4 Anna eggs does not eat. .....
5 Mary ate a large piece of cake. .....

D Write sentences with the word in brackets ( ) in the correct place.

♦ She wrote a letter. (me) She wrote me a letter.
1 They sent an invitation. (us) .....
2 Michelle gave a present. (Mike) .....
3 I made a sandwich. (her) .....
4 Tom bought a new phone. (Ellie) .....
5 My uncle gave a job. (me) .....
6 She left a message. (you) .....
7 Mary is sending some flowers. (them) .....
8 She brings a coffee every day. (him) .....

E Put the word in brackets ( ) in the correct place in the sentence.

♦ (bought) We bought a house in Italy.
1 (him) They gave a new car.
2 (was) I thirsty this morning.
3 (last night) My friends didn't arrive.
4 (her bag) She lost.
5 (an actor) David is.
6 (a photograph) I sent her.
7 (stayed) We in Turkey for a week.
8 (his wife) Paul met in Scotland.
9 (yesterday) We didn't win the match.
10 (her) I wrote an email.
11 (wonderful) The film was.
12 (today) They left.
13 (me) She brought a cake.
14 (ate) They their dinner at seven o'clock.

29 'Yes/no' questions

1 Here are some 'yes/no' questions:

Are you hungry?
Shall I get the door?
Did you enjoy the film?

We call them 'yes/no' questions because the answer is either 'yes' or 'no':

Are you hungry? *Yes, I am./No, I'm not.*

2 We form 'yes/no' questions like this:

▶ We put the verb **be** before the subject:

BE +	SUBJECT	
Are	*they*	*busy?*
Is	*he*	*ready?*
Was	*she*	*here?*

▶ Or, we put an auxiliary verb (**be**, **have**, **will**, **shall**, **can**, **may**, etc.) before the subject:

AUXILIARY +	SUBJECT +	VERB
Is	*Mark*	*leaving?*
Have	*they*	*gone?*
Will	*they*	*win?*
Can	*you*	*sing?*

(For auxiliary verbs, see **Unit 27**.)

▶ With Present Simple verbs, we put **do** or **does** before the subject:

DO +	SUBJECT +	VERB	
Does	*she*	*work*	*in Paris?*
Do	*they*	*live*	*in New York?*
Do	*you*	*play*	*tennis?*
Does	*he*	*like*	*ice cream?*

Note that we say:

Does she play tennis? (NOT ~~*Does she plays tennis?*~~)

▶ With Past Simple verbs, we put **did** before the subject:

DID +	SUBJECT +	VERB	
Did	*she*	*visit*	*Paris?*
Did	*he*	*go*	*to Spain?*

3 Here are all the forms of **do** questions:

PRESENT SIMPLE		
Do	*I/you/we they*	*work?*
Does	*he/she/it*	*work?*
PAST SIMPLE		
Did	*I/he/she/it/you/we/they*	*work?*

A Make 'yes/no' questions from these statements.

♦ You are learning a language. *Are you learning a language?*
1 She is thirsty. .....
2 He can swim well. .....
3 They were tired after the match. .....
4 She will return to Mexico. .....
5 I may leave now. .....
6 They have all left. .....
7 We shall wait a little longer. .....

B Make 'yes/no' questions from these statements. Start your questions with *Do*, *Does* or *Did*.

♦ You listen to music. *Do you listen to music?*
1 They work in London. .....
2 She visits her uncle. .....

3 We began the course in March. .....

4 Her car goes very fast. .....

5 You bought a new table. .....

C You have met an English girl, Jasmine, in Paris. Use the words in brackets ( ) to ask her some questions. Her answers are on the right. They will help you choose the right tense for your questions.

♦ (like/it here) **You:** Do you like it here? ? ~ **Jasmine:** Yes, I do.

♦ (studying/French) **You:** Are you studying French? ? ~ **Jasmine:** Yes, I am.

1 (like/French music) **You:** ..... ? ~ **Jasmine:** Yes, I do.

2 (staying/in the centre) **You:** ..... ? ~ **Jasmine:** No, I'm not.

3 (come/by plane) **You:** ..... ? ~ **Jasmine:** Yes, I did.

4 (have got/a flat) **You:** ..... ? ~ **Jasmine:** Yes, I have.

5 (working/in Paris) **You:** ..... ? ~ **Jasmine:** No, I'm not.

6 (visited/the museums) **You:** ..... ? ~ **Jasmine:** Yes, I have.

7 (find/your flat easily) **You:** ..... ? ~ **Jasmine:** No, I didn't.

8 (like/French food) **You:** ..... ? ~ **Jasmine:** Yes, I do.

D You want to study English in London. You call a language school to ask some questions. Put the words in brackets ( ) in the right order to make questions.

♦ (of London? – Is – near the centre – the school) Is the school near the centre of London? .....

1 (homework? – give – Do – the teachers) .....

2 (the classes – small? – Are) .....

3 (organize – trips? – Does – the school) .....

4 (a certificate – I get – Will – at the end of the course?) .....

5 (a place now? – I – reserve – Shall) .....

6 (pay – I – Can – by credit card?) .....

E David has just spent a week on holiday in Greece with his wife Mary. Ask him some questions about his holiday using words and phrases from the box. Use his answers to help you.

~~Did~~	Was	the sea	~~Mary~~	~~enjoy~~	comfortable?
Did	Was	the airport	Mary	busy?	the beaches?
Did	Was	the restaurants	learn	expensive?	any Greek?
Were	the hotel	you	like	warm?	~~the holiday?~~

♦ **You:** Did Mary enjoy the holiday? ..... ~ **David:** Yes, she had a good time.

1 **You:** ..... ~ **David:** Yes, there were thousands of people at the airport.

2 **You:** ..... ~ **David:** Yes, the water was very warm.

3 **You:** ..... ~ **David:** No, they were quite cheap.

4 **You:** ..... ~ **David:** No, it's a difficult language for me.

5 **You:** ..... ~ **David:** Yes, she swam and sunbathed every day.

6 **You:** ..... ~ **David:** Yes, it was a lovely hotel.

30 Where, when, why, how

1 **Where**, **when**, **why**, and **how** are question words. We use them like this:

▸ **Where**
We use **where** to ask about places:
Where is Mike? ~ He's at home.

▸ **When**
We use **when** to ask about times and dates:
When will you phone? ~ At six o'clock.

▸ **Why**
We use **why** to ask about the reason for something:
Why is Mary taking a taxi? ~ Because her car isn't working.

▸ **How**
We use **how** to ask 'in what way?':



How did he get to Brighton? ~ He went by train.

We also use **how** to ask about people's health or happiness:
Hello. How are you? ~ I'm fine, thanks.

2 We form questions with **where**, **when**, **why** and **how** like this:

▸ In questions with **be**, we put the subject after **be**:

	BE	+ SUBJECT	
Why	is	Paul	angry?
Where	are	they?	
Why	is	he	here?

▸ In questions with an auxiliary verb (**will**, **is**, **are**, **can**, **must**, etc.), we put the subject after the auxiliary verb:

	AUXILIARY	SUBJECT +	VERB	
Why	are	they	leaving?	
How	will	she	get	there?
When	will	you	phone?	

(For auxiliary verbs, see **Unit 27**.)

▸ In questions with a Present Simple or Past Simple verb, we put a form of **do** before the subject:

	DO +	SUBJECT +	VERB	
Where	does	she	live?	
Why	did	you	phone	the police?
Where	did	he	live?	

A Put the words in brackets ( ) in the correct order to make questions.

♦ (you – where – live – do – ?) *Where do you live?*
1 (do – get up – you – when – ?) .....
2 (she – does – where – come – from – ?) .....
3 (leaving – they – are – when – ?) .....
4 (he – is – why – waiting – ?) .....
5 (are – you – how – ?) .....
6 (did – to Scotland – how – get – you – ?) .....
7 (is – where – the town centre?) .....
8 (Paul – drive – so fast – does – why – ?) .....
9 (when – the film – does – start – ?) .....
10 (will – how – you – travel – ?) .....
11 (is – running – she – why – ?) .....
12 (did – where – buy – you – that picture – ?) .....

B Put *Where, When, Why* or *How* in the gaps to complete the questions.

♦ Where ..... are you going? ~ To the shops.
1 ..... are you leaving? ~ At six o'clock.
2 ..... does she take a taxi to work? ~ Because she doesn't have a car.
3 ..... did they get to France? ~ By boat.
4 ..... is he studying Spanish? ~ Because he wants to work in Spain.
5 ..... do you have breakfast? ~ At seven-thirty.
6 ..... is the restaurant? ~ In Carlton Street.
7 ..... are you feeling today? ~ I've got a headache.
8 ..... did she buy that dictionary? ~ In the bookshop near the station.
9 ..... did Grace go to the police? ~ Because she lost her passport.

C Use the 'full' answers to write questions with *where, when, why* or *how*. (We usually use the short, underlined answers when we reply to a question.)

♦ Question: When did you lose your bag?
Answer: (I lost my bag) On Saturday morning.
1 Question: .....
Answer: (I met Joanna) At a club in the centre of town.
2 Question: .....
Answer: (got home) By bus.
3 Question: .....
Answer: (I'm looking for a new job) Because I want more money.
4 Question: .....
Answer: (The nearest hospital is) In Park Street.
5 Question: .....
Answer: (You get to Park Street) On the number 38 bus.
6 Question: .....
Answer: (They're going to see the film) On Friday evening.
7 Question: .....
Answer: (She left the party at ten o'clock) Because she was tired.
8 Question: .....
Answer: (He's studying English) At a language school in Edinburgh.

D If the underlined words are wrong, change them. Put a tick (✓) if they are right.

♦ How is does ..... she get to work in the mornings?
♦ Where do ✓ ..... you normally go for your holidays?
1 How is ..... your father?
2 Why do ..... you working so hard at the moment?
3 When does ..... she finish work yesterday afternoon?
4 Why do ..... you go to the bank every day?
5 Where does ..... Peter yesterday?
6 Where do ..... Mike live?
7 How do ..... you get from the art gallery to the swimming pool?

31 Who, what, which

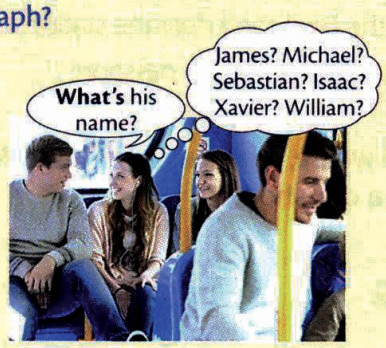
1 We use **who** to ask about people:

A: *Who are you going to visit?*
B: *I'm going to visit my sister.*
Who did Jasmine invite to her party?

2 We use **what** and **which** to ask about things:

What film did you see at the cinema?
Which newspaper do you want, The Times or the Daily Telegraph?

We normally use **what** when there are many possible answers:



We normally use **which** when there is a small number of possible answers:



3 When we form questions, we normally put a form of be or an auxiliary verb (e.g. **can**, **will**, **do**) after **who**, **what** and **which**:

Who is the President of Peru?
Who can speak Chinese?
Who did you meet at the party?
What's the capital of India? ~ New Delhi.
What's she doing?
What was the name of your teacher?
What does your father do?
Which car will you buy, the Fiat or the Ford?
Which shirt do you prefer, the red or the blue?

A Put *who*, *what* or *which* in the gaps.

	QUESTIONS	ANSWERS
♦	What ..... did you eat last night?	~ Fish, peas and potatoes.
1	..... are you messaging?	~ Steve.
2	..... restaurant do you prefer, the Pizza Palace or the Spaghetti King?	~ The Pizza Palace.
3	..... 's the answer to question 13?	~ I don't know.
4	..... bus do we take to the museum, the number 24 or the number 38?	~ The number 38.
5	..... did you invite to the party?	~ Anthony, Steve and Kathryn.
6	..... are you doing at the weekend?	~ I'm driving to Bristol.
7	..... pen is yours, the green one or the blue one?	~ The green one.
8	..... has been to Africa?	~ I have.
9	..... 's the capital of Scotland?	~ Edinburgh.
10	..... 's the boy in the photo?	~ My cousin.

B Complete the dialogues using the words from the box.

is ~~What~~ do Who is are What did Who is are Which were

♦	A: What ..... did you do this morning?	B: We bought a new car.
1	A: Where ..... you buy that painting?	B: We bought it in Mexico.
2	A: Where ..... the nearest bank?	B: In the High Street.

3	A: Why ..... you tired yesterday evening?	B: I worked very hard all day.
4	A: When ..... you get up in the morning?	B: I get up at seven o'clock.
5	A: ..... car do you prefer, the family car or the sports car?	B: The sports car.
6	A: What ..... they doing?	B: They're playing tennis.
7	A: ..... did you meet at the station?	B: I met Jasmine.
8	A: Who ..... they?	B: They're my sisters.
9	A: ..... is the name of the hotel?	B: It's called the Bridge Hotel.
10	A: ..... does she like best?	B: Tom.
11	A: Who ..... the richest person in the world?	B: I don't know!
12	A: Which film ..... better?	B: The French one.

C Complete the questions. (We usually use the short, underlined answers when we reply to a question.)

♦ A: Which *song do you prefer?* .....
B: (I prefer) The Spanish song.

1 A: What ..... ?
B: (She bought) Bread and milk.

2 A: Which ..... ?
B: (They use) The blue book.

3 A: What ..... ?
B: (I saw) The Arc de Triomphe and the Eiffel Tower (in Paris).

4 A: Who ..... ?
B: (I met) My aunt and uncle (at the airport).

5 A: Which ..... ?
B: (I am catching) The 13.30 (train).

6 A: Who ..... ?
B: (I will visit) My sister and her family (in Paris).

D Write questions to match the answers. Begin your questions with *who, what* or *which.*

♦ Who is he? .....
He's my brother.

1 ..... ?
Jack drinks coffee in the morning.

2 ..... ?
I'm going to see a film tomorrow.

3 ..... ?
They are playing cricket.

4 ..... ?
I prefer the blue book.

5 ..... ?
She likes Peter.

6 ..... ?
He bought the small car.

32 How long/far/often ...?

1 We use **How long ...?** to ask about a period of time:

How long have you been waiting? ~ About 20 minutes.

How long will the journey take? ~ Three hours.

We use **from ... to** or **from ... until** to talk about a period of time:

She was a student from 2007 to 2012.

Tomorrow I'm working from nine o'clock until six o'clock.

2 We use **How far ...?** to ask about the distance from one place to another. We can use **from** and **to** with the places we are asking about:

How far is it from Amsterdam to Paris? ~ 475 kilometres.

How far are the shops from here? ~ Not far.

3 We use **How often ...?** to ask about the number of times something happens. We can use phrases like **every day**, **once a week**, etc. in the answer:

How often do the buses run? ~ Every hour.

How often do you play squash? ~ Twice a week.

4 We can use **How much ...?** to ask about the price of something:

How much is a return ticket to Florence?

How much did you pay for this car?

5 We use **How much ...?** with an uncountable noun to ask about the amount of something. An uncountable noun cannot be plural because it describes something that cannot be counted (e.g. **bread**, **work**, **weather**, **money**, **music**, **meat**, **milk**, **cheese**).

How much bread is there in the cupboard?

How much work have you done today?

6 We use **How many ...?** with a plural noun to ask about numbers:

How many students are in your class? ~ 15.

How many people went to the party? ~ Ten.

7 We use **How old ...?** to ask about someone's age:

How old are you? ~ I'm 19.

Note that we say:

I am 19. OR: *19.* (NOT ~~*I have 19.*~~)

We can also say:

I'm 19 years old. (NOT ~~*I'm 19 years.*~~)

A Complete the questions using the words in brackets and *How long*, *How old*, *How often*, etc. Put the verbs into the correct tense.

	QUESTIONS	ANSWERS
♦	(How/you/stay/in New Zealand?) How long did you stay in New Zealand?	~ I stayed there for six months.
1	(How/he/go/to the gym?)	~ He goes every day.
2	(How/a single room/cost?)	~ It costs £50 a night.
3	(How/be/you when you went to live in Australia?)	~ I was 15 when I went there.
4	(How/exams/you/going to take?)	~ I'm going to take three exams.
5	(How/the course/last?)	~ It will last for two years.
6	(How/be/it from here to the nearest bus stop?)	~ It's about 200 metres.

B Write questions using the words in brackets ( ) and *How old, How much, How many,* etc. Put the verbs into the correct tense.

♦ A: How old is your husband? (your husband/be)
B: He is 34. He'll be 35 next month.

1 A: _____ (languages/you/speak)
B: I speak three – English, French and Chinese.

2 A: _____ (it/be/from here to the airport)
B: It's about 25 kilometres.

3 A: _____ (the meal/cost)
B: I can't remember, but it wasn't very expensive.

4 A: _____ (you/stay there)
B: I stayed there from June until October.

5 A: _____ (you/brush your teeth)
B: I brush them twice a day.

6 A: _____ (cheese/you/buy)
B: I bought half a kilo.

C Complete each of these sentences by putting one word into each gap.

♦ It was my birthday last week. I am _____ 21 years old.

1 The programme lasts _____ eight-thirty _____ ten o'clock.

2 There is a train to the centre _____ 30 minutes in the morning.

3 How _____ money have you got?

4 How far is it _____ here _____ the city centre?

5 My grandfather is 70 _____ _____.

6 How _____ countries have you visited?

D Write Rob's questions to complete the dialogue. Start with *How* each time.

Anna: I'm doing a course in computer programming.
Rob: Oh really. ♦ How long have you been doing it _____?
Anna: I've been doing it for about a month. It's at the local college.
Rob: 1 _____?
Anna: I go there twice a week.
Rob: 2 _____?
Anna: The lessons last for three hours, from two o'clock until five o'clock.
Rob: 3 _____?
Anna: I study at home every evening.
Rob: 4 _____?
Anna: There are about 25 people in my class.
Rob: 5 _____?
Anna: They're all about the same age as me.
Rob: 6 _____?
Anna: It's not far from my home.
Rob: 7 _____?
Anna: It doesn't cost anything. My company is paying.

33 What ... like?

1 Look at this question and answer:

A: *What's Julie like?*
B: *She's kind and very clever.*

We use **What ... like?** to ask about a person's physical appearance (tall, short, pretty, etc.) or character (interesting, boring, friendly, unfriendly, etc).

We can also use **What ... like?** to ask about places, books, films and events (e.g. a party, a football match):

A: *What's Rio de Janeiro like?*
B: *Well, the beaches are wonderful but the traffic is awful.*
A: *What's Spielberg's latest film like?*
B: *It's excellent.*

2 We use **look like** to talk about someone's appearance:

A: *What does Julie look like?*
B: *She's tall with brown hair.*

We can also use **like** with **taste**, **feel**, **sound**, and **smell**:

A: *What does that taste like?*
B: *It tastes like cheese.*
A: *What is this material?*
B: *I don't know. It looks like wool but it feels like cotton.*

3 We can also use **like** with the question word **Who** and in statements to mean 'similar to':

A: *Who's Julie like – her father or her mother?*
B: *She's like her mother.* (= She is similar to her mother.)
Rio de Janeiro is like Buenos Aires. (= Rio is similar to Buenos Aires.)

4 The word **like** in **What's she like?** is a preposition; it is not the verb **like**. Here is an example of **like** used as a verb:

A: *What music does Julie like?*
B: *She likes rock music.*

5 We usually use **How ...?**, not **What ... like?**, when we ask about someone's health or temporary state:

A: *How's your brother today?*
B: *He's feeling much better.*
A: *How was your boss today?*
B: *He was very friendly today!*

A Write questions using the words in brackets and *is*, *are*, or *look*. Sometimes more than one question is possible.

♦ (What/Ellie/like)
A: What is Ellie like ? B: She's clever, but she's a bit boring.

♦ (What/Jasmine/like)
A: What does Jasmine look like ? B: She's quite short and has dark hair.

1 (What/Peter/like)
A: ..... ? B: He's not a very interesting person.

2 (What/Anna's parents/like)
A: ..... ? B: They're very friendly.

3 (What/Tom/like)
A: ..... ? B: He's very tall, and he has blond hair.

4 (What/Eva/like)
A: ..... ? B: She's tall and strong.

5 (What/Rob and Tom/like)
A: ..... ? B: They're very amusing.

6 (What/Lucy/like)
A: ..... ? B: She's tall and slim, and she wears glasses.

B Read the following descriptions.

Kiwis are a round, brown fruit with a rough skin. They have almost no smell, but they are sweet, with a flavour similar to strawberries.
A double bass is a musical instrument. It is the largest member of the violin family. It has a deep sound.

Now for each of the answers, write a question about kiwis or a double bass, using *look/sound/taste/smell/feel* + *like*.

QUESTIONS	ANSWERS
♦ What do kiwis look like ?	~ They're round and brown.
1 ?	~ It has a deep sound.
2 ?	~ They don't really have a smell.
3 ?	~ They have a flavour like strawberries.
4 ?	~ Like a very big violin.
5 ?	~ They are rough to the touch.

C Use the words in brackets ( ) to write a question with the preposition *like* or the verb *like*. Add any other necessary words.

♦ (What music/you/like)
A: What music do you like ? **B:** I like rock music.

♦ (What/Julie/like)
A: What is Julie like ? **B:** She is very amusing.

1 (Who/your sister/like)
A: ? **B:** She likes a boy in her class.

2 (What/Paul's brothers/like)
A: ? **B:** They think they're clever, but I don't.

3 (What/Jasmine/like/for breakfast)
A: ? **B:** She likes toast and marmalade.

4 (Who/you/like)
A: ? **B:** I'm like my mother.

5 (What/Mary's husband/like)
A: ? **B:** He is rather boring. He's not like her.

D Write questions with *What … like*? (for things that are permanent) or *How …?* (for health or temporary situations). Use a form of *be* and the other words in brackets ( ).

♦ (be/Atlanta) What is Atlanta like ? ~ It's a very modern city.

♦ (be/Mike/yesterday) How was Mike yesterday ? ~ He felt a lot better.

1 (be/John's flat) ? ~ It's very big, and it has a wonderful view over the city.

2 (be/your boss/yesterday) ? ~ He was tired but friendly.

3 (be/a squash racquet) ? ~ It's similar to a tennis racket, but lighter.

4 (be/your sister) ? ~ She's very well, thank you.

5 (be/Portugal) ? ~ It's very interesting. There are lots of things to see.

34 Who and what: subject and object

1 Compare these examples:



Mary



Mary

SUBJECT

Anna: *Who told you?*

Mary: *James told me.*

This is a subject question.

OBJECT

Anna: *Who did you tell?*

Mary: *I told William.*

This is an object question.

2 Compare subject and object questions with **who**:

In the sentence *Who told you?*, **Who** is the subject. Here is another example:

SUBJECT

Anna: *Who wrote* Hamlet?

(= **Somebody** wrote *Hamlet*. Who?)

Mary: *Shakespeare wrote* Hamlet.

When **who** is the subject, the order of the words is the same as in a statement:

SUBJECT

Who is going to come with me?
Who lives in that old house?
Who wants some more coffee?

In the sentence *Who did you tell?*, **Who** is the object. Here is another example:

OBJECT

Anna: *Who did you meet last night?*

(= You met **somebody**. Who?)

Mary: *I met a couple of friends.*

When **who** is the object, we use an auxiliary (**be**, **do**, **have**, etc.) before the subject:

OBJECT

Who are you going to invite?
Who did Laura ask for help?
Who have you told about this?

3 Compare subject and object questions with **what**:

SUBJECT

What is in this dish?

(= **Something** is in it. What?)

OBJECT

What did you buy at the shops?

(= You bought **something**. What?)

A Write questions beginning with *Who* or *What* from the sentences in brackets ( ).

♦ (Eric met somebody.) *Who did Eric meet?*

♦ (Somebody ate the last piece of cake.) *Who ate the last piece of cake?*

1 (Somebody wants some more coffee.) .....

2 (Something happened at the end of the story.) .....

3 (Somebody is going to pay the bill.) .....

4 (He had something for breakfast.) .....

5 (Their email said something.) .....

6 (Somebody knows the answer to my question.) .....

7 (They saw something.) .....

8 (She is phoning somebody.) .....

B Use the 'full' answers to write questions using *Who* or *What*. (We usually use the short, underlined answers when we reply to a question.)

	QUESTIONS	ANSWERS
♦	Who were you talking to on the phone ?	~ (I was talking to) Elizabeth (on the phone).
♦	What was the result of the game ?	~ (The result of the game was) 2–0 to Italy.
1	..... ?	~ Anita and Frank (went on the trip).
2	..... ?	~ I'm not sure (what's happening in this film).
3	..... ?	~ (I'm going to call) Jasmine.
4	..... ?	~ (I watched) that new comedy programme (on TV last night).
5	..... ?	~ John (sent these flowers).
6	..... ?	~ (I bought) a book (in that shop).
7	..... ?	~ Some good news (has made Tom so happy).

C Read this story and then complete the questions.

Two days ago Robert took his driving test. He failed it. Afterwards he met his friend Raphael. He told Raphael that he had failed his test. Then he said, 'Don't tell anyone. It's a secret.' Raphael said, 'OK, I won't tell anyone.' Later that day, Raphael met Emilia for coffee and he said, 'Robert failed his driving test.' Emilia laughed. 'Poor Robert,' she said.



	QUESTIONS	ANSWERS
♦	(What/Robert/do/two days ago?) What did Robert do two days ago?	~ He took his driving test.
1	(What/happen?)	~ He failed it.
2	(Who/take/his/driving test?)	~ Robert.
3	(What/Robert/fail?)	~ His driving test.
4	(What/Robert/say/to Raphael?)	~ He said, 'Don't tell anyone.'
5	(Who/meet/for coffee?)	~ Raphael and Emilia.

D Complete the questions for the answers using the words in brackets ( ).

♦	(Mark Chapman/kill)	Who did Mark Chapman kill ?	~ He killed John Lennon.
♦	(John Lennon/kill)	Who killed John Lennon ?	~ Mark Chapman killed John Lennon.
1	(the Nobel Prize/win)	Who ..... for Physics in 1909?	~ Marconi and Braun.
2	(Marconi and Braun/invent)	What ..... ?	~ Short wave radio.
3	(Everest/climb)	Who ..... with Hillary?	~ Sherpa Tenzing.
4	(Prince Harry/marry)	Who ..... ?	~ He married Meghan Markle.
5	(Hiroshima/destroy)	What ..... ?	~ An atomic bomb.
6	(Churchill/smoke)	What ..... ?	~ Cigars.

35 Whose is this? ~ It's John's.

1 **'s and '**

We use the apostrophe (') to talk about possession:

This is Mike's house. (= The house belongs to Mike.)

Here are the rules:

- Singular noun (e.g. **Mary**) + **'s**:
  *Where is **Tom's** bike?*
- Irregular plural noun (e.g. **men**) + **'s**:
  *Have you got the **children's** books?*
- Regular plural noun (e.g. **teachers**) + **'**:
  *We have eight children. This is the **boys'** bedroom, and this is the **girls'** bedroom.*

2 We use the apostrophe for people, but not normally for things. We use **of** for things:

*The **boys'** room.* (NOT ~~*The room of the boys.*~~)
*The end **of the film.*** (NOT ~~*The film's end.*~~)

We say:

*I'm going to the **newsagent's**, the **baker's**, the **butcher's** ...*

because we mean 'the newsagent's shop/the baker's shop/the butcher's shop'.

3 We use **whose** to ask about possession:

*A: **Whose** car is that?* (= Who does that car belong to?)
B: It's John's. (= It belongs to John.)

*A: **Whose** shoes are those?*
B: They're mine. (= They belong to me.)

The word **whose** does not change:

***Whose book** is that?*
***Whose books** are those?*

We often use **this**, **that**, **these** and **those** (see **Unit 52**) in our questions. We often use **mine**, **yours**, **his**, etc. (see **Unit 57**) in our answers:

Whose watch is that? ~ *It's Steve's.* / ~ *It's his.*

(We don't need to say: It's Steve's watch.)

4 **Whose** sounds the same as **who's** but it is different in meaning:

***Whose** coat is this?* (= Who does this coat belong to?)
***Who's** coming?* (= Who is coming?)
***Who's** finished?* (= Who has finished?)

A Complete these questions and answers. Use *Whose* and the words in brackets ( ) in each question. Use *It's* or *They're* in each answer.

	QUESTIONS		ANSWERS	
♦	(books/be) Whose books are	those?	~ They're	Mike's.
♦	(car/be) Whose car is	that?	~ It's	hers.
1	(pens/be)	those?	~	mine.
2	(umbrella/be)	that?	~	Paul's.
3	(house/be)	that?	~	Steven King's.
4	(clothes/be)	those?	~	his.
5	(rings/be)	those?	~	Carla's.
6	(bike/be)	that?	~	Christine's.
7	(painting/be)	that?	~	John's.
8	(bag/be)	that?	~	hers.
9	(apple/be)	that?	~	Michelle's.
10	(motorbike/be)	that?	~	my grandfather's.
11	(taxi/be)	that?	~	ours.
12	(jackets/be)	those?	~	the tennis players'.

B Rewrite each sentence using an apostrophe (') and *This is* or *These are*.

♦ This umbrella belongs to Lucy. This is Lucy's umbrella.
♦ These books belong to the students. These are the students' books.
1 These keys belong to Peter. .....
2 This football belongs to the boys. .....
3 This house belongs to my teacher. .....
4 These bikes belong to my sisters. .....
5 This room belongs to the children. .....
6 This chair belongs to the manager. .....
7 These suitcases belong to Mark. .....
8 These bags belong to the women. .....
9 This laptop belongs to Jasmine. .....

C Complete the conversation using the names of shops from the box and apostrophes (').

fishmonger chemist hairdresser travel agent
greengrocer butcher newsagent ~~baker~~

Mike: Have we got everything we need for the weekend?

Anna: I hope so. I went to the ♦ baker's for some bread. Then I went to the bank. After that, I bought some apples at the [1] ....., and some cough medicine at the [2] .....

Mike: Did you get any meat?

Anna: Yes. I went to the [3] ..... and bought some beef. I also got some fish at the [4] ...... What did you get?

Mike: Well, I had a cup of coffee and a piece of cake, and then I bought a newspaper at the [5] ...... Then I went to the [6] ..... to pick up some tickets.

Anna: Did you get any milk or sugar or tea?

Mike: No, I'm sorry. I forgot. But I did go to the [7] ..... for a haircut. Do you like it?

D Complete these sentences with *Who's* or *Whose*.

♦ Who's ..... finished their homework?
♦ Whose ..... flat are you staying in?
1 ..... going to the cinema tonight?
2 ..... watch is that?
3 ..... got an answer to question number three?
4 ..... playing football in the park on Sunday?
5 ..... house is near to the railway station?
6 ..... bags are these?
7 ..... chair is that?
8 ..... been to France this year?

36 Question tags

1 A question tag is a short question (e.g. **isn't it?**, **haven't we?**) that we can add at the end of a statement:

Henry: *We've met before, haven't we?*
Julian: *Yes, we have.*

2 Look at this part of a conversation:

Anna: *Manon is Swiss.*
David: *No, she's French, isn't she?*
(= I thought she was French, but am I wrong?)

When tag questions really are questions, like David's, the voice goes up at the end.

But when tag questions are not really questions, the voice goes down at the end:

That was a boring programme, wasn't it?
(= I think that was a boring programme.)

3 Note that the verb we use in the tag depends on the verb used in the statement:

	VERB	+ TAG
be:	*You're French,*	*aren't you?*
verb:	*He plays golf,*	*doesn't he?*
auxiliary verb:	*It has arrived,*	*hasn't it?*

Thus, most verbs use **do/does**, while **be** and **auxiliary verbs** use the same verb in the question tag.

4 A positive statement has a negative tag:

POSITIVE	+ NEGATIVE
I'm right,	*aren't I?* (NOT ~~*am't I?*~~)
You're 18,	*aren't you?*
They're getting tired,	*aren't they?*
They were friendly,	*weren't they?*
He lives in France	*doesn't he?*
You speak Spanish,	*don't you?*
You passed your exams,	*didn't you?*
She has left,	*hasn't she?*
You can drive,	*can't you?*
The bus will come soon,	*won't it?*

5 A negative statement has a positive tag:

NEGATIVE	+ POSITIVE
It isn't very cheap,	*is it?*
We aren't going to be late,	*are we?*
She wasn't angry,	*was she?*
You don't like this,	*do you?*
She didn't win,	*did she?*
She hasn't visited Ireland,	*has she?*
She can't drive,	*can she?*
It won't rain today,	*will it?*

A Complete the conversation by putting in question tags.

Tim: We haven't met before, • have we ?
Jo: No, I've just arrived in this country.
Tim: You come from Australia, [1] ?
Jo: Yes, from Sydney.
Tim: It's very hot there, [2] ?
Jo: Most of the time, but not always.
Tim: But it never gets very cold, [3] ?
Jo: No. Well, not as cold as some places.
Tim: They speak English there, [4] ?
Jo: Yes, that's right.
Tim: You haven't been here long, [5] ?
Jo: No, I only got here two weeks ago.
Tim: You're on holiday, [6] ?
Jo: Yes, I'm travelling around for six months.

B Complete the sentences by putting in question tags.

♦ The programme starts at seven o'clock, doesn't it ? ~ Yes, that's right.

1 I can use this ticket on any bus, ... ? ~ Yes, you can.

2 The bill won't be very high, ... ? ~ No, I don't think so.

3 He wasn't very polite, ... ? ~ No, he wasn't.

4 I didn't make a mistake, ... ? ~ No, you didn't.

5 It won't be a difficult thing to do, ... ? ~ No, I don't think so.

6 That was a lovely meal, ... ? ~ Yes, it was delicious.

7 You can't play the piano, ... ? ~ No, I can't.

8 They left last week, ... ? ~ Yes, that's right.

C Complete the conversation with question tags.

Charles: You're going to Helsinki this week, ♦ aren't you ?

Marta: Yes, I'm going tomorrow.

Charles: Helsinki is in Finland, [1] ..... ?

Marta: Yes, it's the capital.

Charles: You've been there before, [2] ..... ?

Marta: Yes, two years ago.

Charles: But you can't speak Finnish, [3] ..... ?

Marta: No, I can't.

Charles: But a lot of Finnish people speak English, [4] ..... ?

Marta: Yes.

Charles: Well, I'll see you before you leave, [5] ..... ?

Marta: Yes, I'll see you tonight.

D Use the replies to complete the sentences. Use question tags.

♦ A: She comes from Italy, doesn't she?
B: Yes, she comes from Italy.

1 A: You can .....
B: Yes, I can speak French very well.

2 A: You haven't .....
B: No, I haven't heard this story.

3 A: You went .....
B: Yes, I went to Frank's party.

4 A: It isn't .....
B: No, it isn't very far from here.

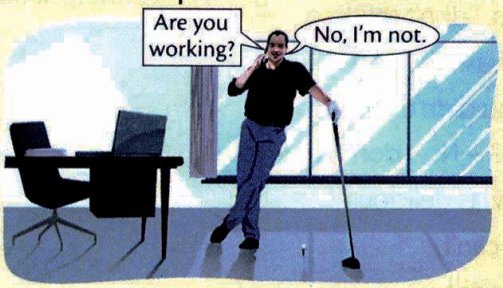
5 A: She won't .....
B: No, she won't be angry.

6 A: You're not .....
B: No, I'm not going to leave now.

7 A: You'll .....
B: Yes, I'll be at home tonight.

37 Short answers

1 Look at this example:



QUESTION +	SHORT ANSWER
Is he at work?	*~ Yes, he is.*
Can I come?	*~ No, you can't.*
Do you like it?	*~ Yes, I do.*
Does she live here?	*~ No, she doesn't.*

We call these 'short answers' because they are not 'full' answers:

Is she sick? { *Yes, she is sick.* (= full answer) / *Yes, she is.* (= short answer)

We use short answers to reply to 'yes/no' questions (see **Unit 29**):

Are you coming? { *Yes, I am.* / *No, I'm not.*

2 We form short answers by not using the main verb from the question:

Have they gone? ~ Yes, they have ~~gone~~.
Did he go to Paris? ~ Yes, he did ~~go~~.
Is she waiting? ~ Yes, she is ~~waiting~~.

When the main verb is **be**, we use **be**:

Are you tired? ~ Yes, I am.

When we answer **No**, we use a negative verb:

Will they win? ~ No, they won't.
Did Paul come? ~ No, he didn't.
Are you cold? ~ No, I'm not.

We never use positive short forms in short answers:

Are you tired? ~ Yes, I am. (NOT ~~*Yes, I'm.*~~)
Is he happy? ~ Yes, he is. (NOT ~~*Yes, he's.*~~)

3 We can also use short answers to reply 'yes' or 'no' to statements:

STATEMENT +	REPLY
He's working hard.	*~ Yes, he is.*
She's at work.	*~ No, she isn't.*
She loves films.	*~ Yes, she does.*
He liked the book.	*~ Yes, he did.*
She can swim fast.	*~ Yes, she can.*
You've finished.	*~ No, I haven't.*
She'll enjoy herself.	*~ Yes, she will.*

4 When we write, we normally put a comma (,) after **Yes** or **No** in short answers:

He lives in London. ~ No, he doesn't.

A Make short answers by putting in a 'full stop' (.) and a line (—).

	QUESTIONS	ANSWERS
♦	Can you come tonight?	~ Yes, I can. ~~come tonight.~~
1	Will you see Edward tomorrow?	~ Yes, I will see Edward tomorrow.
2	Have you finished your breakfast?	~ No, I haven't finished my breakfast.
3	Do you drive to work?	~ Yes, I do drive to work.
4	Did she come yesterday?	~ No, she didn't come yesterday.
5	Were you tired after the game?	~ Yes, I was tired after the game.
6	Can she sing well?	~ No, she can't sing well.
7	Did Tom have a holiday?	~ Yes, he did have a holiday.
8	Is she studying French?	~ Yes, she is studying French.

9 Do you play golf? ~ No, I don't play golf.
10 Did you buy a new table? ~ Yes, I did buy a new table.
11 Are you thirsty? ~ No, I'm not thirsty.
12 Has Jasmine been to Mexico before? ~ Yes, she has been there before.

B Write the correct answers to the questions. Use the phrases from the box.

Yes, she did. No, he doesn't. No, she wasn't. Yes, he has. No, I can't.
Yes, I will. ~~Yes, they have.~~ Yes, I do. No, they aren't.

♦ Have they all left? ~ Yes, they have.
1 Does Steve work hard? ~ .....
2 Do you like this music? ~ .....
3 Are they listening? ~ .....
4 Did she enjoy her holiday? ~ .....
5 Was Mary at the concert? ~ .....
6 Will you phone this weekend? ~ .....
7 Can you play the guitar? ~ .....
8 Has he gone to bed? ~ .....

C Write positive short answers and then negative short answers for the questions.

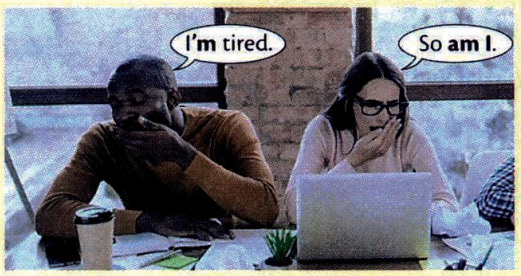
	POSITIVE:	NEGATIVE:
♦ Was the film good?	~ Yes, it was.	~ No, it wasn't.
1 Does he enjoy French food?	~ Yes, ...	~ No, ...
2 Can he swim?	~ Yes, ...	~ No, ...
3 Will they return tonight?	~ Yes, ...	~ No, ...
4 Do you want to buy that shirt?	~ Yes, ...	~ No, ...
5 Are they coming in Mike's car?	~ Yes, ...	~ No, ...
6 Did you ask Ellie to come?	~ Yes, ...	~ No, ...
7 Is your headache better?	~ Yes, ...	~ No, ...
8 Were the exams difficult?	~ Yes, ...	~ No, ...

D William always says *Yes*. Tom always says *No*. Write their answers.

	WILLIAM:	TOM:
♦ Japanese people eat a lot of fish.	~ Yes, they do.	~ No, they don't.
1 The sun always shines in England.	~	~ .....
2 New York is busier than London.	~	~ .....
3 Italy will win the next World Cup.	~	~ .....
4 Bananas are delicious.	~	~ .....
5 Cats can sing beautifully.	~	~ .....
6 The English speak very slowly.	~	~ .....

38 So am I, I am too, Neither am I, etc.

1 Look at this:



She is saying that she is also tired.

2 Here are some more examples:

*He **was** very angry. ~ So **was** I.*

*My flat's quite small. ~ So **is** mine.*
*They **were** waiting. ~ So **was** she.*
*I'm going to have tea. ~ So **am** I.*
*Anna **has** finished her work and so **has** Mary.*
*They've been waiting. ~ So **has** she.*
*I **work** in an office. ~ So **do** I.*
*I **enjoyed** the film. ~ So **did** I.*
*Raphael **will** pass the exam and so **will** you.*
*He **can** drive. ~ So **can** she.*

Note:

- we use **so** after a positive statement;
- the verb we use after **so** depends on the verb used in the positive statement.

3 Instead of **so am I**, we can say **I am too**, with the same meaning. Here are some examples:

*I'm tired. ~ **I am too.***
*We've got a small flat. ~ **We have too.***
*I work in an office. ~ **I do too.***
*William enjoyed the film and **I did too.***
*He can drive. ~ **She can too.***

4 We can use expressions like **neither am I** to reply to a negative statement:

*I'm not tired. ~ Neither **am I**.*
(= And I'm not tired.)
*I haven't seen that film. ~ Neither **have I**.*
*I don't like this place. ~ Neither **do I**.*
*I didn't see that play. ~ Neither **did I**.*
*His sister can't drive and neither **can he**.*

5 We can say **I'm not either** to mean the same as **neither am I**:

*I'm not tired. ~ **I'm not** either.*
(= And I'm not tired.)
*I haven't seen that film. ~ **I haven't** either.*
*I don't like this place. ~ **I don't** either.*
*I didn't see that play. ~ **I didn't** either.*
*His sister can't drive and **he can't** either.*

A Complete the sentences with *so, too, either* or *neither*.

♦ I really enjoyed that meal. ~ So ..... did I.
♦ I haven't done the homework. ~ I haven't either .....
♦ We live in the centre of town. ~ We do too .....
1 I don't like football. ~ ..... do I.
2 I haven't been to America. ~ ..... have I.
3 My father works in an office. ~ ..... does mine.
4 I haven't seen the news today. ~ ..... have I.
5 I play a lot of different sports. ~ I do ..... .
6 I've been working very hard lately. ~ ..... have I.
7 Anna will be at the party and ..... will Jasmine.
8 My brother can't speak any foreign languages and ..... can my sister.
9 Helen sent me a birthday card and Robin did ..... .
10 George isn't going to the meeting and I'm not ..... .
11 Anthony arrived late and ..... did I.
12 Kathy didn't go to the concert and ..... did I.

B Write replies to the sentences using *so* or *neither* and the words in brackets ( ).

♦ I've got a cold. (I) ~ So have I.
♦ I haven't got much money. (I) ~ Neither have I.
1 We're going to the concert. (we) ~ .....
2 My pen doesn't work. (mine) ~ .....
3 I haven't seen Mike today. (I) ~ .....
4 My meal was excellent. (mine) ~ .....
5 I've been ill. (Frank) ~ .....
6 Ron didn't go to the party. (George) ~ .....
7 I can't understand this game. (I) ~ .....
8 I'm not working tomorrow. (I) ~ .....
9 Ruth passed the exam. (John) ~ .....
10 I've eaten enough. (I) ~ .....
11 I'm going to see that film. (we) ~ .....
12 My car is very old. (mine) ~ .....

C Look at the information in the table about four people. Complete the sentences using *so, too, either* or *neither.*

	JULIA	ROBERT	AMBER	PAUL
Lives in:	New York	Chicago	New York	Los Angeles
Speaks:	Spanish	French	Spanish	French
Drives?	Yes	No	No	Yes
Likes:	reading	travelling	travelling	reading
Plays:	basketball	basketball	tennis	tennis

♦ Julia lives in New York and Amber *does too* .
♦ Julia lives in New York and *so does* Amber.
1 Robert doesn't live in New York and ..... Paul.
2 Robert doesn't live in New York and Paul ..... .
3 Julia speaks Spanish and ..... Amber.
4 Julia speaks Spanish and Amber ..... .
5 Robert can't speak Spanish and ..... Paul.
6 Robert can't speak Spanish and Paul ..... .
7 Julia can drive and Paul ..... .
8 Robert can't drive and ..... Amber.
9 Julia has passed her driving test and ..... Paul.
10 Robert likes travelling and ..... Amber.
11 Julia likes reading and Paul ..... .
12 Julia plays basketball and ..... Robert.
13 Amber doesn't play basketball and ..... Paul.

Test D Sentences and questions

A A police officer is asking Raphael some questions. Make questions by putting the words in brackets ( ) in the right order. Complete the short answers.

Police officer: (get – you – did – sir – home – your – before – wife,)
♦ *Did you get home before your wife, Sir* ?

Raphael: Yes, ♦ *I did* . Half an hour before.

Police officer: (normally – the – home – take – do – bus – you)
1 ?

Raphael: No, 2 . I normally walk. But it was raining yesterday.

Police officer: I see. Shall we sit down, sir?

Raphael: Of course. I'll make you some tea.

Police officer: (wife – soon – is – home – coming – your)
3 ?

Raphael: Yes, 4 . Just like yesterday.

Police officer: (by – travel – she – bus – does)
5 ?

Raphael: No, 6 . She runs.

Police officer: Runs? Even in the rain, sir?

Raphael: That's right. She likes to exercise.

Police officer: (she – was – yesterday – tired)
7 ?

Raphael: Yes, 8 . Sometimes she runs too fast.

Police officer: If she was running and you were on the bus, who was driving your car when it crashed, then?

Raphael: I've no idea, officer. Do you take sugar in your tea?

B Noah is going to ask people in Manchester about their lives and attitudes. Write the first word in each question to complete his questionnaire.

♦ *When* do you usually go to bed?
♦ *Do* you play sports?
1 ..... many brothers and sisters have you got?
2 ..... was your childhood like?
3 ..... do you talk to if you need financial advice?
4 ..... you do your shopping in the morning, afternoon or evening?
5 ..... much exercise do you do?
6 ..... type of washing powder do you use?
7 ..... do you enjoy doing on Saturday nights?
8 ..... do English people eat so little fish?
9 ..... your neighbours speak to you?
10 ..... you born in Manchester?
11 ..... is your favourite TV programme?
12 ..... washes the dishes in your house?

13 ..... you go on holiday in the UK or abroad this year?

14 ..... is football so popular in Manchester?

C Joan and her husband agree on everything. Finish Joan's sentences, using *neither* or *so*.

'He won't eat anything yellow, and • neither will I. We enjoy walking sometimes, but he prefers sitting in the garden and [1] .....'. I can play the piano, and [2] ....., so we play together in the evenings. He has been to Egypt, and [3] ....., but we both went there before we met. I don't like long films on the TV, and [4] .....'. We always fall asleep before the end. He had a very lonely childhood, I'm afraid, and [5] .....'. I'll never forget the first time we met, and [6] .....'. We were in a music shop and he began playing my favourite song on the piano. He hasn't stopped playing, and [7] .....!'

D Chloe has bought a second-hand yacht. Adam is asking her about it. Complete his questions with three words, using *how* each time.

Adam: It looks fantastic! • How long is it?

Chloe: 20 metres. I'm going to sail to the Greek islands next month.

Adam: That sounds nice. [1] ..... that?

Chloe: I'm not sure. About 1,000 kilometres.

Adam: It looks fairly new. [2] ..... it?

Chloe: Six and a half years. But the last owner didn't use it much. He was too busy working.

Adam: I would use it every weekend, if it was mine. [3] ..... you going to use it?

Chloe: At least once a month, probably.

Adam: [4] ..... you go for?

Chloe: Two or three days at a time, I think. Are you any good at sailing?

Adam: I am actually. But I'm better at standing on the deck in the sun. By the way, [5] ..... it cost?

Chloe: I can't tell you. I don't want to remember!

E Put the correct question tag at the end of each line.

John: That was an interesting play, • wasn't it?

Paul: You didn't like the main actor, [1] .....?

John: Not exactly. He's in that TV programme, [2] .....?

Paul: I think so. He plays the boy's father, [3] .....?

John: That's right. I couldn't hear him tonight. He hasn't got a very loud voice, [4] .....?

Paul: No, not at all. You just can't hear actors these days, [5] .....?

John: That's because they work in TV, [6] .....?

Paul: I suppose so. More money. He won't earn so much tonight, [7] .....?

John: He was terrible, so he shouldn't earn so much tonight, [8] .....?

Paul: No. You're right. He wasn't great, [9] .....?

John: Anyway, you didn't pay very much for the tickets, [10] .....?

Paul: I can't remember. They were free, [11] .....?

John: That's OK, then, [12] .....?

39 Ability: can, can't, could, couldn't

1 We form sentences with **can** like this:

	can +	INFINITIVE
I	*can*	*ski.*

POSITIVE
I/He/She/It/We/You/They can ski.

NEGATIVE	FULL FORM	SHORT FORM
I/He/She/It/You (etc.)	*cannot ski.*	*can't ski.*

QUESTIONS		
Can	*I/he/she/it/you (etc.)*	*ski?*

In spoken English **cannot** is possible, but we normally use **can't**:

*He **can't** swim.*

For short answers (*Can you swim? ~ No, I **can't**.*), see **Unit 37**.

2 We use **can** and **can't** to talk about things we are able to do <u>generally</u>:

*She **can** speak Japanese.* (= She is able to speak Japanese.)

*He **can't** ski.* (= He isn't able to ski.)

We also use **can** and **can't** to talk about things we are able to do <u>at the moment</u>:

*I **can** see the moon.* (= I am able to see it now.)

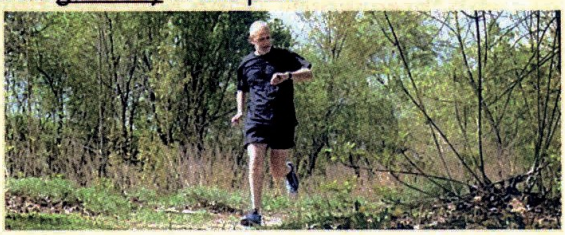
3 We form sentences with **could** like this:

	could +	INFINITIVE
I	*could*	*ski.*

POSITIVE
I/he/she/it/we/you/they could ski.

NEGATIVE	FULL FORM	SHORT FORM
I/he/you (etc.)	*could not ski.*	*couldn't ski.*

We use **could** to talk about things we were able to do <u>generally</u> in the past:



*I **could run** 100 metres in 12 seconds when I was young.*

*Lucy **could read** when she was three years old.*

4 We do not normally use **could** for something that happened on a particular occasion in the past. We use **was able to** or **managed to**:

*The boat was in difficulties, but in the end it **managed to** reach the port.* (OR *... it was **able to** reach ...*; NOT *... ~~it could reach~~ ...*)

5 When we talk about a person's ability to do something in the future, we use **will be able to**:

*The baby **will be able to** talk soon.*

A Complete the sentences with *can*, *can't* or *couldn't* and the verbs in brackets ( ).

♦ You don't have to shout. I can hear (hear) you very well.

♦ I couldn't watch (watch) that programme last night because I had to go out.

1 He ..... (play) last week because he was injured.

2 He eats in restaurants all the time because he ..... (cook).

3 I ..... (give) you a lift in my car because it isn't working at the moment.

4 I didn't have a good seat in the theatre, so I ..... (see) the stage very well.

5 John doesn't need a calculator. He ..... (do) very difficult sums in his head.

6 She's very good at music. She ..... (play) three instruments.

7 I ..... (find) my address book. Have you seen it?

8 He spoke very quickly and I ..... (understand) anything he said.

9 We ..... (go) on the trip because we ..... (afford) it. It was very expensive.

10 I _____ (do) any more work because I was very tired, so I stopped.

11 I'm afraid that I _____ (talk) to you now. I'm in a hurry. I have to be at work in five minutes.

B Complete the sentences using the words in brackets ( ) and *can, can't, could* or *couldn't*.

♦ Sarah phoned Jasmine yesterday. (They/not/talk/for a long time, because Jasmine had to go out.)
They couldn't talk for a long time, because Jasmine had to go out.

1 Grandma needs her glasses. (She/not/see/anything without her glasses.)
She _____

2 Mary won her race. (She was so tired after the race that she/not/stand up.)
She _____

3 (Last year, Robert/beat/his younger brother at chess.) But he can't beat him now.
Last year, _____

4 John and Anna have a wonderful view from their hotel room. (They/see/the whole of the city.)
They _____

C Complete these sentences using *managed to* or the correct form of *be able to*.

♦ I was able to/managed to get the last ticket for the concert.

1 After waiting for a long time, we _____ go into the museum.

2 They _____ buy a new carpet yesterday.

3 I _____ eat three plates of pasta in the restaurant last night!

4 Our friends _____ visit us yesterday afternoon.

5 She _____ have a long holiday last year.

6 We _____ ski in Scotland last weekend.

D Look at this table and complete the sentences using *can, could*, or *will be able to*.

	LAST YEAR	NOW	HOPES FOR THE FUTURE
Joy	swim 100 metres	swim 1000 metres	swim for her club team
Mark	type 15 words per minute	type 30 words per minute	work as an administrator
Anna	speak only a little French	speak French quite well	work as an interpreter
Laura	only cook omelettes	cook quite well	work as a chef
Tom	only play the piano	play the piano and the violin	be a professional musician
Lucy	ride a bike	drive a car	drive a racing car

♦ Last year Joy could swim 100 metres. Now, she can swim 1,000 metres.

♦ At the moment Anna can speak French quite well, and if she studies hard, perhaps she'll be able to work as an interpreter.

1 Last year Mark _____. Now, _____.

2 Last year Anna _____. Now, _____.

3 At the moment Laura _____, and if she works hard, perhaps _____.

4 Last year Tom _____. Now, _____, and if he studies hard, perhaps _____.

5 Last year Lucy _____. Now, _____, and she hopes that one day _____.

40 Can/Could I? May I? Can/Could you?

1 We form questions with **can**, **may** and **could** like this:

QUESTIONS		
Can	*I/he/she/it/we (etc.)*	*wait?*
May		
Could		

2 We use **can**, **may** and **could** to ask for things:

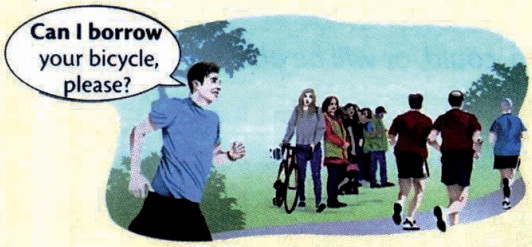
Can (etc.)	+	*I/we*	+	*have*	*...?*
Can		*I*		*have*	*a coffee?*



Could we have two tickets, please?
Can I have some sugar?

3 We use **can**, **may** or **could** to ask for permission. **Could I** and **May I** are more formal and polite than **Can I**:

Can/May/Could	+	I/WE	+	INFINITIVE	...?
May		*I*		*see*	*her?*



Could we look at your map, please?
Can I borrow your tennis racket, please?

We use **can** or **may** to give permission:

You can leave your bag here. (OR *... may leave ...*)

If we talk about what is allowed in general, rather than by a particular person, we use **can**:

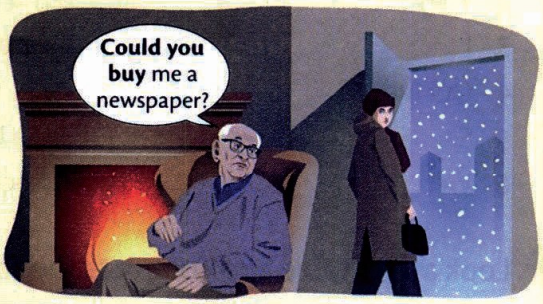
People can drive on the roads when they are 17 years old.

But official notices often use **may**:

BAGS MAY BE LEFT HERE.

4 We use **Can you**, **Could you** and **Would you** (but NOT ~~May you~~) when we ask someone to do something. **Could** and **would** are more formal and polite than **can**.

Can/Could/Would	+	YOU	+	INFINITIVE	...?
Could		*you*		*help*	*me?*



A: *I'm cold. Can you close the window?*
B: *Yes, of course.*

A Put the words in brackets ( ) in the right order to make questions.

♦ (have – a return ticket to York – could – please – I – ?)
Could I have a return ticket to York, please?

1 (please – I – may – a glass of orange juice – have – ?)

2 (we – listen to their new song – can – ?)

3 (your mobile – please – use – I – can – ?)

4 (may – borrow – your camera tomorrow – I – ?)

5 (please – the menu – pass – you – could – ?)

B Ask for permission. Use the words in brackets ( ) and the words from the box.

use your printer ~~use your dictionary~~ close the window
borrow your pen turn on the TV

♦ SITUATION: You want to find the meaning of a word.
(may I) May I use your dictionary?

1 SITUATION: You want to write down a phone number.
(can I)

2 SITUATION: You want to watch a programme.
(can I … please)

3 SITUATION: You're feeling cold.
(may I)

4 SITUATION: You need to print a document.
(may I … please)

C Ask people to do things. Use the words in brackets ( ) and the phrases from the box.

~~buy me a magazine~~ tell me the time make me a sandwich
tell me the way to Buckingham Palace carry one of these cases

♦ PROBLEM: You're sick. You're in bed. You're bored.
(can you … please) Can you buy me a magazine, please?

1 PROBLEM: Your suitcases are very heavy.
(could you)

2 PROBLEM: You're lost in London.
(could you … please)

3 PROBLEM: You've forgotten to put your watch on.
(can you)

4 PROBLEM: You're hungry. You're very tired.
(can you … please)

D Choose the right word from the words in brackets ( ) and put it in the gap.

♦ Could (May/Could) you give me one of these forms, please?

1 In the street:
Excuse me, officer, (could/may) you tell me how to get to the station?

2 At a railway station:
A: Let's have our sandwiches here.
B: (Couldn't/Can't) you read? Look at the notice; it says:
'FOOD (MAY/COULD) NOT BE EATEN IN THIS WAITING ROOM.'

3 A: (Could/May) you call Jenny about tomorrow's meeting?
B: I (may not/can't/couldn't) call her because she has lost her phone.

4 A: (May/Could) someone help me?
B: What (may/can) I do to help you?
A: We need to move the chairs and to clean this room. Can you help?
B: I'm afraid I (may not/can't) move the chairs because of my bad back.

41 Must, mustn't

Modal verbs

1 We use **must** with an infinitive (**do**, **go**, **work**, etc.):

	INFINITIVE	
You	*must*	*work harder.*

Don't use **to** before the infinitive:

NOT ~~*You must to work harder.*~~

The form of **must** is the same for all persons:

I/you/he/she/it/we/they	*must leave soon.*

2 We use **must** in rules to say that an action is necessary:

*All visitors **must go** to reception when they arrive.*

We use **You must ...** to give somebody an order:

*Your work is poor – **you must try** harder.*

__You must finish__ this work tomorrow.

We use **I/We must ...** to say that we think it is necessary or important that we do something:

*I'm getting tired. **I must go** home now.*

__We must get__ a new car soon.

3 We also use **You must ...** to strongly recommend or offer something:

__You must read__ this book; it's fantastic!

__You must come__ for lunch at our house.

4 The negative form of **must** is **mustn't** or **must not**:

You __mustn't park__ here – it's not allowed.

(NOT ~~*You mustn't to park here.*~~)

5 We use **You mustn't ...** (or **You must not**) to say that it is necessary that somebody does NOT do something:

__You mustn't smoke__ in here.

__You mustn't make__ this mistake again.

We use **I/We mustn't ...** (or **must not**) to say that we think it is necessary that we do NOT do something:

__I mustn't forget__ her birthday again.

__We mustn't be__ late for the meeting.

6 Notice that we can use **must** and **mustn't** (NOT ~~will must~~) to talk about the future:

I must phone Harry tomorrow.

(NOT ~~*I will must phone Harry tomorrow.*~~)

To talk about what was necessary in the past, we cannot use **must**; we use a form of **have to** (see **Unit 42**).

We don't generally use **must** in a question form. We use **have to** (see **Unit 42**).

A The Hotel Strict is not a very nice hotel. It has a lot of rules. Read the list of rules and change each one into a sentence using *must* or *must not*.

Notice to guests

Leave your key at reception when you go out.
Vacate your room by nine o'clock on the morning you leave.
Return to the hotel before ten o'clock every night.
Do not take food into your room.
Pay for your room when you arrive.
Do not smoke in the restaurant.

♦ You must leave ..... your key at reception when you go out.

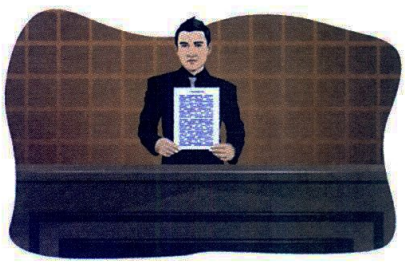
1 You ..... food into your room.

2 ..... for your room when you arrive.

3 ..... your room by nine o'clock on the morning you leave.

4 ..... in the restaurant.

5 ..... to the hotel before ten o'clock every night.



B Look at this table of instructions for students in a school. Use the table to make sentences with *must* or *mustn't*.

	Yes	No
Attend all classes.	✓	
Take school books home with you.		✓
Make a noise in the corridors.		✓
Write in school books.		✓
Arrive for lessons on time.	✓	
Bring your own pens and paper.	✓	

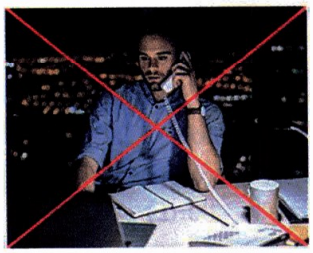
♦ You must attend all classes.
1 ..... school books home with you.
2 ..... a noise in the corridors.
3 ..... in school books.
4 ..... for lessons on time.
5 ..... your own pens and paper.

C Henry wants to make some changes in his life. Look at the pictures and make sentences using the phrases from the box with *must* or *mustn't*.

study after school | run every morning | ~~dress smartly~~ | watch TV all day | ~~smoke~~ | visit my grandmother | sleep in the afternoon | work late at night


♦ I mustn't smoke.


♦ I must dress smartly.

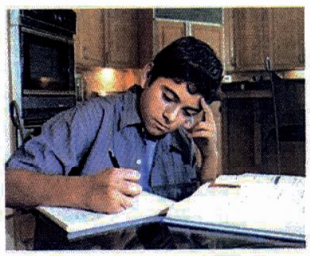

1 .....


2 .....


3 .....


4 .....


5 .....


6 .....

D Rewrite the sentences in brackets ( ) using *must* or *mustn't/must not*.

♦ (Have some of this fish. It's wonderful.)
You must have some of this fish ..... . It's wonderful.

1 (Don't tell lies. It's bad.)
You ..... . It's bad.

2 (Passengers: Do not open the door while the train is moving.)
Passengers ..... while the train is moving.

3 (Come for dinner with us one evening next week!)
You ..... one evening next week!

4 (All staff: show identity cards when you enter the building.)
All staff ..... when they enter the building.

5 (It's bad for you to eat so much unhealthy food.)
You ..... so much unhealthy food.

6 (Follow the instructions when using this machine.)
You ..... when using this machine.

irlanguage
مرجع زبان ایرانیان

42 Have to

1 The Present Simple forms of **have to** are:

POSITIVE AND NEGATIVE		
I/you/we/they	have / don't have	to go.
He/she/it	has / doesn't have	to go.

QUESTIONS			
Do	I/you/we/they	have	to go?
Does	he/she/it	have	to go?

2 We use **have to** to talk about things that are necessary because of rules that other people oblige us to follow:

*My brother **has to travel** a lot in his job.*
(= It is required by his employer.)

*We **have to pay** the rent every month.*
(= It is required by the landlord.)

To talk about things that WE think are necessary, we usually use **must** (see **Unit 43**).

3 We also use **have to** for things that are necessary because of the circumstances:

*I **have to get** a bus to school.* (= It is the only way I can travel there.)

*She **has to live** on a small income.* (= She only receives a small amount of money to pay for what she needs.)

4 We use **don't have to** to say that something is NOT necessary.

*We **don't have to hurry**; we're early.*
(= It's not necessary to hurry. We have plenty of time.)

*I **don't have to get** up early on Sunday.*
(= I can stay in bed if I want.)

5 We can use **have got to** with the same meaning as **have to** to talk about something that is necessary at one particular time (but not in general):

*I **have to/I've got to make** a phone call now.*

*You **don't have to/haven't got to do** this immediately.*

6 The past form of **have to** is **had to**:

*I **had to do** a lot of work yesterday.*
(See **Unit 48.**)

7 The future form of **have to** is **will have to**:

*He'll **have to look** for another job.*

*We **won't have to get** tickets in advance.*

***Will** they **have to get** visas?*

Note that we cannot use **have got to** in past or future forms:

*Yesterday I **had to work** hard.* (NOT ~~*I had got to work hard.*~~)

8 We can use the Present Simple of **have to** to talk about the future:

*I **have to do** some shopping tomorrow.*

***Do** you **have to work** next weekend?*

A Look at this table about different jobs and use the information to complete the sentences using *have to* or *don't have to*.

	Shop assistants	Bank clerks	Doctors	Teachers
deal with the public	✓	✓	✓	✗
be polite to people	✓	✓	✗	✗
work with money	✓	✓	✗	✗
wear uniforms	✓	✗	✓	✗

♦ Shop assistants *have to deal* ..... with the public.

1 Teachers ..... to people.

2 Bank clerks ..... to people.

3 Bank clerks ..... with money.

4 Doctors ..... with money.

5 Shop assistants often ..... uniforms.

6 Teachers ..... uniforms.

B Complete the sentences using the correct forms of *have to* or *have got to* and the words in brackets ( ). Be careful to use the correct tense.

♦ I have to leave (I/leave) now; I've got an appointment at the dentist's.
♦ Did you have to study (you/study) literature when you were at school?
♦ You haven't got to come (You/not/come) with me now if you don't want to.
1 ..... (I/not/work) hard because the job was very easy.
2 ..... (I/do) this work now, or can I do it tomorrow?
3 ..... (I/run) to school because I was late.
4 ..... (I/go) to an important meeting yesterday.
5 ..... (you/show) your passports when you reached the border?
6 ..... (I/pay) in cash next week or can I transfer the money online?
7 I want to be an airline pilot. What qualifications ..... (you/have) to be a pilot?
8 ..... (You/not/decide) today. You can tell me tomorrow.
9 I arrived late yesterday because ..... (I/wait) a long time for a bus.
10 A: ..... (you/work) every weekend?
B: No, I don't; but ..... (I/work) last weekend.

C Complete the conversations using the words in brackets ( ) and correct forms of *have to* or *have got to*.

A: (Good morning, I'd like to buy a travel card. What/I/do?)
♦ Good morning. I'd like to buy a travel card. What do I have to do?
B: (You/fill/in an application form.)
1 .....
A: (I/give/you/a photograph?)
2 .....
B: (No, you/not/give/me anything, except the money for the card!)
3 .....

Dad: (What/you/do/at school today?)
♦ What did you have to do at school today?
Sam: (We/do/some/English tests.)
4 .....
Dad: (How many questions/you/answer?)
5 .....
Sam: (We/answer/about 40 grammar questions.)
6 .....
(I/think/about them very carefully.)
7 .....
Dad: (you/write/a composition?)
8 .....
Sam: (No, but we/do/one next week.)
9 .....

43 Must/have to, mustn't/don't have to

1 We use **must** when the speaker thinks it is necessary or important to do an action:

*You **must go**.* (= It is important that you go.)

We make negatives, questions and short answers like this:

*You **mustn't go**.*

*Must you go? ~ Yes, I **must**.*

2 We use **have to** to talk about an action that is necessary because of rules or laws, or because someone obliges us to do it:

*Doctors sometimes **have to work** on Sunday.* (It is in the rules of their work.)

We make negatives, questions and short answers with a form of **do**:

*Teachers **don't have to work** on Sunday.*

*Do you **have to work** today? ~ No, I **don't**.*

3 POSITIVE

In positive sentences we can often use **must** and **have to** with little difference in meaning, because many things are important both because we think so and because there are rules:

*You **must work** hard in order to succeed* (OR *You **have to work** in order to succeed*).

4 NEGATIVE

Note the difference in meaning between **mustn't** and **don't have to**.

In negative sentences we often use **mustn't** to say that something is against the rules or against the law:

*You **mustn't smoke** on buses.* (= Smoking is against the rules.)

*In football you **mustn't touch** the ball with your hands.* (= Touching the ball is against the rules.)

We use **don't have to** to say that people are not obliged to do something:

*In Britain, people **don't have to carry** a passport with them.* (= People are not obliged to carry one.)

*Nowadays pupils **do not have to learn** Latin at school.* (= They are not obliged to learn it.)

5 QUESTIONS

In questions we usually use **do/does ... have to** (NOT ~~must~~) to ask if something is obligatory or important:

***Does** Michael **have to get up** early tomorrow?*

***Do** we **have to wait** here?*

A The Stanton Squash Club has decided that it is important for all club members to do these things:

wear sports shoes and clean clothes | have a shower | pay before you play | finish on time

But these things are not allowed:

disturb other players | eat or drink outside the bar | take club balls home

Put *have to*, *don't have to* or *mustn't* in the gaps.

♦ You *don't have to* wear white clothes, but you *have to* wear sports shoes.

♦ You *mustn't* disturb other players, but you *don't have to* be silent.

1 You ..... finish on time, but you ..... start on time.

2 You ..... play with club balls, but if you do, you ..... take them home.

3 You ..... eat or drink outside the bar, but you ..... buy your food in the bar if you don't want to.

4 You ..... have a shower, and you ..... wear clean clothes.

B Look at the signs and complete the sentences with *don't have to* or *mustn't*.

ANTIQUES
Please feel free to come in.
(No eating inside.)

♦ You don't have to go in.
♦ You mustn't eat inside.

Entry possible
30 minutes
before the concert.
No late arrivals
allowed.

1 You ..... arrive half an hour early.
2 You ..... arrive late.

All vehicles – **slow**.
Drivers of large
vehicles, wait for
guard before crossing.

3 Small vehicles ..... wait.
4 Drivers of large vehicles ..... cross alone.

STUDENTS!
Please be quiet –
4th-year exam
in progress.

5 Students ..... make a noise.
6 Third-year students ..... take the exam.

LIBRARY
No talking.
Please leave books
on tables.

7 You ..... talk in the library.
8 You ..... put the books back on the shelves.

SWIMMING POOL
Free swim today.
No eating.
No drinking.

9 Swimmers ..... pay today.
10 Swimmers ..... eat or drink by the pool.

C Put the words from the box in the gaps. Don't add any other words.

Does she | have to | has | she has | must | mustn't | ~~have~~ | does she

Mark: We ♦ have to get up early tomorrow.
Rob: Why?
Mark: Have you forgotten? Annie [1] ..... to move to a new flat tomorrow, and I promised we would help her.
Rob: [2] ..... have to move out by a particular time?
Mark: No, there's no rush. She doesn't [3] ..... leave her old flat before the afternoon, but there are lots of things that [4] ..... to pack, so we [5] ..... get there fairly early.
Rob: Why [6] ..... have to move, by the way?
Mark: She said that I [7] ..... tell you because she wants to tell you herself, when she sees you tomorrow.

44 Must, can't, may, might, could

1 We use **must**, **can't**, **may** and **could** with an infinitive (e.g. **be**, **go**, **come**, **earn**):

	INFINITIVE	
They must	*earn*	*a lot.*

2 CERTAINTY

*She **must be** rich.*

Look at this example with **must**:

*Jasmine got top marks in her exams. She **must be** very clever.* (= From what we know, we can be certain that Jasmine is very clever.)

We use **must** to say we are certain:

*The Greens have two houses and two cars. They **must earn** a lot of money.* (= We can be sure that the Greens earn a lot of money.)

A: *There's someone outside in an orange car.*

B: *It **must be** Lucy. She's the only person I know with an orange car.*

3 IMPOSSIBILITY

*She **can't be** poor.*

Look at this example with **can't**:

*Mark studied hard for his exams, but he got poor marks; he **can't be** very clever.* (= From what we know, we can guess that Mark is **not** very clever.)

We use **can't** to talk about impossibility:

*The Browns both have part-time jobs; they **can't earn** much money.* (= We can guess that the Browns do NOT earn a lot of money.)

A: *There's someone at the door. I think it's William.*

B: *It **can't be** William. He's in Australia.*

4 POSSIBILITY

She { *may* / *might* / *could* } *be in the garden.*

Look at this example with **may**:

A: *Eve's not in her room. Where is she?*

B: *She **may be** in the garden.* (= From what we know, **perhaps** she **is** in the garden.)

We use **may**, **might** and **could** for something that is possible but not certain, now or in the future:

*My sister **might come** tomorrow.* (= From what we know, perhaps she **will** come.)

Now look at this example with **may not**:

A: *I've phoned Charlotte, but there's no answer.*

B: *She **may not be** at home.* (OR *She **might not be** ...*) (= Perhaps she is not at home.)

Could not is NOT possible here.

A Complete the sentences using *must* or *can't* and the verbs from the box.

~~be~~ belong ~~speak~~ come spend have like live want remember

♦ Anna lived in America for three years, so she must speak English.

♦ Tom's brother doesn't know anything about medicine, so he can't be a doctor.

1 Jasmine has an incredible number of albums. She _____ music a lot.

2 Peter doesn't speak German, so he _____ from Germany.

3 This jacket _____ to Jessica because it's not her size.

4 That man _____ around here because he doesn't know any of the street names.

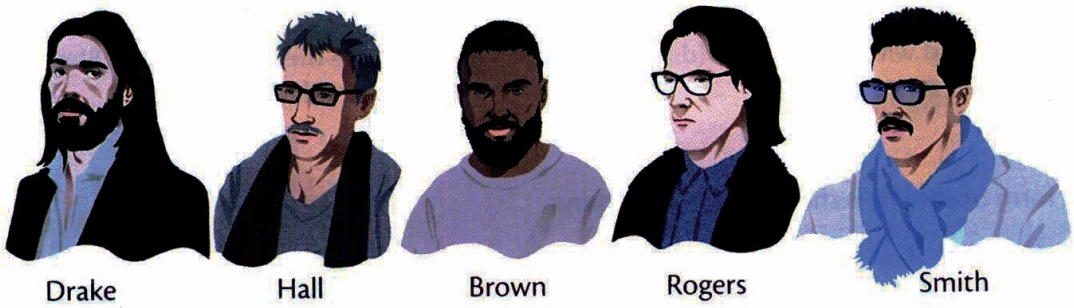
5 Jack _____ a lot of clothes. He wears something different every day.

6 Sam's grandmother is almost 100 years old, so she _____ the Second World War.

7 You've got ten cats already. You _____ to get another one.

8 Lucy buys a new dress every day. She _____ a lot of money on clothes.

B Someone has robbed a bank. The police are sure that the criminal is one of these men. Look at the pictures and complete the sentences using *can't be*, *could be* or *must be*.



Drake Hall Brown Rogers Smith

♦ A witness says that the robber had short hair. If that's true, then it *can't be* Drake or Rogers, but it *could be* Hall.

♦ A witness says that the robber had glasses. If that's true, then it *can't be* Brown or Drake. It *must be* either Hall or Rogers or Smith.

1 A witness says that the robber had black hair. If that's true, then it _____ Hall, but it _____ Brown.

2 A witness says that the robber had a moustache. If that's true, then it _____ Rogers but it _____ Drake or Brown.

3 A witness says that the robber didn't have a beard. If that's true, then it _____ Drake or Brown but it _____ Hall or Smith.

4 A witness says that the robber had a moustache, but no beard. If that's true, then it _____ Drake or Rogers. It _____ Hall.

5 A witness says that the robber had black hair and wore glasses. If that's true, then it _____ Rogers. It _____ Hall.

6 And if what everyone says is true, then it _____ Smith.

C Complete the dialogues with *must*, *can't* or *might* and the phrases from the box.

cost a lot of money	~~be a soldier~~	work long hours	go to Portugal
come this weekend	take much interest	also be at the shops	be at the gym

♦ **Ruth:** I think Anna's brother is in the army.
James: He *can't be a soldier*; he's only 15.

1 **Rob:** What are you going to do next summer?
Lucy: I don't know. We _____, but it's not certain yet.

2 **Jacob:** Mike's new flat is all electric – kitchen, heating, everything.
Peter: That _____ in electricity bills.

3 **Sam:** Is Mary coming to see us this week?
Ellie: It depends on her work. She _____ if she finishes the project that she's doing.

4 **Laura:** Have Noah and Kim got any children?
Tom: Yes, they have two children, but they _____ in them, because they never talk about them.

5 **Andrew:** Do you see your new neighbours very much?
Sarah: No, they _____, because they are hardly ever at home.

6 **Paul:** Jacob's gone out, hasn't he? Where has he gone?
Anna: I don't know. He _____ or he _____.

45 Should, shouldn't

Modal verbs

1 We use **should** with an infinitive (**do**, **go**, etc.):

	INFINITIVE	
I should	*do*	*some work tonight.*

The form of **should** is the same for all persons:

I/you/he/she/it/we/they should go.

2 The negative form is **shouldn't**:

*You **shouldn't** sit in the sun all day.*
*They **shouldn't** spend so much money.*

3 We use **I should** or **we should** to say what is a good thing for us to do:

*I **should** go home. It's midnight.*
*We **should** invite them for a meal.*

We use **I/we shouldn't** to say that something is a bad thing for us to do:

*I **shouldn't** spend so much money.*

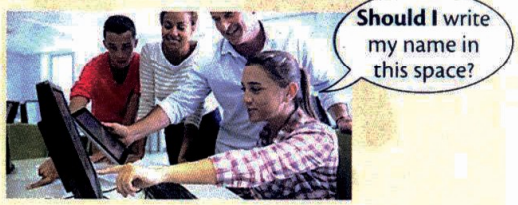
We use **you should/shouldn't** to give advice:

*You **should** look for a better job.*
*You **shouldn't** drive so fast.*

Should is not as strong as **must** or **have to**. Compare:

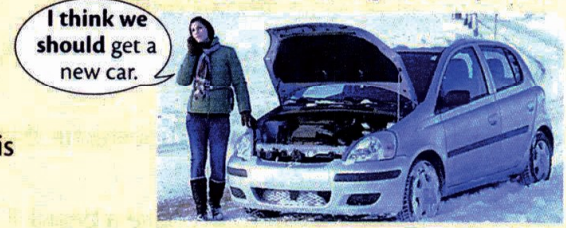
*You **should** eat more fruit.* (It's a good idea.)
*'You **must** eat more fruit,' said the doctor.* (It's very important.)

4 We use the question form **Should I/we ...?** to ask for advice:



*What **should** I say to Helen?*
*I need a new passport. Where **should** I go?*

5 We can say **I think we should**, **I don't think you should**, etc. to give an opinion:



*I **don't think you should believe** everything he says.*

We do not usually say:

~~*I think you shouldn't ...*~~

6 We can use **do you think I should ...?** to ask for advice:

*He hasn't replied to my email. **Do you think I should phone** him?*
*What **do you think I should give** Tom for his birthday?*

A Complete the sentences using the words in brackets ( ) and *should* or *shouldn't*.

♦ You shouldn't work (You/work) so hard. Have a holiday.
♦ I enjoyed that film. We should go (We/go) to the cinema more often.
1 ..... (You/park) here. It's not allowed.
2 What ..... (I/cook) for dinner tonight?
3 ..... (You/wear) a coat. It's cold outside.
4 ..... (You/smoke). It's bad for you.
5 ..... (We/arrive) at the airport two hours before the flight.
6 ..... (I/pay) now or later?
7 Do you think ..... (I/apply) for this job?
8 What do you think ..... (I/write) in this space on the form?
9 ..... (I/eat) any more cake. I've already eaten too much.
10 This food is terrible. ..... (We/complain) to the manager.
11 Which shirt do you think ..... (I/buy)?

B Henry is cooking a meal. Give him some useful advice. Use the advice from the box and *you should* or *you shouldn't*.

~~Don't leave the meat in the oven for more than one hour.~~
Cut the onions as small as possible.
Use fresh herbs and fresh vegetables.
Don't put in too much salt and pepper.
Wait until the water boils before you put the vegetables into it.
Heat the oven before you put the meat in.
Cut the meat into four equal slices.

♦ You shouldn't leave ..... the meat in the oven for more than one hour.
1 ..... the onions as small as possible.
2 ..... fresh herbs and fresh vegetables.
3 ..... in too much salt and pepper.
4 ..... until the water boils before you put the vegetables into it.
5 ..... the oven before you put the meat in.
6 ..... the meat into four equal slices.

C Write this conversation between Noah and Joseph using the words in brackets ( ). Use *do* or *should* where required.

Noah: (I want to buy a motorbike. What/you/think/I/do?)
♦ I want to buy a motorbike. What do you think I should do?

Joseph: (You/look/at the advertisements in the papers.)
♦ You should look at the advertisements online.

Noah: (Which website/I/use?)
1 .....

Joseph: (I think/you/go on/the 'What Bike?' website.)
2 .....

Noah: (What/you/think/I/do/before I buy a bike?)
3 .....

Joseph: (I/not/think/you/decide/too quickly.)
4 .....

(You/check/the condition of the bike.)
5 .....

(You/ask/somebody who knows about bikes to look at the bike for you.)
6 .....

(You/not/buy/one simply because it looks nice!)
7 .....

(You/be/very careful.)
8 .....

46 Should, ought to, had better

1 We use **should**, **ought to** and **had better** with an infinitive (e.g. **be**, **go**, **ask**, **wait**):

	INFINITIVE
I should	*go.*
You ought to	*ask.*
We had better	*wait.*

2 We use both **should** and **ought to** to ask for or to give advice, to say what is the correct or best thing to do:

A: *I've got toothache. What **should** I **do**?*
(= What is the best thing for me to do?)
B: *You **should go** to the dentist's.*
(= The best thing for you to do is to go to the dentist's.)

When we are talking about a duty or a law, we usually use **ought to**:

A: *I saw a robbery. What **should** I **do**?*
B: *You **ought to report** it to the police.*
(= It is a person's duty to report it.)

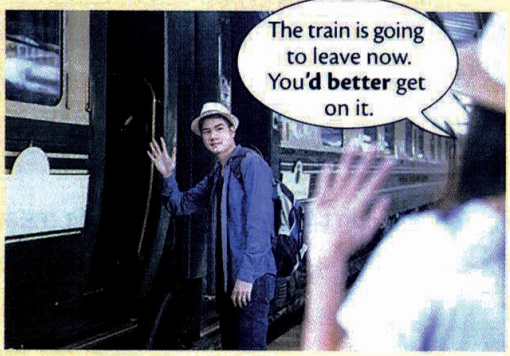
On the other hand, when we are giving a personal opinion, we usually use **should**:

B: *I think you **should** forget about it.*

We use **should** much more than **ought to** in negatives and questions:

*I **shouldn't** go.* (OR *I **ought not to** go.*)
__Should__ I go? (OR *__Ought__ I to go?*)

3 We can also use **had better** to give advice, to say what is the best thing to do:



*There'll be a lot of traffic tomorrow. We **had** (OR We'd) **better leave** early.*
*I **had** (OR I'd) **better ask** the doctor about the pain in my stomach.*

Note that **had** is a past form, but it does not refer to past time here; we use it to talk about present or future time.

We only use **had better** to give advice about a particular thing; when we give general advice, we use **should** or **ought to**:

*When people are in trouble, they **should go** to the police.* (NOT ~~*... they had better go to the police.*~~)

The negative is **had better not**:

*They **had better not be** late.*

A Complete the sentences using the phrases from the box and *should* or *shouldn't*.

call an ambulance	~~report it to the police~~	move the person yourself
drive home in her car	touch anything	~~do anything about it~~
~~decide for herself~~	give you a new cup	make him do lots of sport
borrow money	leave everything where it is	ask someone to take her
let him eat so much		

♦ A: There is a house near my home where I often hear strange noises.
B: You *should report it to the police*.

♦ A: My daughter wants to marry a man I don't like. What should I do about it?
B: In my opinion, *you shouldn't do anything about it*.
Your daughter *should decide for herself*.

1 A: If someone has a serious accident, what's the right thing to do?
B: Well, you _____. It's not a good idea to move an injured person.
Instead, you _____ to take the person to hospital.

2 A: Last Saturday I bought some coffee cups but one of the handles was broken. What can I expect the shop to do?
B: They _____.

3 A: My son is 12 years old and he's overweight.
B: Well, it's important not to eat too much, so you _____.
Also, you _____.

4 A: If you come home and see that you've been robbed, what's the best thing to do?
B: Well, you _____. You _____ and call the police.

5 A: Mary can't work because she's feeling sick. How can she get home?
B: Well, she _____.
She _____ home.

6 People _____ if they can't pay it back.

B **Use the sentences in brackets ( ) to write a reply with *had better* in the following dialogues.**

♦ A: I've got a headache.
B: (You should go and lie down.) You'd better go and lie down.

1 A: The children want to play in the kitchen.
B: (Well, they should clear everything away when they finish.)
Well, _____ when they finish.

2 A: I think it's going to rain.
B: (Yes, we ought to take our umbrellas.) Yes, _____

3 A: I'm going to go to bed now. We have to get up very early tomorrow.
B: (Yes, I should go to bed early too.) Yes, _____

C **Complete the dialogues using the correct form of the words in brackets ( ). Use *to* or *not* if necessary.**

♦ A: Should Henry stay in bed?
B: No, the doctor said he shouldn't (should) stay in bed.

1 A: Can we move that cupboard?
B: No, it's very delicate, so you _____ (ought) leave it where it is.

2 A: Should we change these notices?
B: No, the show is still on, so we _____ (should) change them until next week.

3 A: You'd better tell the boss about the accident immediately.
B: No, she's in a bad mod. I _____ (had better) tell her until tomorrow.

4 A: Does the doctor say it's all right for Mrs Bradley to work?
B: Yes, but she must be careful. She _____ (ought) lift anything heavy, for example.

5 A: Can they come before dinner?
B: No, we haven't got enough food, so they _____ (had better) come after dinner.

47 Need, needn't, needn't have

1 We use the verb **need** to talk about things that we must do. We use **to** + infinitive (e.g. **to do**, **to go**) after **need**:

	TO + INFINITIVE	
I need	*to go*	*to the dentist's.*

After **he/she/it** we use **needs**:

*Mary/She **needs to buy** some white paint.*

We make negatives, questions and short answers with a form of **do**:

*You **don't need to go** to the doctor's.*
*Mary **doesn't need to buy** any green paint.*
A: *Do you **need to go** to the dentist's?*
B: *Yes, I **do**./No, I **don't**.*
A: *Does Mary **need to buy** any brushes?*
B: *Yes, she **does**./No, she **doesn't**.*

2 We can also use **need** to talk about things that we must get. Here we use an object after need:

	OBJECT
Mary needs	*some white paint.*
I don't need	*a new car.*
Does Peter need	*any help?*

3 To talk about what we do not need to do, we can use **needn't**. We use an infinitive (e.g. **go**, **buy**) after **needn't**. **Needn't** has the same meaning as **don't/doesn't need to**:

	INFINITIVE	
*You **needn't***	*go*	*to the shops. We have enough food.*
(OR *You don't need to go to the shops.*)		
*Mary **needn't***	*buy*	*any paint.*
(OR *Mary doesn't need to buy any paint.*)		

We cannot use **needn't** before an object (e.g. your coat); we must use **don't need**:

*You **don't need** your coat. It's not cold outside.*
(NOT ~~*You needn't your coat.*~~)

4 We can use **needed to** for past time:

*They **needed to clean** everything before they started to paint.*

The negative past simple form is **didn't need to**:

*The room wasn't dirty so they **didn't need to clean** it before they started to paint it.*
(= It was not necessary to clean the room so they didn't clean it.)

We use **needn't have** + past participle to talk about something that was done although it wasn't necessary:

*We **needn't have lit** the fire, because it was a warm evening.* (= We lit the fire, but it was not necessary to light it.)
*You **needn't have bought** any bread, James. There is plenty in the cupboard.* (= You bought some bread, but it was not necessary.)

A Use the statements in brackets ( ) to make questions and short answers.

♦ (Tom needs to take some warm clothes.)
Does Tom need to take some warm clothes ? ~ Yes, he does .

♦ (She doesn't need to study hard.)
Does she need to study hard ? ~ No, she doesn't .

1 (Jacob needs a ladder.)
..... ? ~ Yes, ...

2 (We don't need to go to the shops.)
..... ? ~ No, ...

3 (John doesn't need to leave before lunch.)
..... ? ~ No, ...

4 (They need to check the train times.)
..... ? ~ Yes, ...

B Change each sentence in brackets ( ) into a negative sentence using *needn't* where possible. If not possible, write a negative sentence with *doesn't/don't need*.

♦ (Jasmine needs to pay James today.) Jasmine needn't pay James today.

♦ (The car needs new tyres.) The car doesn't need new tyres.

1 (We need a lot of red paper.) _____

2 (Mark needs to get everything ready today.) _____

3 (Mary needs to leave at six o'clock.) _____

4 (Anna needs a new bag.) _____

C When there are exams or competitions at Brightside School, the school provides certain things for all the students, but there are other things that the school does not provide. Use the information in the table to write sentences with *need to bring* or *needn't bring*.

Examinations	The school provides:	The school doesn't provide:
art exams	paint	brushes
maths exams	rubbers	pens and pencils
drawing exams	paper	rulers and pencils
tennis competitions	balls	racquets
football competitions	shirts	shorts and boots

♦ (art exams/paint) For art exams, students needn't bring paint.

♦ (tennis competitions/rackets) For tennis competitions, students need to bring rackets.

1 (maths exams/pens and pencils) _____

2 (football competitions/shirts) _____

3 (drawing exams/paper) _____

4 (art exams/brushes) _____

5 (tennis competitions/balls) _____

6 (football competitions/shorts and boots) _____

7 (maths exams/rubbers) _____

8 (drawing exams/rulers and pencils) _____

D Rewrite the sentences using *didn't need* or *needn't have* and the correct form.

♦ The programmes didn't cost us anything. We didn't pay for them.
We didn't have to pay for the programmes.

♦ You took your umbrella yesterday but it didn't rain.
You needn't have taken your umbrella yesterday.

1 Charlotte paid for her holiday in advance, but it wasn't necessary.
Charlotte _____ for her holiday in advance.

2 My sister spoke to Ellie yesterday, so I didn't phone her.
I _____ Ellie because my sister had spoken to her.

3 We bought extra food but now John and Mary can't come.
We _____ extra food because John and Mary can't come.

4 Why did you work during the weekend? We don't have to finish until next week.
You _____ during the weekend.

5 I didn't take my passport with me because an identity card was enough.
I _____ my passport with me.

48 Had to do/go, should have done/gone

1 Look at this example:



*Jasmine **had to wait** an hour for a bus.*

Had to wait means that Jasmine waited because no bus came for an hour.

We use **had to** to talk about something that someone did because it was necessary.

If someone did not do something because it was not necessary, we use **didn't have to**:

*I **didn't have to work** last Saturday.* (= I didn't work because it was not necessary.)

The question form is **did ... have to**:

*Did you **have to work** last Saturday?*

2 Now consider this situation:

Grace's job includes working on Saturday. Last Saturday she was ill, so she didn't work:

*Grace **should have gone** to work last Saturday, but she was ill. So she stayed at home.*

We use **should have** (**done**/**gone**, etc.) to say that something which did not happen was the correct or best action. We can also use **should have** to criticize someone. Look at this example:

Peter, a farm worker, didn't close a gate, and the cows got into the wrong field:

*Peter **should have closed** the gate.*

We use **shouldn't have** (**done**/**gone**, etc.) to say that something which did happen was not the correct action:

*I **shouldn't have got** angry with Jasmine.* (= I got angry with Jasmine, but it was not a good thing to do.)

*Peter **shouldn't have left** the gate open.*

A Complete the dialogues with the words in brackets ( ) and *had to* or *did ... have to*.

♦ James: When you had that stomach trouble, *did you have to* (you) go into hospital?
Megan: No, *I didn't have to* (not) go into hospital, but *I had to* stay in bed for a week.

1 Oliver: Was there a translation in the exam?
Jasmine: No, we ..... (not) translate anything, but we ..... write three essays.

2 Anna: I was very busy yesterday.
William: What ..... (you) do?
Anna: I ..... prepare everything for today's meeting.

3 Nathan: ..... (you) wear uniform when you were at school?
Abigail: Yes, and we ..... make sure it was always neat and tidy.

4 Tom: What ..... (you) do to get your international driving licence?
Tina: I ..... show the police my national driving licence, but I ..... (not) take another driving test.

5 Mark: Our children enjoyed their holiday at the summer camp.
Mary: ..... (they) help at mealtimes?
Mark: Well, they ..... (not) make the food, but they ..... (help) with the washing-up.

B Complete the sentences with *should have* or *shouldn't have* for these situations.

♦ SITUATION: Raphael didn't take his medicine. Later he got very ill.
Raphael *should have taken* his medicine.

♦ SITUATION: Sara drove her car when she was tired and she had an accident.
Sara *shouldn't have driven* her car when she was tired.

1 SITUATION: Anthony didn't buy any sugar so he couldn't make a cake.
Anthony ..... some sugar.

2 SITUATION: Ellie had a cold but she still went to the cinema. Later she had to stay in bed.
Ellie ..... to the cinema.

3 SITUATION: Edward ate a lot of apples. Later he had stomach ache.
Edward ..... so many apples.

4 SITUATION: Lucy didn't lock the door to her flat when she went to buy a newspaper. While she was away, someone stole her television.
Lucy ..... the door when she went out.

5 SITUATION: Mary borrowed Tom's camera without asking him.
Mary ..... Tom's camera without asking him.

C Some of the staff at the Information Office did not go to work last weekend because they were ill. Look at the work timetable and complete the sentences using the words in brackets ( ) and *had to, didn't have to,* or *should have.*

SATURDAY		SUNDAY	
On duty	**Comments**	**On duty**	**Comments**
Jenny	✓	Matt	✓
Noah	ill	Mary	✓
Jasmine	ill	Lewis	ill
Daniel	✓	Laura	ill

♦ (Jenny/Saturday) *Jenny had to work on Saturday.*

♦ (Matt/Saturday) *Matt didn't have to work on Saturday.*

♦ (Laura/Sunday) *Laura should have worked on Sunday* ..... but she was ill.

1 (Matt/Sunday) .....

2 (Jasmine/Sunday) .....

3 (Lewis/Sunday) ..... but he was ill.

4 (Mary/Saturday) .....

5 (Noah/Saturday) ..... but he was ill.

6 (Daniel/Saturday) .....

7 (Jasmine/Saturday) ..... but she was ill.

8 (Lewis/Saturday) .....

Test E Modal verbs

A **Chris is going to Carstairs College in Scotland. Miranda is already studying there. Cross out the incorrect modal verb forms to complete their conversation.**

Chris: •Can I / ~~Do I can~~ ask you a few questions about Carstairs?

Miranda: Of course. [1]You should / You ought to get as much information as possible before you go.

Chris: Do [2]I must / I have to wear a uniform?

Miranda: No, but [3]you must / you have dress smartly. You can't wear jeans.

Chris: [4]Should I / Had I take my laptop with me?

Miranda: No, [5]you don't ought / you don't need to! You have to write all your essays by hand!

Chris: What? Will [6]I be possible / I be able to use email?

Miranda: No, I'm afraid not. Carstairs is very old-fashioned. Anyway, when are you leaving?

Chris: [7]I managed / I could to get a ticket for the train this evening. [8]I should / I must have reserved a seat, though. [9]I can / I may have to stand all the way to Scotland.

Miranda: [10]Should I better / Had I better give you a ring later and see how things are going?

Chris: Sure. Can I use my phone at college?

Miranda: Yes, don't worry. But [11]you need / you must switch it off during the school day.

Chris: OK. Can you give me any more advice?

Miranda: Yes. [12]You must / You ought visit the lake near the college. It's beautiful!

B **Olivia is emailing Sarah. The numbered words in the box are missing from the text. Put one number only in the text at the right place.**

[1]able [2]have [3]to [4]~~should~~ [5]managed [6]needn't [7]ought [8]couldn't [9]had

I've had a terrible day! I •[4] have got up early, but I couldn't get out of bed! It was too late to go by bus, so I to get a taxi. Luckily, I to find one quite quickly. Of course, when we arrived outside the office, I didn't have any money, so I pay the driver. Anyway, I was to borrow some from the receptionist. I've paid her back already, but do you think I to give her a present as well? My boss was waiting for me in her office. I should arrived at nine o'clock, and I was half an hour late. I have taken a taxi at all, though! She told me the company was closing, so I had find a new job!

C **Mr and Mrs Buck are deciding what to take with them on holiday. Rewrite the sentences using the word in brackets ( ).**

Mrs Buck: It's not necessary to take the tent. (need)
•We don't need to take the tent.
We're not going camping again!

Mr Buck: The hotels will be full, possibly. (might)
The [1] .....

Mrs Buck: Then it will be necessary to sleep in the car. (have)
Then we [2] .....

Mr Buck: Well, I think we've got everything we need. What's in that paper bag?

Mrs Buck: I'm sure it's the sun cream we got in Brighton. (must)
It [3] .....

Mr Buck: It wasn't necessary to buy it. (needn't)
We [4] .....

Mrs Buck: Is it a good idea to take it with us this time? (Should)
[5] .....?

Mrs Buck: It's not possible for us to make the sun shine. (can't)
We [6] .....?

Mr Buck: The sun's always shining when you're with me, Maddie!

Mrs Buck: Are you feeling OK, George? Maybe you should have a rest. (better)
[7] .....

D Michael is about to give a presentation. Use the words from the box to complete what he's saying.

don't need to	should have	better start	~~Can you~~	could you pass
mustn't forget	might not	should really	Do I need to use	got to finish

'• Can you ..... hear me at the back of the hall? [1] ..... the microphone? Oh dear, it isn't working! You [2] ..... move to the front if you can. Excuse me, [3] ..... this information around? Thank you. Have I brought enough copies? I haven't? I'm so sorry. Sir, I can see you don't have a seat, but you [4] ..... write anything in my presentation. I'll put everything on my website. I [5] ..... to give you the address at the end. Now, I've [6] ..... in 30 minutes, so we'd [7] .....'. I'm sorry, Madam, but you [8] ..... be able to see the screen unless you move forward. Anyway, I [9] ..... started five minutes ago. Right, where are my notes?'

E Four friends are in a cafe. If the underlined modal verb forms are wrong, correct them. If they are right, put a tick (✓).

Tim: Is that your phone ringing, John?

John: Yes. It can be • must be ..... Dave. He said he would ring about now. No, wait a moment, it can't be • ✓ ..... Dave. That's not his number. I wonder who it is.

Phil: You'll have to [1] ..... answer it if you want to know! Who's that by the window, Tim? Is it Alice?

Tim: It needn't be [2] .....'. She's in New York. She must [3] ..... go there on business last Monday.

Phil: Then it must be [4] ..... her sister or something.

John: That was someone called Louise on the phone. I don't know her …

Phil: But she should have [5] ..... your number!

John: … and she says she's in the café with us. By the window.

Tim: Really? Well, she could be [6] ..... the girl who looks like Alice.

John: Shall I [7] ..... speak to her?

Phil: You don't ought [8] ..... to, because she's coming over now.

Louise: Hi, John. I'm Alice's cousin. She gave me your number.

John: Have a seat. Can I [9] ..... get you a coffee?

49 Articles (1): a, an or the

1 Compare **a** and **an**:

We use **a** before words which begin with consonants (**b, c, d, f, g, h, j, k, l, etc.**):
a doctor *a big car* *a girl*

We use **an** before words which begin with vowels (**a, e, i, o, u**):
an apple *an interesting film*

We also use **a** before **u** when it sounds like the word 'you'; and before **eu**:
university (sound: 'you'): ***a university***
a European city

We also use **an** before words that begin with a silent **h**. Compare **hour** and **house**:
hour (sound: 'our'): ***an hour***
house: a house

2 Compare **a/an** and **the**:

Mary: *I bought a laptop and a TV yesterday.*
Joe: *Was the laptop expensive?*

We usually use **a/an** with a noun to talk about a person or thing for the first time:
a laptop

We use **the** when we talk about the person or thing again:
the laptop (= the one that Mary bought)

3 There are some special uses of **a/an** and **the**:

- We use **a/an** with prices, frequency and speeds:
  It costs £2 a litre.
  I drink about three cups of coffee a day.
  You're driving at 150 kilometres an hour!
- We use **a/an** before **hundred**, **thousand**, and **million**:
  a hundred people *a thousand days*
- We use **a/an** for talking about jobs:
  I'm a bank manager.
- We use **the** when there is only one of something:
  May I turn on the TV? (=There is only one TV in the room.)
  Where's Mary? ~ She's in the kitchen. (= There is only one kitchen in the house.)
- We use **the** with musical instruments:
  I play the guitar. Jasmine plays the violin.

A Complete the sentences using *a* or *an*.

♦ I bought a new car yesterday.
1 She's reading ..... interesting book.
2 They've got ..... house in Spain.
3 It's ..... cheap restaurant.
4 He's ..... Italian businessman.
♦ It's an old film.
5 The journey took ..... hour.
6 We've lost ..... black cat.
7 I want to buy ..... umbrella.
8 It was ..... difficult exam.

B Complete the sentences using the phrases from the box and *a* or *an*.

European country | Indian river | ~~American director~~
university town | Japanese city | English airport | German car

♦ Steven Spielberg is an American director.
1 Tokyo is .....
2 Heathrow is .....

3 The Ganges is _____

4 Oxford is _____

5 A Mercedes is _____

6 Spain is _____

C **Owen wants to take out an insurance policy so Mike Cox, an agent from the insurance company, is asking him some questions. Complete their conversation using *a*, *an*, or *the*.**

Mr Cox: Hello, my name is Mike Cox. I am from ♦ an insurance company. I have ♦ a form with some questions. Your name is Owen Brent. Do you have [1] _____ middle name?

Mr Brent: Yes, my full name is Owen Marcus Brent.

Mr Cox: All right. Now, where do you live, Owen?

Mr Brent: I live in [2] _____ house in Peckham.

Mr Cox: Peckham, I see. And what is your job?

Mr Brent: I'm [3] _____ scientist. I work for [4] _____ government.

Mr Cox: Do you work in [5] _____ laboratory or in [6] _____ office?

Mr Brent: I work in [7] _____ small office in [8] _____ centre of London.

Mr Cox: And how do you get to [9] _____ office from Peckham?

Mr Brent: I usually take [10] _____ underground.

Mr Cox: What is your salary, Owen?

Mr Brent: Well, I earn almost £50,000 [11] _____ year.

Mr Cox: Now, your family. You're married, aren't you?

Mr Brent: Yes, and we have two children, [12] _____ girl and [13] _____ boy. [14] _____ girl is 16 and [15] _____ boy is 14.

Mr Cox: Fine. And you want to take out [16] _____ insurance policy for £100,000. Is that right?

Mr Brent: Yes, that's right.

Mr Cox: Well, that's all. Can you sign [17] _____ form here at [18] _____ bottom? Thank you.

D **There are some mistakes in these sentences. If the underlined words are wrong, correct them. If they are right, put a tick (✓).**

♦ I'm not sure what she does, but I think she's a ✓ doctor.

♦ I saw ~~the~~ a thousand different things when I was on holiday.

1 Be careful! That perfume costs £180 a _____ bottle.

2 We must invite him to the party. He plays a _____ piano and a _____ guitar.

3 **A:** What does John do?
B: I'm not sure, but I think he is the _____ teacher in a school.

4 She likes to drive at the _____ hundred miles an hour.

5 I play the _____ violin in an orchestra. They pay me £300 the _____ day!

6 I've got the _____ hundred jobs to do before we leave.

7 **A:** Is my handbag in the living room?
B: No, it isn't. I saw it in a _____ kitchen.

50 Articles 2: a/an, the or no article

1 We use **a/an** with singular nouns:

*He was reading **a** book.*

*I saw **an** interesting film yesterday.*

2 Look at this example:

*When I arrived, John was reading **a book**.*

We use **a/an** when it isn't necessary to make clear which particular thing we are talking about. There are lots of books; John was reading one of them.

We use **a/an** to talk about people's jobs:

*James is **an engineer**.* (= There are lots of engineers; James is one.)

We use **a/an** to describe things or people:

*They have **a beautiful house**.* (= There are lots of beautiful houses; they have one.)

*John is **an old friend** of mine.*

3 We use **the** with singular or plural nouns:

the book *the books*

We can use **the** with uncountable nouns (e.g. **music, water, food, education**):

The water is in the fridge.

Note:

- uncountable nouns do not have a plural (NOT ~~*two musics, three waters*~~).
- we do not use **a/an** with uncountable nouns (NOT ~~*a music, a water*~~). (See **Unit 53**.)

4 We use **the** when it is clear which person or thing we are talking about:

*Abigail was reading **a book**. She closed **the book**.* (= She closed the book that she was reading.)

*Anna likes music, but she doesn't like **the music** that John plays.*

*Mike's gone to **the shops**.* (= the local shops)

*She's in **the kitchen**.* (= the kitchen in this house)

*I must go to **the bank**.* (= my bank, where I keep my money)

the centre/the station/the airport (in a city)

the River Thames (there is only one)

the government (in my country)

5 We do not use **the** before plural nouns (e.g. **vegetables**) or uncountable nouns (e.g. **education, music**) when we are talking about something in general:

*Do you like **vegetables**?* (= any vegetables)

*I think **education** is very important.*

6 We do not use **a** or **the** before names of languages, meal names, the names of cities, most countries and most streets, and the names of airports, stations, single mountains or lakes:

*She speaks **Spanish**.*

*She lives in **Montpellier** in **France**.* (But we say **the** U.S.A., **the** United Kingdom.)

*What time will **lunch** be?*

*from **Heathrow Airport** to **Oxford Street***

A Complete the sentences with *a*, *an* or *the* if required. Leave the gaps empty if nothing is required.

♦ I want to put some money into my bank account, so I'm going to the ..... bank this afternoon. It's in Midland Street.

1 I had ..... sandwich for ..... lunch today.

2 We flew to ..... Dusseldorf Airport in ..... Germany.

3 It was ..... long flight, but eventually we arrived in ..... U.S.A.

4 I'm trying to learn ..... Japanese. I'm having ..... lesson tomorrow.

5 He made ..... angry speech against ..... government.

6 She is ..... famous actor and she is appearing in ..... popular TV series.

7 They live in ..... Paris in ..... area near to ..... River Seine.

8 They've bought ..... small flat in ..... Park Street.

B **Complete the sentences with *a*, *an* or *the* if required. Leave the gaps empty if nothing is required. (Note that the following words in this exercise are uncountable nouns: *music*, *fuel*, *education*, *fish*, *food*, *coffee*, *exercise*.)**

♦ She read *the* emails that had arrived that morning.

1 It was a nice day, so we had ..... lunch in ..... garden of my house.

2 I'm just going to ..... shops. I'll be back in a few minutes.

3 We phoned for ..... taxi to take us to ..... airport.

4 I like listening to ..... music when I come home.

5 Without ..... fuel, ... cars don't work.

6 John was at home. He was reading ..... magazine in ..... living room.

7 His parents believe that ..... education is a very important thing.

8 Jasmine doesn't like ..... fish; she never eats it.

9 After ..... dinner, I washed ..... plates and glasses.

10 Did you like ..... food at ..... party yesterday?

11 A: Where's ..... coffee?
B: It's in ..... cupboard next to ..... sink.

12 Doctors say that ..... exercise is good for everybody.

C **Complete this conversation with *a*, *an* or *the* if required. Leave the gaps empty if nothing is required.**

Mike: Is Maria ♦ *a* student at your college?

Rosie: No, she's [1] ..... old friend of mine. We were at school together.

Mike: What does she do now?

Rosie: She's [2] ..... computer programmer. She's not English, you know. She comes from [3] ..... Brazil, but she's living in [4] ..... U.S.A. at the moment.

Mike: Has she got [5] ..... job there?

Rosie: Yes, she's working for [6] ..... big company there.

Mike: Do you send [7] ..... emails to each other?

Rosie: Yes, and I had [8] ..... long email from her yesterday.

Mike: What did she say in [9] ..... email?

Rosie: She said that she was living in [10] ..... nice apartment in [11] ..... centre of [12] ..... Chicago.

D **Complete the story with *a*, *an* or *the*.**

Yesterday I was sitting on ♦ *the* six o'clock train when I saw [1] ..... strange man walking along the platform. He came into the carriage of [2] ..... train where I was sitting, and he sat in the seat opposite mine. He opened [3] ..... newspaper and started reading it. On [4] ..... front page of [5] ..... newspaper, there was [6] ..... picture of [7] ..... bank robber. The words under [8] ..... picture were: 'Wanted by the police'. It was [9] ..... same man!

51 Plural nouns; one and ones

1 We normally form plural nouns by adding **-s**:

SINGULAR		PLURAL
a cup	→	*some cups*
one student	→	*three students*
the cat	→	*the cats*

2 **one** and **ones**

Sometimes we use **one** instead of repeating a singular noun:

*I'm going to buy **a drink**. Would you like **one**?*
*Our **house** is the **one** with the red door.*

Or, we use **ones** instead of a plural noun:

*Shall I buy the red **apples** or the green **ones**?*
*These **biscuits** are cheaper than those **ones**.*

3 We often use **Which one ...?** and **Which ones ...?** in questions:

Shop assistant: ***Which one** would you like, the black dress or the pink one?*
Mary: *I'd like the black one, please.*

James: *I like the black and white photographs. **Which ones** do you like? The black and white ones or the colour ones?*
Lucy: *I prefer the colour ones.*

4 But we form some plural nouns differently:

MAN	→	MEN	+ -ES		
woman	→	*women*	*bus*	→	*buses*
child	→	*children*	*kiss*	→	*kisses*
person	→	*people*	*wish*	→	*wishes*
foot	→	*feet*	*watch*	→	*watches*
tooth	→	*teeth*	*match*	→	*matches*
sheep	→	*sheep*	*box*	→	*boxes*
mouse	→	*mice*	*potato*	→	*potatoes*
fish	→	*fish*	*tomato*	→	*tomatoes*

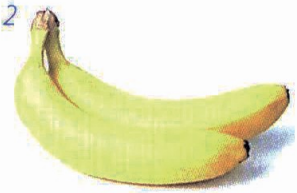
-Y	→	-IES	-F/-FE	→	-VES
family	→	*families*	*loaf*	→	*loaves*
city	→	*cities*	*wife*	→	*wives*
country	→	*countries*	*knife*	→	*knives*

(For more information plural nouns, **see Appendix 1**, page 242.)

A Complete the picture labels with plural nouns.

♦ 
Some *boxes*

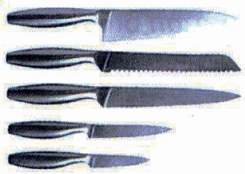
1 
Some .....

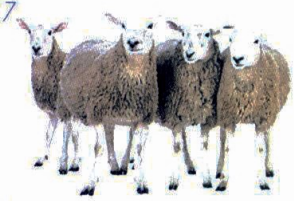
2 
Two .....

3 
Some .....

4 
Four .....

5 
Some .....

6 
Some .....

7 
Four .....

8 
Some .....

9 
Some .....

10 
Two .....

11 
Two .....

B Tick (✓) the correct plural forms and cross out the incorrect ones.

♦ knives ✓	tooths	matches	wishs
♦ ~~matchs~~	citys	cities	men
countries	potatoes	teeth	familys
wishes	tomatos	mouses	wifes
wives	potatos	countrys	tomatoes
mans	mice	knifes	families

C Replace one of the nouns in the sentences in brackets ( ) with *one* or *ones*.

♦ He's just bought a new suit.
(It's a blue suit.) It's a blue one.

♦ A: Who is your favourite actor?
B: (The actor that I like best is Joe Late.) The one that I like best is Joe Late.

1 I'm going to buy an orange juice.
(Would you like an orange juice?) .....

2 The chocolate cakes are popular.
(But the strawberry cakes are nicer.) .....

3 A: Which house do you like?
B: (I like the house with the red door.) .....

4 I bought a blue carpet last time.
(This time I want a green carpet.) .....

5 English is a difficult language.
(There isn't an easy language.) .....

6 A: Where did you put the photos?
B: (Do you mean the photos that we took in Turkey?) .....

D Elliot and Ellen are buying things for their new apartment. Complete their conversation with *one* or *ones*.

Ellen: Here's the china department. We need some cups.

Elliot: Do we want large ♦ *ones* or small [1] .....?

Ellen: Small [2] ..... are best.

Elliot: But I like tea in a large cup.

Ellen: OK, put six small cups and a large [3] ..... in the basket.

Elliot: What about a teapot? There's a metal [4] ..... and a nice china [5] .....
Which [6] ..... do you like?

Ellen: I prefer the china [7] .....

Elliot: It's similar to the little cups but it's not like my big [8] .....

Ellen: Well, it doesn't have to be exactly the same. Now, we also need knives.

Elliot: Can't we use the [9] ..... that my mother gave us?

Ellen: Well, I suppose the big [10] ..... for bread is all right, but we certainly need some little [11] ..... for vegetables and a sharp [12] ..... for meat.

Elliot: All right. Where are the knives?

52 This, that, these, those

1 Look at these examples:

This exercise is difficult.
These are very expensive!
*What is **that**?*
*Did you eat **those** sandwiches?*

2 Here are the singular and plural forms:

SINGULAR		PLURAL
this car	→	*these cars*
that car	→	*those cars*

We use **this**, **that**, **these**, and **those** with nouns (e.g. **painting**, **apple**):

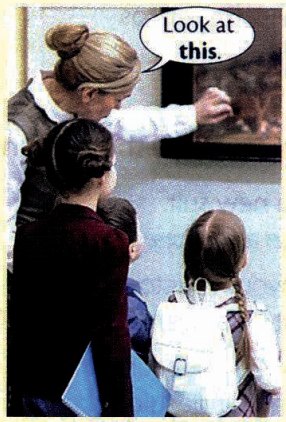
*I like **this painting**.*
__Those apples__ are delicious.

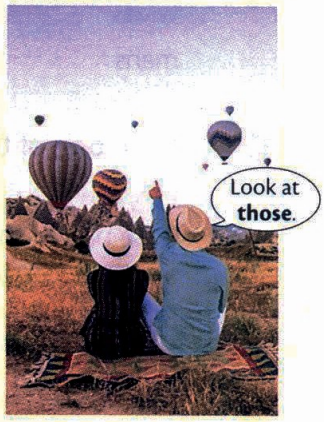
We use **this**, **that**, **these**, and **those** without a noun, when the meaning is clear. For example:

A student has just finished his homework, and he says to his friend:
That was easy! (= the homework)

Mike meets his mother at the station. He picks up her suitcases, and he says:
These are heavy! (= the cases)

3 We use **this** and **these** for things which are near to us, and **that** and **those** for things which are not near. Look at these pictures:





4 Things which are happening now are near to us in time, so we use **this** and **these**:

John (at a concert):
*Some of **these** songs are beautiful.*

Things which are finished are not near to us, so we use **that** or **those**:

John (after leaving the concert):
*Some of **those** songs were beautiful.*

A Put *this* or *these* in the gaps.

♦ I'd like to buy this book, please. How much is it?
1 Could you tell me where bus goes, please?
2 questions are difficult. Could you help me?
3 sandwiches are mine. Yours are on the table.
4 is wonderful! I love a hot bath after work.
5 Have you got some cheaper pens? are very expensive.

Put *that* or *those* in the gaps.

6 Look at clouds. I'm sure it's going to rain.
7 Did you enjoy film? I thought it was boring.
8 Let's cross the road. taxi is free.
9 apartments are all very expensive, because they're in the centre of town.
10 was delicious! I was so hungry.

B You are at the greengrocer's. Ask how much the fruit and vegetables are. Use *How much …?*, the words from the box, and *these* or *those*.



THERE: ~~cucumbers~~ pineapples lemons bananas tomatoes

HERE: ~~oranges~~ pears cabbages potatoes melons

♦ How much are those cucumbers?

♦ How much are these oranges?

1 .....

2 .....

3 .....

4 .....

5 .....

6 .....

7 .....

8 .....

C Complete the dialogue with *this*, *that*, *these*, or *these*.

James: It's very pleasant to sit here on ♦ this terrace in the middle of [1] ..... mountains.

Anna: Yes, and the food is good. [2] ..... grapes are delicious.

James: Delicious, yes, but [3] ..... one's bad. What are [4] ..... people over there eating?

Anna: Oh, [5] ..... is fondue. It's made with cheese. You see, they take one of [6] ..... little pieces of bread and then dip it in [7] ..... pot with the cheese in it.

James: We can try [8] ..... if we come again.

Anna: All the local restaurants serve it. So if we don't come back here, we can have it at [9] ..... little restaurant in the village.

James: Yes, but in the village you don't have [10] ..... wonderful view of the mountains.

53 Countable and uncountable nouns

1 Most nouns have singular and plural forms:

house/houses *dog/dogs* *man/men*

We call these nouns countable nouns, because we can count them:

one house *two dogs* *three men*

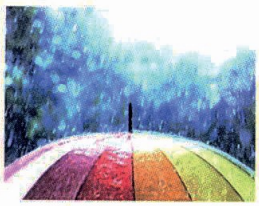
We can use **a**, **some** and **the** with countable nouns:

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
a:	*a house*	–
some:	–	*some houses*
the:	*the house*	*the houses*

2 Some nouns have only one form. We call these uncountable nouns, because we cannot count them:

water *bread* *petrol*
golf *tennis* *rain*

Look at these pictures:



rain (uncountable)



cars (countable)

We do not use **a** or **one**, **two**, **three**, etc. before uncountable nouns, but we can use **some** or **the**:

~~a~~: *We need to buy bread and sugar.*
some: *Let's stop the car. We need some petrol.*
the: *Look at the rain!*

3 Here is a list of common uncountable nouns and some of the words we use in front of them:

a	*glass* / *bottle*	*of*	*water* / *milk*
a	*cup*	*of*	*tea* / *coffee*
a	*spoonful*	*of*	*sugar* / *coffee*
a	*slice* / *piece*	*of*	*cake* / *bread* / *toast* / *cheese*
a	*piece*	*of*	*information* / *luggage* / *news* / *advice* / *homework*
some			*money* / *petrol* / *snow*

We can use **some** with all these words. We also use **grams**, **kilos**, **litres**, etc. in shops:

Can I have two litres of milk, please?

4 Some nouns can be countable or uncountable:

UNCOUNTABLE:

I like tea.
Her hair is red.
I haven't got time.
I always have sugar in my tea.

COUNTABLE:

I'll have two teas, please. (= cups of tea)
There's a hair in my tea.
We had a good time.
Three sugars in my tea, please.

A Put a circle around the uncountable nouns below.

house	cat	cheese	car	coat	snow	lemon
advice	clock	table	tea	ball	museum	apple
painting	petrol	news	cigar	teacher	film	rain
holiday	office	bed	pen	sugar	homework	watch
tennis	doctor	cinema	luggage	chair	banana	information
cup	coffee	shoe	shirt	money	exam	hour

city	park	toast	sock	nose	water	school
bread	book	jumper	cloud	milk	bike	television

B Choose the correct word in brackets ( ) to complete the sentences.

♦ (slice/piece/cup) I'd like a cup of coffee, please.
1 (glass/slice/spoonful) Would you like a _____ of cheese on your toast?
2 (pieces/cups/bottles) My father gave me two _____ of advice.
3 (slice/bottle/piece) Could you buy a _____ of milk at the shops?
4 (spoonful/piece/cup) That was a difficult _____ of homework!
5 (glass/piece/slice) Would you give me a _____ of water, please?
6 (slices/cups/pieces) How many _____ of luggage do you have?
7 (spoonfuls/glasses/cups) I normally take three _____ of sugar in my tea.
8 (pieces/slices/litres) I've just put 40 _____ of petrol in the car.
9 (piece/slice/glass) I need a _____ of information.
10 (piece/kilo/slice) I'd like half a _____ of coffee, please.

C Put a tick (✓) if the sentence is correct, and a cross (✗) if it is incorrect.

♦ We live in a flat. ✓
♦ I have some moneys. ✗
1 The car needs a petrol. _____
2 She takes a milk in her tea. _____
3 Mary likes tea; I prefer coffee. _____
4 He's got some new games. _____
5 Two glasses of water. _____
6 A table and two chairs. _____
7 Give me two toasts. _____
8 A snow comes in winter. _____
9 Give me some cup of tea. _____
10 Tim doesn't eat meat. _____
11 Two coffees, please. _____
12 Please buy some sugar. _____
13 Two kilos of a bread. _____
14 We have two homeworks. _____
15 I need some information. _____
16 We need some bananas. _____
17 Have we got a butter? _____
18 I like some egg for breakfast. _____
19 I can see some young women. _____
20 Can you see the moon? _____

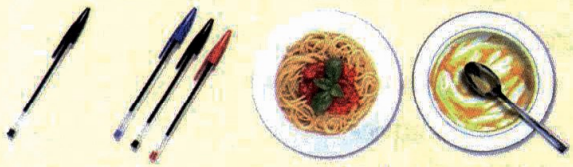
D Complete the sentences with the words from the box.

a (x2) bottle cartons cup (x2) pieces slice (x2) some (x4) the (x4) two (x2)

♦ My father has a _____ motorbike.
1 After school I have a _____ of bread with _____ butter on it.
2 Tom has got three _____ of luggage.
3 Lucy always has a _____ of coffee after lunch.
4 For this experiment we need a glass _____ with _____ water in it.
5 We want _____ coffees, please – one white and one black.
6 We must stop at a garage and put _____ petrol in _____ car.
7 How much is _____ bottle of Coke at _____ supermarket?
8 There are two _____ of milk in _____ fridge.
9 Can I have a _____ of tea and a _____ of cake, please?
10 There are _____ hairs in _____ bath. Both are long and blond.

54 A, some, any, no

1 Look at these pictures:



a pen *some pens* *some food* *no food*

2 We use **a** with singular countable nouns (e.g. **pen**, **car**, **friend**):

*I bought **a pen** yesterday.*
*Do you have **a car**?*
*He doesn't have **a friend**.*

(For countable and uncountable nouns, see **Unit 53**.)

3 We use **some** or **any** with plural countable nouns (**pens**, **friends**, **books**):

*I bought **some** new pens yesterday.*
*John doesn't have **any** friends.*
*Do you have **any** books about Africa?*

4 We use some or any with uncountable nouns (e.g. **money**, **information**, **advice**, **news**, **music**, **coffee**, **milk**, **toast**, **bread**, **food**, **water**, **snow**):

*I haven't got **any** money.*
*Did the teacher give you **any** advice?*
*I would like **some** coffee, please.*

5 POSITIVE

We normally use **some** in positive sentences:

*She took **some photos**.*
*I'd like **some information**, please.*

But we sometimes use **any** like this:

*You can leave at **any** time.* (= It doesn't matter when you leave.)
*Take **any** book.* (= It doesn't matter which book you take.)

6 NEGATIVE

We usually use **any** in negative sentences:

*I didn't see **any** good films last year.*
*We haven't got **any food**.*

We sometimes use **no** instead of **not ... any**:

*I'm sorry, there are **no** buses to the museum.*
*The shops are shut, and we've got **no** food.*

7 QUESTIONS

We use **any** in questions:

*Do you speak **any Russian**?*

But we use **some** in requests:

*Can you give me **some information**?*

We also use **some** when we offer something:

*Would you like **some coffee**?*

A Put the words in brackets ( ) in the correct order to make sentences.

♦ A: Can I help you, sir?
B: (to buy – for my living – room. – furniture – I'd – some – like)
Yes, please. I'd like to buy some furniture for my living room.

1 A: Shall we go into town this afternoon?
B: Why? (shops open today. – any – There – aren't)

2 A: (Can I – cheese, please? – some – have)

B: Of course. How much would you like?

3 A: (any – in Cambridge? – museums – Are there)

B: I don't know. We can find out at the Tourist Information Centre.

4 A: I'd like to go to Bristol, please.
B: Certainly, madam. (any – You – train from platform 9. – can take)
.....

5 A: I'd love to go to South America.
B: Really? (you speak – Spanish? – Do – any)
.....

6 A: I'm hungry! We haven't eaten all day. Look at that wonderful restaurant!
B: Wait a moment! (money – with us. – We haven't – any – brought)
.....

B **Make the following statements negative. Use *not* … *any*.**

♦ We've got some photos of our holiday.
We haven't got any photos of our holiday.

1 She gave me some advice.
.....

2 There are some good films at the cinema this week.
.....

3 You'll find some cake in the cupboard.
.....

4 Maria had some heavy luggage with her at the airport.
.....

5 There are some letters for you today.
.....

6 We saw some snow on the mountains this morning.
.....

C **Tom and Tina are writing a shopping list. Complete their conversation with *a*, *some*, *any* or *no*.**

Tom: We haven't got ♦ any ..... eggs so we need to buy ♦ some ..... .

Tina: No, no. There are [1] ..... in the fridge, but there's [2] ..... cheese.

Tom: OK, cheese. Now, we've got [3] ..... fruit in the sitting room but we haven't got enough for the weekend so we need to buy [4] ..... more. What else?

Tina: We want to have [5] ..... salad for lunch, I think.

Tom: Yes, of course. So we need [6] ..... lettuce. Oh, and [7] ..... tomatoes because there aren't [8] ..... in the kitchen.

Tina: We must buy [9] ..... bottle of oil as well.

Tom: OK, and I want to buy [10] ..... newspaper because there's [11] ..... football match on TV this afternoon and I want to know what the reporters are predicting.

Tina: But there are [12] ..... football matches today because the weather is so bad. We can go and see [13] ..... film instead.

Tom: Oh, all right. Anyway, are there [14] ..... more things to put on the list?

Tina: No, I think that's everything. I hope you've got [15] ..... money because I haven't got [16] ..... .

Tom: OK. Put [17] ..... coat on and get [18] ..... shopping bag and we're ready.

55 I and me (subject and object pronouns)

1 Look at this:

SUBJECT +	VERB +	OBJECT
Mary	saw	Peter and Paul.
She	saw	them.

Note that we can use **she** (subject pronoun) instead of **Mary**, and **them** (object pronoun) instead of **Peter** and **Paul**.

2 Here are the subject and object pronouns:

	SUBJECT	OBJECT
Singular	1 I	9 me
	2 you	10 you
	3 he	11 him
	4 she	12 her
	5 it	13 it
Plural	6 we	14 us
	7 you	15 you
	8 they	16 them

We must always have a subject in English:
They are coming. (NOT ~~*Are coming.*~~)

3 Look at the subject and object pronouns (1–16) in this conversation:

A: [1]*I saw Michelle yesterday, but* [4]*she didn't see* [9]*me.*
B: *Are* [2]*you going to see* [12]*her tomorrow?*
A: *No, I'm meeting Steve.* [6]*We're playing golf.*
B: [7]*You're both beginners!* [5]*It isn't an easy game. I played* [13]*it last year and I was terrible!*
A: *Why don't you come with* [14]*us? We can help* [10]*you.*
B: *I would like to play with* [15]*you both tomorrow, but my brother is leaving in the afternoon.* [3]*He is catching the two o'clock train, and we're taking* [11]*him to the station. He's spending a month with our aunt and uncle.* [8]*They live in Scotland. I stayed with* [16]*them last year.*

4 We use **it** for things and for the weather, time, days, dates, distances, and for animals:

I'm studying economics. It's a difficult subject.
It's hot today.
It's four o'clock.
It's Tuesday. It's the third of April.
It's 200 miles to York.
Look at that bird! It's eating the bread.

A Rewrite these sentences using subject and object pronouns instead of the underlined words.

♦ John and I saw Peter yesterday. He bought John and me a cup of coffee.
We saw Peter yesterday. He bought us a cup of coffee.

1 David and Mike are arriving today. I'm meeting David and Mike at the station.

2 I'm looking for Mary. Have you seen Mary? Mary isn't at home.

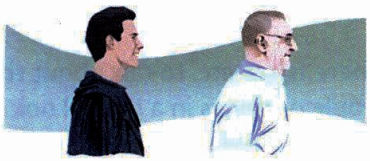
3 John and I saw a film called *The Tiger* yesterday. Have you seen *The Tiger*?

4 Come to the swimming pool with Joanna and me. Joanna and I are leaving now.

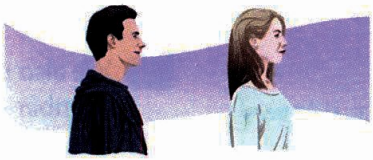
5 George and Jasmine are meeting Paul today. Paul is having lunch with George and Jasmine.

6 There's Jack! Jack's got a heavy suitcase. Shall we help Jack?

B Look at the pictures and put pronouns in the gaps.



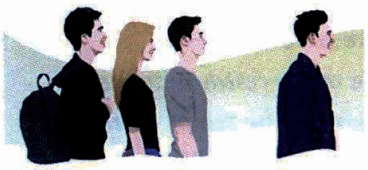
♦ *I* *him*



1 *I* *her*



2 *she* *it*



3 *we* *you*



4 *they* *him*



5 *it* *them*

♦ I saw him, but he didn't see me.

1 ..... saw ....., but ..... didn't see ..... .

2 ..... saw ....., but ..... didn't see ..... .

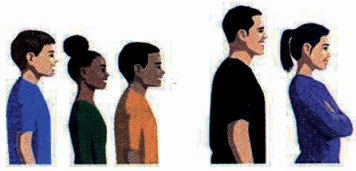
3 ..... saw ....., but ..... didn't see ..... .

4 ..... saw ....., but ..... didn't see ..... .

5 ..... saw ....., but ..... didn't see ..... .

6 ..... saw ....., but ..... didn't see ..... .

7 ..... saw ....., but ..... didn't see ..... .



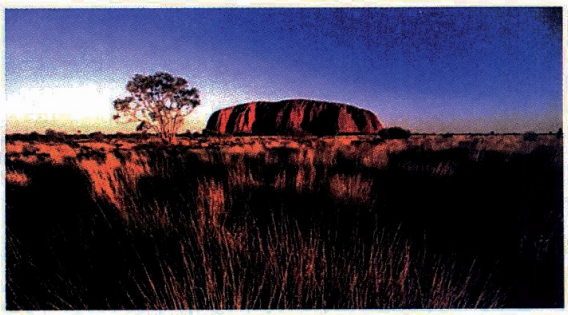
6 *you* *us*



7 *I* *you*

C James is talking about himself and his family. Put subject pronouns (*I*, *you*, etc.) in the gaps.

Hi! ♦ I ..... am James and [1] ..... live in Australia. [2] ..... 've got two brothers. [3] ..... 're called Pete and Mike. My mother works at the hospital. [4] ..... is a doctor. My father works in a sports shop. [5] ..... works very hard. The shop makes a lot of money, and [6] ..... 's always full of people.



Now put object pronouns (*me*, *you*, etc.) in the gaps.

On Saturdays I work for my father. I help [7] ..... in the shop, and he gives [8] ..... some money. On Sundays we go to the beach. We have two dogs, and we take [9] ..... with us. We also take a ball and they play with [10] ..... on the beach while we swim in the sea.

Now put object or subject pronouns in the gaps.

At the moment I'm at university. I'm studying Business. [11] ..... 's an interesting subject. Two of my schoolfriends are at university with [12] ..... . Our teachers are good but [13] ..... give [14] ..... a lot of work to do. Next week [15] ..... are all taking our first exams. I want to get good marks in [16] ..... .

56 There or it/they

1 Look at these sentences:

There is a big market near the river; it is very good for fruit and meat.

There are two buses on Sunday; they both go to the station.

We use **there is/are** when we talk about something for the first time in a conversation, and when we say where it is or when it is. We do not use **there** to talk about the same thing again; we use singular **it** (here meaning 'the big market') or plural **they** (here meaning 'the two buses'). Here are some more examples:

There are two schools here; they are both new.

There's a good programme on Sunday; it gives all the sports news.

2 We use **there** with different forms of **be**:

There weren't any laptops 50 years ago.

A: *Have there been any problems this year?*

B: *Yes, there have.*

There used to be a park here. (= There was a park here but it isn't here now.)

There may be some eggs in the fridge. (= It is possible that there are some eggs.)

3 We also use **there is/are** etc. to talk about the number of people or things in a place. Look at these questions and answers:

A: *How many people were there at your party?*

B: *There were about 12.*
(NOT ~~*We were about 12.*~~)

A: *Are there many restaurants here?*

B: *Yes, there must be ten or more.*
(NOT ~~*They must be ten.*~~)

We can use **of us, of them**, etc. after the number:

There were about 12 of us.

4 For the weather, we use **it** with a verb or adjective, but **there** with a noun:

it + verb: *It rained/snowed a lot last winter.*

it + adjective: *It was foggy/sunny/windy/cloudy.*

there + noun: *There was a lot of fog/cloud.*

5 Notice these examples with **it takes**:

It takes seven years to become a doctor.

A: *How long does it take to make bread?*

B: *It takes several hours (to make bread).*

These sentences describe the time that is necessary to do something.

A Complete the sentences using there *is*, *there are*, *it is* or *they are*.

♦ There are two cinemas in our town; they are both near my flat.

1 ..... one train on Sundays; ..... an express train.

2 ..... two national holidays this month, and ..... both on a Friday.

3 ..... several trees in our garden, but ..... not very tall.

4 ..... a big lake in the park; ..... very deep.

B Write answers to the questions using *There were ... of* and the words in brackets ( ).

♦ A: How many people were there at your party?
B: (20/us) There were 20 of us.

1 A: How many of you were there in the car?
B: (five/us) .....

2 A: How many sailors were there in the boat?
B: (six/them) .....

3 A: How many people were there at the supper?
B: (12/us) .....

C Rewrite the sentences using the words in brackets ( ) and *it* or *there*.

♦ There's a lot of snow in December.
(snows a lot) It snows a lot in December.

♦ It's quite cloudy this morning.
(quite a lot of cloud) There's quite a lot of cloud this morning.

1 There's a lot of rain in April.
(rains a lot) .....

2 It's foggy on the motorway this morning.
(fog on the motorway) .....

3 There are a lot of clouds in the mountains.
(very cloudy) .....

4 It's very windy on the west coast.
(a lot of wind) .....

D Complete the sentences using *there* and the words from the box. Use each word from the box once.

have been is may be used to be was will be

♦ There is ..... an accident on this road almost every day.

1 Last year ..... a terrible fire at that factory.

2 Next Monday at seven o'clock ..... a meeting of the committee.

3 When I was young, ... a lot more cinemas than there are now.

4 Since 1900 ..... two world wars.

5 ..... a late-night bus, but I'm not sure if there is.

E Look at the times needed to prepare certain foods, then write a statement or a question and answer.

bake bread – about three hours
cook a stew – about two hours
~~boil an egg – about three minutes~~
make a cake – about an hour.
~~prepare a salad – about ten minutes~~
cook an omelette – a few minutes
make tea – about five minutes.

♦ It takes about three minutes to boil ..... an egg.

♦ A: How long does it take to prepare a salad ..... ?
B: It takes about ten minutes .....

1 It ..... an omelette.

2 A: How long ..... tea?
B: .....

3 It ..... bread.

4 A: How long ..... stew?
B: .....

5 It ..... a cake.

57 My, your; mine, yours

1 Look at these sentences:

*This car belongs to me. It's **my** car. It's **mine**.*

2 Now look at this table:

OBJECT PRONOUN	POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVE	POSSESSIVE PRONOUN
me	*my*	*mine*
you	*your*	*yours*
him	*his*	*his*
her	*her*	*hers*
it	*its*	*its*
us	*our*	*ours*
you	*your*	*yours*
them	*their*	*theirs*

3 **my, your, etc.**

- We use **my, your**, etc. with nouns:
  my book *his hands* *their house*
- We say:
  *Anthony and **his** wife.* (NOT ... ~~*her wife*~~.)
  *Sara and **her** husband.*
  (NOT ... ~~*his husband*~~.)
- We use possessive adjectives with parts of the body:
  ***Her** hair is red.* ***My** hands are cold.*

4 **mine, yours, etc.**

- We use **mine, yours**, etc. instead of **my book, your keys**, etc:
  *My flat is in the centre of town. Where's **yours**?* (*yours* = your flat)
- We often use possessive pronouns in comparative sentences:
  *Our cat is smaller than **theirs**.*
  (*theirs* = their cat)
  *Your house is older than **mine**.*
  (*mine* = my house)
- We use **a/some + noun + of + possessive pronoun** to talk about one of a number of people or things:
  *I went to the club with **a friend of mine**.*
  (= one of my friends)

5 We do NOT use **a/an** or **the** with possessive adjectives or pronouns:

It's ~~a~~ my bag. They're ~~the~~ ours.

6 **'s or s'**

- We use **'s** with singular nouns or names:
  When is the team's next game?
  I went to Sam's house.
- We use **s'** with plural nouns that end with **-s**:
  She borrowed her parents' car.
- We use **'s** with plural nouns that do not end with **-s**:
  Many people's jobs are difficult.
- Remember that **its** and **it's** are different:
  *I've got a new dog. **Its** name is Pluto.*
  (*Its* = possessive adjective)
  ***It's** cold today.* (*It's* = It is)

(See **Unit 35**.)

A Complete the sentences using possessive adjectives (*my, your*, etc.) and possessive pronouns (*mine, yours*, etc.)

◆ This car belongs to me. This is my car. It's mine.

1 That ticket belongs to you. That's _____ ticket. It's _____.

2 These shoes belong to her. These are _____ shoes. They're _____.

3 This house belongs to them. This is _____ house. It's _____.

4 Those books belong to him. Those are _____ books. They're _____.

5 That bag belongs to me. That's _____ bag. It's _____.

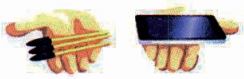
6 This key belongs to her. This is _____ key. It's _____.

7 Those coats belong to us. Those are _____ coats. They're _____.

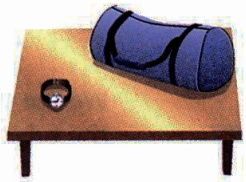
8 These pens belong to me. These are _____ pens. They're _____.

9 That watch belongs to him. That's _____ watch. It's _____.

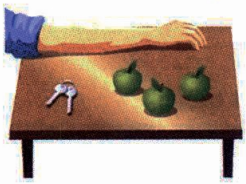
B Look at the pictures and complete the sentences. Use *my, your,* etc. and *mine, yours,* etc.



me



you



him



us



them



her

♦ Those are his keys.

1 That book is ..... .

2 These pens are ..... .

3 That's ..... money.

4 This bike is ..... .

5 That ruler is ..... .

6 This is ..... car.

7 Those are ..... sandwiches.

8 Is this bag ..... ?

9 Those apples are ..... .

10 This is ..... phone.

11 Is this ..... watch?

C If the underlined words are correct, put a tick (✓). If they are wrong, write the correct words.

♦ Look at the sky! Its going to rain. It's

♦ Is that Erica's car? ✓

1 Those photos on the table are the mine. .....

2 I met a friend of me at the shops. .....

3 The childrens' toys were on the floor. .....

4 I can't do this exercise. Its very difficult. .....

5 I like all of that writers' books. .....

6 People's opinions often change. .....

7 The workers' wages are very low so they are very unhappy. .....

8 They were talking about the world's problems. .....

9 Shall we give the cat it's food? .....

10 She stayed with some relatives of hers in Spain. .....

D Replace the words in brackets ( ) with possessive pronouns (*mine, yours,* etc.).

♦ My car is faster than (your car). yours

1 Her house is bigger than (my house). .....

2 Your watch is more expensive than (his watch). .....

3 My exams are more difficult than (their exams). .....

4 Their garden is more beautiful than (our garden). .....

5 Your son is younger than (her son). .....

6 My husband is stronger than (your husband). .....

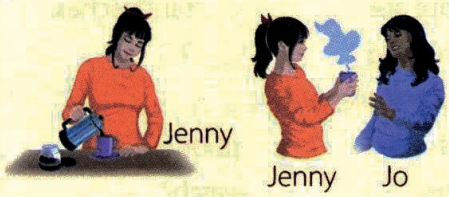
7 Her job is harder than (his job). .....

58 Myself, yourself, etc.; each other

1 Look at this table:

SUBJECT PRONOUNS	OBJECT PRONOUNS	REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS
I	*me*	*myself*
you (singular)	*you*	*yourself*
he	*him*	*himself*
she	*her*	*herself*
it	*it*	*itself*
we	*us*	*ourselves*
you (plural)	*you*	*yourselves*
they	*them*	*themselves*

2 Compare these sentences:



Jenny made Jo a cup of coffee.
(= Jenny made the coffee for Jo.)



*Jenny made **herself** a cup of coffee.*
(= Jenny made the coffee for herself.)

We use **myself**, **yourself**, **herself**, etc. to refer to the subject:

SUBJECT

*Be careful. **You** might hurt **yourself***

*I bought **myself** a new shirt.*
*He taught **himself** to swim.*
*They enjoyed **themselves** at the concert.*

3 We also use **myself**, **yourself**, etc. to emphasize that the subject did the action, not another person:

*He built the whole house **himself**.*
(= He built it alone; nobody helped him.)

4 We use **each other** like this:

*Tom and Lucy were talking to **each other**.*
(= Tom was talking to Lucy, and Lucy was talking to Tom.)

*We like **each other** very much.*
(= I like her and she likes me.)

Compare **themselves** and **each other:**

*Oliver and Ruth took these photographs **themselves**.* (= They took them, not another person.)

*Oliver and Ruth took photographs of **each other**.* (= Oliver took a photograph of Ruth, and Ruth took a photograph of Oliver.)

A Fill the gaps with *myself, yourself,* etc.

♦ I cooked myself a meal and then I watched television.
1 I'm sure he'll enjoy _____ on his trip.
2 I cut _____ while I was preparing the vegetables.
3 We amused _____ by playing cards while we were waiting for the plane.
4 She put the plates on the table and told them to help _____ to the food.
5 Tom hurt _____ when he was playing football.
6 Oliver cooked _____ a snack when he got home.

B Complete the sentences with the correct verb tenses and *myself, yourself,* etc. in the correct place.

♦ (you/cut) Be careful with that knife or you'll cut yourself.
1 (enjoy/very much) It was a very nice trip and we _____.
2 (burn) I _____ while I was taking the dish out of the oven.
3 (He/teach) He didn't have lessons. _____.

4 (I think I/buy) _____ a new coat tomorrow.

5 (She/make/a sandwich) _____ and ate it in the kitchen.

C Complete the sentences with *myself, yourself,* etc.

♦ Did you paint the room yourself ? ~ Yes, it took me three days to do it.

1 If you won't help me, I'll have to do it all _____.

2 She fixes her car _____.

3 The students organized the concert _____.

4 We painted the whole house _____.

5 He makes all his clothes _____.

D Complete the sentences using the words in brackets ( ) and *myself, yourself,* etc. at the end of the sentence.

♦ (She is a very successful singer. She/write/all her songs/.)

She is a very successful singer. She writes all her songs herself.

1 Could you send this parcel for me? ~ (No, I'm sorry, I won't have time. You/have/to send it/.)

No, I'm sorry, I won't have time. _____

2 (Nobody helped us, so we/carry/all our luggage/.)

Nobody helped us, so _____

3 (This is an excellent photograph./you/take it/?)

This is an excellent photograph. _____

4 (She was wearing a dress that she/make/.)

She was wearing a dress that _____

5 (I hope you like the present. I/choose/it/.)

I hope you like the present. _____

6 (Do you like this meal? I/invent/the recipe/.)

Do you like this meal? _____

E Complete the sentences with *each other, ourselves, yourselves* or *themselves.*

♦ They spent the whole evening arguing with each other .

♦ Their house is very beautiful; they designed it themselves .

1 Mary met John in April, but they didn't see _____ again until July.

2 They're not friends; in fact, they don't like _____ at all.

3 Don't ask me to help you. You must do it _____.

4 We didn't buy it _____. A friend bought it for us.

5 I could hear two people shouting at _____.

6 We're working in the same office now, so Ron and I see _____ every day.

59 Direct and indirect objects

1 Look at this example:



(i) *She gave **her friend** the book.*
(ii) *She gave the book **to her friend**.*

In both sentences **a book** is the thing which is given, and **her friend** is the person who receives it.

2 Here are other sentences like (i):

	+ PERSON (indirect object)	+ THING (direct object)
She gave	*her brother*	*a shirt.*
He sent	*me*	*an email.*
I showed	*him*	*my passport.*
Jasmine lent	*Frank*	*some money.*
I'll offer	*her*	*a job.*
I'll cook	*them*	*a meal.*
I fetched	*her*	*a plate.*
I'll get	*you*	*a magazine.*
I'll buy	*you*	*a coffee.*

3 Here are some other sentences like (ii):

	+ THING (direct object)	+ PERSON (to + object)
She gave	*a shirt*	*to her brother.*
I sent	*postcards*	*to my friends.*
I showed	*my card*	*to the clerk.*
She lent	*some money*	*to her friend.*
He offered	*the chocolates*	*to the others.*

Note that we use **to** + object after these verbs which express the idea of giving or showing something to somebody:

give ***send*** ***show*** ***lend*** ***offer***

But we use **for** + object after verbs which express the idea of doing something for another person:

cook ***fetch*** ***buy*** ***get*** (= 'fetch' or 'buy')

	+ THING (direct object)	+ PERSON (for + object)
We cooked	*a meal*	*for everybody.*
He fetched	*the newspaper*	*for his father.*
I'll get	*your book*	*for you.*
She bought	*some toys*	*for them.*

A Put the words in brackets into the correct order to make sentences.

♦ (He – lent – his car – Mark – .)
He lent Mark his car.

1 (a sweet – James – She offered – .)

2 (Mary – his holiday photographs – He showed – .)

3 (them – an invitation – Have you sent – ?)

4 (a birthday present – Did you buy – her – ?)

5 (I – some of my books – a friend – gave – .)

6 (When you go to the pharmacy, – some tissues – me – could you get – ?)

B Now write the sentences from Exercise A again, but using *to* or *for*.

♦ He lent his car to Mark.

1 She offered .....

2 He showed .....

3 Have you sent .....

4 Did you buy .....

5 I gave .....

6 When you go to the pharmacy, could you get .....

C Write sentences, putting the words in brackets ( ) in the correct place.

♦ She wrote a card. (me) She wrote me a card.

1 They sent an invitation. (us) .....

2 Michelle gave a present. (to Mike) .....

3 I made a sandwich. (her) .....

4 Tom bought a new phone. (for Ellie) .....

5 My uncle sold his camera. (me) .....

6 She left a message. (for you) .....

7 Mary sent some flowers. (them) .....

8 Did you take the money? (to the bank) .....

D Tim and Lucy went to a restaurant last night for a meal. Make sentences about what happened while they were there. Write two sentences. Use the words in brackets ( ).

♦ (The waiter/give/the menu)
(her) The waiter gave her the menu
(to Lucy) The waiter gave the menu to Lucy.

1 (The waiter/fetch/some wine)
(them) .....
(for them) .....

2 (The waiter/show/the bottle)
(her) .....
(to Lucy) .....

3 (The chef/cook/a special meal)
(them) .....
(for them) .....

4 (The waiter/give/the bill)
(Tim) .....
(to Tim) .....

5 (Lucy/lend/some money, because he didn't have enough to pay the bill)
(Tim) .....
(to Tim) .....

60 Much, many; how much/many; more

1 Look at these examples with **much** and **many**:



*There weren't **many** people in the restaurant.*



*I don't have **much** money.*

We use **much** and **many** to talk about quantity.

We normally use **much** and **many** in negative sentences:

A: *I'm so hungry.*
B: *I'm sorry, I don't have **much** food in the house. Shall we go out to a restaurant?*

*I haven't bought **many** games this year.*

We also use **much** and **many** in questions:

*Do **many** tourists come here?*
*Is there **much** snow in the mountains?*

We can use **how much** and **how many** in questions:

***How much** luggage have you got?*
***How many** times have you been to London?*

2 We also use **more** to talk about quantity:

*John did two exams yesterday and he is doing two **more** exams today.*
*We have some food, but we will need **more** food for the party tonight.*
Shall we go to the shops?

We often say **some more** or **any more**:

A: *Would you like **some more** toast?*
B: *No, thanks. I don't want **any more**. But could I have **some more** orange juice?*

3 We use:

- **much** with uncountable nouns:
  much food *much luggage* *much snow*
  much time *much money*
  (For uncountable nouns, see **Unit 53**.)
- **many** with plural nouns:
  many things *many books*
  many games
  many people *many tourists*
  many times
- **more** with uncountable and plural nouns:
  more toast/juice *more glasses*
- **much/many/more** without a noun:
  How much did that coat cost?
  A: *That cake was delicious.*
  B: *Would you like some more (cake)?*

A If the sentences are correct put a tick (✓). If they are incorrect, put a cross (✗).

♦ I don't have much food in the house. ✓
♦ I don't have many food in the house. ✗
1 We don't have many information about this machine. .....
2 We must buy some more apples. .....
3 How much people can you see? .....
4 Older students have more exams. .....
5 Is there many news this week? .....
6 We don't have much juice. .....
7 Do you have many luggage? .....
8 Grace doesn't earn much money. .....

B Write *much* or *many* in front of these nouns.

♦ How much money?
♦ How many films?
♦ Not many people.
1 How ..... snow?
2 How ..... tables?
3 How ..... cats?
4 How ..... petrol?
5 How ..... advice?
6 How ..... balls?
7 How ..... sugar?
8 How ..... buses?
9 How ..... books?
10 How ..... food?
11 How ..... cups?
12 How ..... watches?
13 How ..... homework?
14 How ..... times?
15 How ..... information?
16 How ..... toast?
17 Not ..... news.
18 Not ..... exams.
19 Not ..... luggage.
20 Not ..... children.
21 Not ..... museums.

C Complete the dialogues using *much, many, more, how much* or *how many.*

♦ A: How many ..... albums has your sister got?
B: She hasn't got many ..... . I've got more ..... than she has.

1 A: Is there ..... cheese in the fridge?
B: No, and there aren't ..... eggs, either.

2 A: ..... money do you earn?
B: Not ..... , but I earn ..... than my brother.

3 A: Do you have ..... homework?
B: Yes, because there aren't ..... days before the exams.

4 A: ..... food do we need?
B: We haven't got ..... vegetables, so we need to buy some ..... .

5 A: Is there ..... luggage in the coach?
B: There aren't ..... big suitcases, but there are a lot of small ones.

6 A: ..... toast do you want? ..... pieces?
B: Two please, and without ..... butter.

7 A: ..... spoonfuls of sugar do you take?
B: No sugar thank you. I don't usually eat ..... sugar.

D Complete the dialogue with *many, much* or *more.*

Jenny: I had a terrible Sunday. I met a friend at the airport, because he wanted some help with his luggage. But his plane was late, and he didn't have ♦ much ..... luggage! What about you?

Steve: I went into town to buy some books. I spent £50!

Jenny: How [1] ..... books did you buy?

Steve: Only three! In fact, I want to buy some [2] ..... books tomorrow.

Jenny: I don't have [3] ..... time to read at the moment. We're so busy at the office.

Steve: How [4] ..... hours a day do you work?

Jenny: I do eight hours at the office, and then I do two [5] ..... hours at home!

Steve: Do you get [6] ..... money for that?

Jenny: No, I don't get much, but I enjoy the work.

Steve: Why don't you ask your boss for some [7] ..... money?

Jenny: I don't have [8] ..... opportunities. She's always in America on business.

Steve: I see. Listen, do you want some [9] ..... advice?

Jenny: OK.

Steve: Look for a new job!

61 A lot of, lots of, a little, a few

1 Look at this example with **a lot of**:



*She's got **a lot of** luggage.*
(*a lot of* = a big amount or number)

We use **lots of** with the same meaning:
*She's got **lots of** luggage.*

In spoken English, we usually use **a lot of/lots of** in positive sentences:
*There's **a lot of/lots of** information in this book.*
(NOT ~~*There's much information in this book.*~~)
*I bought **a lot of/lots of** new books today.*
(NOT ~~*I bought many new books today.*~~)
***A lot of/Lots of** students work in the holidays.*

But in written English, we often use **much** and **many** in positive sentences:
*There are big problems in **many** parts of the world.*

2 We use a **lot of/lots of**:

- with uncountable nouns:
  ***a lot of** luggage* ***lots of** information*
- with plural nouns:
  ***a lot of** books* ***lots of** students*

3 Use a singular verb with an uncountable noun:
*There is a lot of **information** in this book.*
(NOT ~~*...are...*~~)

Use a plural verb with a plural noun:
*A lot of **students work**.* (NOT ~~*...works.*~~)

4 Look at these examples with **a few** and **a little**:



*She has **a few** bags.*
*She has **a little** luggage.*
(*a few* and *a little* = a small number or amount)

We can use **a few** and **a little** with **more**:
*Would you like **a little more** coffee?*
*I should have had **a few more** hours' sleep.*

5 We use:

- **a little** with uncountable nouns:
  *I have **a little money**, but I don't have much.*
- **a few** with plural nouns:
  *Can you wait **a few minutes**, John?*

We can use **a few** and **a little** without a noun:
A: *Have you got any money?*
B: *Sorry. I only have **a little** (money).*
A: *How many of his albums have you got?*
B: *I'm not sure exactly. **A few** (albums).*

6 Here are some common uncountable nouns:

coffee	*milk*	*cheese*	*information*
water	*bread*	*money*	*advice*
sugar	*news*	*luggage*	*homework*

A Complete the dialogues using the words in brackets ( ) and *a lot of* or *lots of*.

♦ A: Are you going to the cinema tonight?
B: (No, I have homework to do.) No, I have a lot of/lots of homework to do.

1 A: Are you hungry?
B: (No, I ate cake in town.) .....

2 A: Do you want some help?
B: (Yes, please. I have luggage.) .....

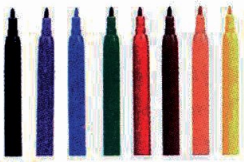
3 A: Did you enjoy the party?
B: (Yes, I met interesting people.) .....

4 A: Can you pay for our plane tickets?
B: (Yes, I have money at the moment.) .....

5 A: Is William coming?
B: (No, he isn't. He has things to do.)

6 A: Did she help you?
B: (Yes, she gave me good advice.)

B What do you see in the pictures? Write your answers. Use *a lot of/lots of, a few* or *a little.*

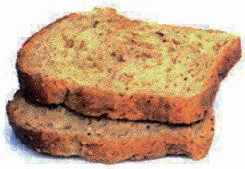
♦ 
a few pens

1 

2 

3 

4 

5 

6 

7 

C A friend is visiting you. Rewrite the questions you ask your friend, using *a few* or *a little* instead of *some.*

♦ Would you like some coffee? *Would you like a little coffee?*
1 Would you like some biscuits?
2 Shall I make you some sandwiches?
3 Would you like some cheese?
4 Can I bring you some cake?
5 Would you like some milk in your coffee?
6 Would you like some more sugar in your coffee?

D Tick (✓) the underlined words if they are correct. Rewrite them if they are incorrect.

♦ There is *are* a lot of tall buildings in New York.
♦ I bought a few ✓ presents today.
1 A lot of people travels to work by car.
2 She only has a little luggage with her.
3 We need a little tomatoes for this meal.
4 There are a lot of news on TV in Britain.
5 My father gave me a little advice before I went to university.
6 Could you give me a few water, please?
7 Lots of children use computers in school.
8 Are you hungry? Shall I make you a little sandwiches?

62 Something, anybody, nothing, etc.

1

something/anything = a thing
somebody/anybody = a person
someone/anyone = a person
somewhere/anywhere = a place

2 We usually use **something**, **somebody**, **someone** and **somewhere** in positive sentences:

Something is burning. (= I can smell burning. I don't know what is burning.)
*I'm going to have **something** to eat.* (= I'm going to eat; I don't know what I'm going to eat.)
***Somebody** told me that it was a good film.* (= A person told me it was a good film. I can't remember who told me.)
*She lives **somewhere** in the north.*

3 We usually use **anything**, **anybody**, **anyone** and **anywhere** in negative sentences, and in questions:

*I didn't know **anyone** at the party.* (= There were no people at the party who I knew.)
*I couldn't find my bag **anywhere**.* (= I couldn't find my bag in any place.)
*Did you understand **anything** she said?*

4

nothing = not anything
nobody/no one = not anybody/not anyone
nowhere = not anywhere

We use **nothing**, **nobody**, **no one** and **nowhere** before or after positive verbs:

***Nothing** makes Joe unhappy.* (= There isn't anything that makes Joe unhappy.)
*There's **nothing** I want to watch on TV.*
***Nobody** was there when I arrived.*
*There is **nowhere** that I would prefer to live than here.* (= There isn't anywhere ...)

5

everything = all things
everybody/everyone = all people
everywhere = all places

We use **everything**, **everybody**, **everyone** and **everywhere** before or after positive verbs:

***Everyone** likes music.* *I've done **everything** I can.*

6 Note that we use a singular verb after all these words:

*Nothing **is** wrong.* *Everyone **was** friendly.*

7 We can use **else** after **something**, **anybody**, **nowhere**, **everyone**, etc.:

*Let's talk about **something else**.*
(= Let's talk about a different subject.)
*I didn't tell **anybody else**.*
(= I didn't tell another person.)
*There is **nowhere else** I can look for it.*

8 We can also use an adjective (e.g. **wrong**, **nice**) after **something**, **anything**, etc.:

*Have I said **something wrong**?*

A Complete the sentences with the words from the box.

~~anything~~ nobody everything somebody (x2) somewhere
nothing everywhere something anyone everyone

♦ She didn't say anything about her job when I spoke to her.
1 _____ phoned you today, but he didn't tell me his name.
2 I'm sure you'll find it _____ in the house if you keep looking.
3 I had to go to the cinema on my own because I couldn't find _____ to go with me.
4 She said that _____ was fine and she was very happy.
5 Can I speak to you for a moment? I want to discuss _____ with you.
6 Unfortunately, I couldn't help. There was _____ I could do about the problem.
7 I looked _____ but I couldn't find it.
8 She married _____ she met when she was a student.
9 _____ was out of the office so there was _____ to answer the phone.

B Choose the correct verb form in brackets ( ) to complete the sentences.

♦ I'm afraid I *don't know* (know/don't know) anything about this subject.

♦ I rang the doorbell but nobody *was* (was/wasn't) in.

1 I asked a lot of people, but nobody _____ (knew/didn't know) the answer.

2 I _____ (have seen/haven't seen) anything so lovely before in my life!

3 I _____ (ate/didn't eat) anything for lunch yesterday.

4 Nothing interesting _____ (has happened/hasn't happened) since the last time I spoke to you.

5 He loves football. Nothing else _____ (is/isn't) important to him.

6 She _____ (said/didn't say) anything about her plans for the future.

C Rewrite these sentences using the words in brackets ( ) with the underlined adjectives or *else*.

♦ A strange thing happened yesterday. (something)
Something strange happened yesterday.

♦ Let's listen to some different music. (something)
Let's listen to *something else*.

1 Is there an interesting programme on TV tonight? (anything)
Is there _____ on TV tonight?

2 You won't find better food in any other place. (anywhere)
You won't find better food _____.

3 Is there a cheap place we can go for lunch? (anywhere)
Is there _____ we can go for lunch?

4 Let's sit in a different place. (somewhere)
Let's sit _____.

5 I'd like a hot drink. (something)
I'd like _____ to drink.

D Put the right form of a word beginning with *some-*, *any-*, *no-* or *every-* into the conversation.

Dennis: Have you read ♦ *anything* interesting lately?

Sarah: Yes, [1] _____ lent me a novel last week and I really enjoyed it.

Dennis: What was it about?

Sarah: It was about [2] _____ who goes to visit Australia. She likes to go [3] _____ alone. While she's travelling around on her own, [4] _____ terrible happens to her. She loses [5] _____ – including her passport and all her money. She doesn't know [6] _____ who can help her, and she's got [7] _____ to stay.

Dennis: What happens then?

Sarah: I'm not going to tell you [8] _____ else! You should read the book yourself.

Dennis: It sounds like a very depressing book! I'd prefer to read [9] _____ funny.

Sarah: No, read it. It's great fun. And [10] _____ wonderful happens at the end.

63 Every/each; one/another/other/others

1 We use **every** and **each** to talk about all people or things in a group or series. In many contexts, both **every** and **each** are correct:

*The letter has been sent to **every/each** member of staff.*

*We checked **every/each** item before we sent it.*

We use **every/each** + singular noun + singular verb:

***Every/Each** student has to fill in this form.*

We can use **each** (but not **every**) + **of** + **the/possessive** + **plural noun**:

*I put **each of the documents** into the correct place.*

We can use **each** (but not **every**) on its own as a subject or between a subject and a main verb:

*Tickets are now available and **each** costs the same.*

*Tickets (will) **each** cost the same.*

2 Sometimes we can only use **every**; at other times we can only use **each**. We use **every** to talk about a group or series of people or things in general, with the meaning 'all of them':

***Every** ticket had been sold.*

We use **each** to talk about all individual things or people in a group or series:

***Each** ticket costs £20.*

3 We use **one** + **of** + **the**/possessive + plural noun to talk about one person or thing when there are several or many:

***One of the students** in my class was off sick today.*

*He is staying with **one of his relatives**.*

We can use **one** + singular noun:

***One flight** leaves at five o'clock and the other is at nine o'clock.*

We can use **one** + singular verb:

*There are two flights. **One leaves** at five o'clock and the other leaves at nine o'clock.*

(See **Unit 51**.)

4 We use **another** + singular noun with the meanings 'one more' or 'a different one':

*Would you like **another drink**?*

*Let's go to **another restaurant** for a change.*

Notice that we do not use **another** with **one** and a singular noun (NOT ~~*another one drink*~~).

Notice also that we do not use **another** with a plural noun (NOT ~~*I met another people*~~).

5 We use **the**/possessive/quantifier + **other** + plural noun with the meanings 'different ones' or 'ones that have not been mentioned':

***The other hotels** were more expensive.*

*Ray agreed with me but **my other friends** said I was wrong.*

*For **all other enquiries**, phone this number.*

We use **the**/possessive + **other** + singular noun with the meaning 'the one that has not already been mentioned':

*One of his sisters lives in France and **his/the other sister** lives in Australia.*

We use **the other (one)** to talk about a person or thing that has not already been mentioned:

*He's got two homes – one is in London and **the other (one)** is in Florida.*

6 We use **others** with the meaning 'other people or things':

*Some people like sport and **others** aren't interested in it at all.*

We use **the others** with the meaning 'the other people or things (in a set or group)':

*We arrived first and **the others** came later.*

A Decide whether the underlined parts of the sentences are correct or not. Put a tick (✓) next to the sentences that are correct and rewrite the underlined parts of the sentences that are not correct.

- I've told every of my friends about this. *each of my friends*
- Each room has its own private bathroom. ✓

1 Every house in the street is exactly the same. .....
2 Each assignment on the course have to be completed on time. .....
3 Each candidate for the job was interviewed separately. .....
4 We couldn't park because every car park were full. .....
5 We each paid £5 towards the cost of the food. .....
6 There are three tests and every lasts for one hour. .....

B Complete these questions using *another, other* or *others*.

♦ Could I ask you another question?
1 What time is the _____ flight that day?
2 What will the _____ say when I tell them about this?
3 Do you know any _____ clubs that are as good as this one?
4 Will you have _____ chance to take the exam?
5 Could we change our meeting to _____ date?

C Complete this article about a film star using *one, another, other* or *others*.

Walter Richards had a remarkably successful film career. ♦ One _____ reason for his success was that he had such a relaxed acting style that he never really seemed to be acting. [1] _____ reason was of course his good looks. No [2] _____ actor looked quite like him and his image was used on posters and all sorts of other goods. In a film career spanning 60 years, he won two Oscars and many [3] _____ awards. He first came to fame playing an ambitious musician in *The Path To Glory* and he played a similar character in [4] _____ film shortly afterwards – *High Hat*. [5] _____ roles quickly followed and he was soon a household name. Many people felt that, although he made over 100 films, most of the [6] _____ weren't as good as the first two. Nevertheless, he continued to have a highly successful career, and was working on [7] _____ film when he died, aged 85.

D Complete these dialogues using *one, another, other, the other, others* or *the others*.

♦ A: All their flights are fully booked.
B: Well, we'll have to use another airline. Lots of airlines fly there.

1 A: Do you like this writer?
B: I'm not sure. I really enjoyed one of her books but I haven't enjoyed any of books she's written.

2 A: Have you been to any _____ cities in Britain apart from London?
B: Yes, on my _____ visit to this country last year, I went to Birmingham.

3 A: Are you on your own?
B: Yes, but _____ are on their way. They'll be here soon.

4 A: Is the company you work for big?
B: It has two main offices. _____ office is in Lisbon and _____ is in Paris.

5 A: Can we make a decision now?
B: No, I think we should have _____ discussion about the subject later.

64 All, most, some, none

1 We use

all/most/some + NOUN (e.g. most cities)

to talk about things or people in general:

*She thinks that **all sports** are boring.*
(= She thinks that every sport is boring.)

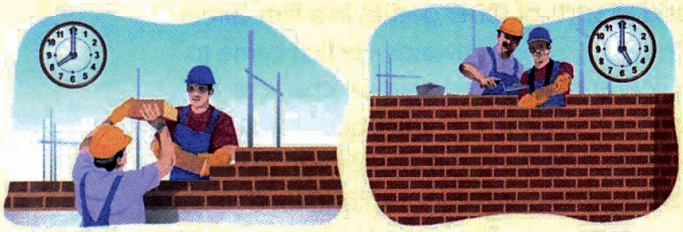
__Most cities__ have a lot of shops.
(= Almost every city has a lot of shops.)

In __some countries__ life is very hard.
(= In a number of countries in the world, but not all or most ...)

We do not say **all/most/some** + **of** + noun:

__Most people__ take exams during their lives.
(NOT ~~*Most of people*~~ ...)

2 We can also use **all** with **morning/afternoon/evening/night/day/week/year** (e.g. **all afternoon**) to mean 'the whole', 'from the beginning to the end of':



*They've been working hard **all day**.*
*I waited for the phone call **all morning**.*

3 We use

***all/most/some/none* } + *of* + *the/my/her* + NOUN**
(e.g. all of my books)

to talk about particular things or people:

*He spent **all of his money**.*
__Most of my friends__ are interested in sport.
I knew __some of the people__ at the party.
__None of the shops__ were open.

Notice that we use a positive verb with **none**.
We can leave out **of** after **all** (but not after **most**, **some**, **none**):

*He spent **all his money**.*

4 We can use

all/most/some/none + of + it/them

when we have already mentioned the noun that **it** or **them** refers to:

*It was lovely food, but I couldn't eat **all of it**.*
(*it* = the food)

*I phoned a number of hotels, but **most of them** were full.* (*them* = the hotels)

*That cake looks nice. Can I have **some of** it?*
(*it* = the cake)

A Look at the exam results for four people. Complete the sentences using *all of*, *some of*, *most of* or *none of*. Sometimes you will need *the* (e.g. *some of the*).

STUDENT	EXAM 1	EXAM 2	EXAM 3	EXAM 4	EXAM 5	EXAM 6
Alice	PASS	PASS	FAIL	PASS	PASS	PASS
William	PASS	PASS	PASS	PASS	PASS	PASS
Laura	FAIL	PASS	PASS	PASS	FAIL	FAIL
David	FAIL	FAIL	FAIL	FAIL	FAIL	FAIL

♦ Alice passed most of the exams.
1 William passed _____ exams.
2 William failed _____ them.
3 Laura passed _____ exams.
4 Laura passed _____ them.
5 Laura failed _____ them.
6 David passed _____ them.
7 David passed _____ exams.
8 David failed _____ exams.

B **Complete the sentences with the phrases from the box. Use the phrases more than once.**

all all the none of the some some of the

♦ All ..... European children have to go to school.

♦ The classroom is empty because some of the ..... children are outside.

1 We can't buy anything today because ..... shops are closed.

2 We like that restaurant. ..... food is expensive, but everything is very good.

3 ..... people say he's the best tennis player in the world, but I don't agree.

4 That's a terrible shop. ..... assistants are very helpful.

c William's very lazy. He watches films online ..... afternoon.

6 ..... drinks machines here are working. Where can I get a coffee?

7 It's a wonderful trip. You have ..... day to see the sights.

8 IMPORTANT NOTICE: ..... passengers must have a valid ticket.

9 If ..... students can answer the teacher's questions, she explains the point again.

10 We can't sit down. ..... chairs are wet.

11 ..... cars use petrol and others use diesel.

12 This light works ..... time, but not always.

C **Write full sentences using *all, most, some* or *none*. Use *them* or *it* when possible and include *of* or *the* if necessary.**

♦ 100% – sports – physical and – 20% – dangerous.

All sports are physical and some of them are dangerous.

♦ 80% – Hepworth's art – abstract and – 25% – difficult to understand

Most of Hepworth's art is abstract and some of it is difficult to understand.

1 80% – professional footballers – well off and – 20% – very rich.

2 80% – sea – very salty and – 0% – fresh water.

3 30% – pop music – very pleasant but – 20% – terrible.

4 75% – Indian food – spicy and – 15% – very spicy.

5 100% – my relatives – slim and – 0% – very tall.

6 75% – my friends – students but – 0% – very clever.

7 80% – Nepal – mountainous and – 0% – flat.

8 75% – the Earth – inhabited but – 10% – desert.

Test F Articles, nouns, pronouns, etc.

A This is an advertisement in a music shop. In the numbered lines cross out one c words *a*, *an* or *the*.

♦ It's ~~a~~ time to change your life!

1 Would you like to learn to play the a piano?

2 All you need is half a an hour a day and a the simple book!

3 What's the name of the a book? *Bob Bryant's Big Piano Book*!

4 The friends are great, but the music will be your partner forever!
Don't just stand there! Buy this book today!

5 You'll also get the a free download of piano music from around a the world!

B William and Michelle are going on holiday with their children, Chloe and Dan. Complete their conversation with the words from the box. One of the words is not needed.

everywhere	anybody	someone	everyone
~~anywhere~~	somewhere	nothing	nobody

William: Has anyone seen the big blue beach ball? I can't find it ♦ *anywhere*.

Chloe: Have you looked in the cupboard under the stairs?

William: Yes, there's [1] _____ there. Only a box.

Chloe: And did you look in the box?

William: Of course. I've looked [2] _____.

Chloe: Well, it must be [3] _____.

Dan: Come on, [4] _____, let's help Dad find the blue bea

Michelle: But [5] _____ could find it last year, or the year befor

William: Surely [6] _____ has seen it?

Chloe: Do you know what I think? I think we've never had a blue

C Read this dialogue about the British Museum. Put *a*, *an*, *the* or

Cathy: Have you been to ♦ *the* British Museum yet?

Alice: I don't even know where it is, I'm afraid.

Cathy: It's in [1] _____ street near Tottenham Court Road.

Alice: What's the name of [2] _____ street?

Cathy: Russell Street. The mummies from Ancient Egypt are on [3] _____ first floor.

Alice: I'd love to see [4] _____ Egyptian mummy. People say that when kings died, the ancient Egyptians gave them [5] _____ food and [6] _____ water to take to the next world.

Cathy: That's right. And have you heard about the Elgin Marbles?

Alice: Yes. They were part of [7] _____ Parthenon in Athens, and Lord Elgin brought them back to London 200 years ago. Now they're in the British Museum, but [8] _____ Greek Government wants them back in Athens. What do you think about that?

Cathy: I'm not sure. If we send [9] _____ Marbles back to [10] _____ Greece, we'll have to send everything back in the end, won't we?

Alice: Why not?

Cathy: So all [11] ..... paintings by Picasso in museums around the world would go back to Spain?

Alice: Yes. I think it's [12] ..... good idea. Everyone would have to travel to [13] ..... countries that made these famous things.

D **Two students are in a cafe, talking about going home to Mexico. If the underlined phrases are correct, put a tick (✓) in the space provided. If they're incorrect, rewrite them.**

Federico: How many sugar do you take in your coffee? • How much sugar .....

Maria: Half a spoonful, please. I only like a little. • ✓ .....

Federico: So, how many bags have you packed? [1] .....

Maria: Two. Why? How many luggage have you got? [2] .....

Federico: Too much. I'll have to post some of it. [3] .....
How much costs it to post things? [4] ..... Is it very expensive?

Maria: I don't know. I'm OK at the moment, but I haven't bought some presents yet.
[5] ..... I'm waiting for my Dad to send me any more money!
[6] .....

Federico: How many presents are you going to buy, then? [7] .....

Maria: A lot! [8] ..... I've got a big family. What about you?

Federico: Me? I'm only going to get a little things. [9] ..... I've only got a little cash left, I'm afraid. Can you give me an advice? [10] .....

Maria: Well, you could get a lot of [11] ..... small presents, I suppose, or just a little, big ones. [12] .....

Federico: Do you want some more coffee? I think there's a few more in the pot. [13] .....

Maria: No thanks, I haven't got a lot of time. [14] ..... I've had three cups already.

E **John and Steve used to share a house, but John left this morning to live in a different house. Steve is sending him an email. Put the words from the box in the gaps.**

me mine one ones some that them
them there there's ~~your~~ yours yourself

Hi John,

Are you sure that you've taken all • your ..... things? I'm sure [1] ..... green football on top of the wardrobe isn't mine, and [2] ..... an expensive black fountain pen on the table which is [3] ..... . And did you give [4] ..... the book on fishing, or did you buy it for [5] ..... ? I can't remember. There are [6] ..... purple socks with Mickey Mouse on [7] ..... . Are those the [8] ..... you bought at the market? Also, [9] ..... are no sheets left on your bed. But the sheets were [10] ..... , weren't they? I lent [11] ..... to you, and I want them back! Finally, I'm sure I bought two big cakes yesterday. You haven't taken [12] ..... , have you?

Steve

65 Adjectives (order)

1 We use adjectives to describe people and things. Here are some examples:

old	small	friendly	rich	cheap

Look at these sentences:

*I've bought an **old** table for my kitchen.*
*My home town is **small** and **friendly**.*
*We had lunch in a **cheap** restaurant.*

2 The form of adjectives never changes:

*a **rich** man* *a **rich** woman* *two **rich** men*

3 We put an adjective before a noun:

	ADJECTIVE +	NOUN
I saw a	*beautiful*	*cat.*

We put an adjective after **be**:

	BE +	ADJECTIVE
They	*are*	*hungry.*

We sometimes use these verbs instead of **be**:

look	feel	taste	smell	sound

Here are some examples:

*She **looks happy**.*
*This cheese **tastes wonderful**.*
*I **feel cold**.*

4 When we use two adjectives before a noun, we put in a comma (,):

*He's a **nice, old** man.*

When we use two adjectives without a noun, we use **and**:

*You look **tired** and **hungry**.*

5 When we use more than one adjective, there is a general guide to the correct order:

SIZE +	AGE +	COLOUR +	NATIONALITY +	MATERIAL
a	*new,*	*green*		*bag*
a	*big,*	*French*		*house*
a	*small,*	*wooden*		*table*

We often use materials as adjectives:

*a **cotton** shirt* *a **silver** ring* *a **plastic** bag*

6 Here are some common nationality adjectives:

American	***German***	***Portuguese***
Australian	***Greek***	***Russian***
Chinese	***Indian***	***Turkish***
Dutch	***Italian***	***South African***
English	***Japanese***	***Spanish***
French	***Polish***	***Swedish***

A There are 13 adjectives in this story. Underline them.

My ♦ favourite picture is one of a large, square room by a Dutch artist. An elegant man sits on a wooden bench in a corner. He has a small black dog at his feet. The dog looks sleepy. Through the open window you can see bright sunshine. When I look at this picture I feel warm and happy.

B Complete this text using the adjectives from the box.

busy careful ~~enjoyable~~ free good late long old tall valuable

Ladies and gentlemen! This is Covent Garden. We want you to have an ♦ *enjoyable* visit so the coach waits here a [1] ..... time. We get on it again at 12 o'clock, in the coach park behind the [2] ..... tower you can see over there. Covent Garden is in fact an [3] ..... market but today it is a place where there is [4] ..... entertainment – you don't have to pay to see anything. But be [5] ..... ! Like all [6] ..... places, Covent Garden has pickpockets, so look after your money and your [7] ..... possessions like phones. Have a [8] ..... time and please don't be [9] ..... for the coach.

C Complete the sentences using the correct forms of the words from the box.

look (x2) feel ~~taste~~ sound (x2) smell

♦ Taste these apples. I've already eaten two. They're delicious!

1 That music _____ terrible. What group is playing?

2 Those flowers look nice and they _____ good too. What are they?

3 I saw Jasmine yesterday, but I didn't speak to her. She _____ tired.

4 Could you close the door, please? I _____ cold.

5 That new picture will _____ wonderful in your dining room.

6 Do you know where that song comes from? It _____ Spanish.

D Look at these sentences. If the underlined adjectives are in the wrong order, cross them out and write in the correct order. If you think the order is correct, put a tick (✓).

♦ She lost a ~~gold small~~ small gold ring at the party last night.

♦ I have an old Italian ✓ painting in my living room.

1 I'm looking for my cotton green _____ shirt and my brown leather _____ shoes.

2 George has a Spanish modern _____ villa near the sea. He goes there every summer.

3 I live in an old white _____ house near the river. I've got a black large _____ dog!

4 I had an interesting talk with a Polish young _____ student last week.

5 We are having lunch in a big Japanese new _____ restaurant in the centre of town.

6 I left all my books in a red plastic _____ bag on the bus. I was so stupid!

E Complete the sentences with a name and a nationality from the box.

NAMES			NATIONALITIES		
Salamanca	*Vincent van Gogh*	*A Volkswagen*	*Dutch*	*Italian*	*German*
Alfred Nobel	*Sherlock Holmes*	*Chang*	*French*	*English*	*American*
Audrey Tautou	*pizza*	*Batman Forever*	*Spanish*	*Swedish*	*Chinese*

♦ Batman Forever is an American film.

1 _____ is a _____ car.

2 _____ was a _____ artist.

3 _____ is an _____ detective.

4 _____ is a _____ actor.

5 _____ is an _____ food.

6 _____ was a _____ chemist.

7 _____ is a _____ surname.

8 _____ is a _____ city.

66 Adjectives: -ed or -ing

1 Compare **frightened** and **frightening**:

We can use adjectives that end with **-ed** to describe people's feelings:



frightened

SUBJECT	
Joshua	*was very **frightened**.*

The subject of the sentence (e.g. ***Joshua***) is the person who has the feeling.

We use an adjective that ends with **-ing** (e.g. frightening) to talk about a thing or person that makes us have a feeling:

frightening



SUBJECT	
The ghost	*was very **frightening**.*

The subject of the sentence (e.g. ***the ghost***) causes the feeling.

2 Here are some more examples to compare:

*We are all **surprised** by the news.*
(= We feel surprised.)
*I was very **tired** at the end of the journey.*
(= I felt tired.)
*He was **excited** by the way the game ended.*
*I'm **interested** in your idea.*
*The students were **bored** during the lesson.*
*Were you **disappointed** by the film?*
*I wasn't nervous before the exam; I was **relaxed**.*
*The children were **entertained** by three clowns.*
*Jack was totally **convinced** by Anna's explanation.*

*The news is **surprising**.*
(= The news makes us feel surprised.)
*The journey was very **tiring**.**
(= The journey made us feel tired.)
*The end of the game was **exciting**.*
*Your idea is **interesting**.*
*The lesson was **boring**.*
*Was the film **disappointing**?*
*I went for a **relaxing** walk.*
*The clowns were very **entertaining**.*
*Anna's explanation was totally **convincing**.*

**Note that we can say:
*The journey was very **tiring**.*
OR: *It was a very **tiring journey**.*

A Choose the correct adjective in brackets ( ) to complete the sentences.

♦ It was a terrible play and I was *bored* (bored/boring) from start to finish.
1 I'm very ..... (excited/exciting) because I'm going to New York tomorrow.
2 Are you ..... (surprised/surprising) or were you expecting this news?
3 I'm reading a very ..... (interested/interesting) book at the moment.
4 I've had a very ..... (tired/tiring) day at work today and I want to go to bed.
5 Most people were ..... (surprised/surprising) that he won the championship.
6 I'm ..... (bored/boring). Let's go out for a cup of coffee somewhere.
7 Visit our ..... (excited/exciting) new shop!

8 His speech was very long and very _____ (bored/boring).

B Complete the sentences using the words from the box.

bored interested surprising amusing confused
boring amused confusing surprised ~~interesting~~

♦ Your idea is very interesting. Tell me more about it.
1 He told me a very _____ story. I laughed and laughed.
2 This is a terribly _____ book. Nothing happens in it.
3 She's _____ in politics and often talks about it.
4 The map was _____ and I got lost.
5 She was _____ because she had nothing to do all day.
6 Everyone else thought it was funny, but she wasn't _____.
7 Could you repeat that, please? I'm a bit _____ because it was very complicated.
8 It is _____ that she failed the exam, because she's a good student.
9 Everyone was _____ by the sudden noise.

C

bored boring confusing convinced convincing disappointed ~~entertained~~
entertaining frightened interesting relaxed surprised surprising

Sebastian: What sort of films do you like?
Liz: When I go to the cinema, I like to be ♦entertained.
Sebastian: And what sort of films do you find [1] _____?
Liz: Well, I like films that tell a good, [2] _____ story. And I mean a story that you can follow, not the sort that goes backwards and forwards in time. I find those very [3] _____. And I'm [4] _____ when I watch a horror film. I usually close my eyes when the horror starts.
Sebastian: Yes, but if the story is too simple, surely you get [5] _____ because you know exactly what's going to happen.
Liz: I don't mean that. If something is intelligible, it's not necessarily [6] _____. Often good stories have [7] _____ events or endings – things that you can't possibly know at the beginning.
Sebastian: For me the most important thing is that the actors must be [8] _____ so that you really believe that they are the person they are acting.
Liz: If that's true, I imagine that you are [9] _____ most of the time because, well, for example, Harrison Ford is always Harrison Ford. I'm never [10] _____ that he's somebody else.
Sebastian: Yes, but it's often not important in his films because they're escapist – if you're feeling tense about work or something, you have a good laugh and you come out feeling [11] _____ and happy with the world.
Liz: I'm [12] _____ that you like his films. Although the special effects are good, the story is always terribly simple.
Sebastian: He's not my favourite, but his films are not bad.

67 Cardinal and ordinal numbers

1 Look at these examples:

Three students were late.
*She lives on the **third** floor.*

Three is a cardinal number.
Third is an ordinal number.

2 Now look at the table:

CARDINAL NUMBERS		ORDINAL NUMBERS	
1	*one*	1st	*first*
2	*two*	2nd	*second*
3	*three*	3rd	*third*
4	*four*	4th	*fourth*
5	*five*	5th	*fifth*
6	*six*	6th	*sixth*
7	*seven*	7th	*seventh*
8	*eight*	8th	*eighth*
9	*nine*	9th	*ninth*
10	*ten*	10th	*tenth*
11	*eleven*	11th	*eleventh*
12	*twelve*	12th	*twelfth*
13	*thirteen*	13th	*thirteenth*
14	*fourteen*	14th	*fourteenth*
15	*fifteen*	15th	*fifteenth*
16	*sixteen*	16th	*sixteenth*
17	*seventeen*	17th	*seventeenth*
18	*eighteen*	18th	*eighteenth*
19	*nineteen*	19th	*nineteenth*
20	*twenty*	20th	*twentieth*
21	*twenty-one*	21st	*twenty-first*
22	*twenty-two*	22nd	*twenty-second*
30	*thirty*	30th	*thirtieth*

3 cardinals (40 to 4,000,000)

40 forty	60 sixty	80 eighty
50 fifty	70 seventy	90 ninety

100 one hundred
101 one hundred and one
1,000 one thousand
1,000,000 one million
200 two hundred
210 two hundred and ten
3,000 three thousand
$4,000,000 four million dollars

4 Look at how we say these dates:

13 or 13th June: *The **thirteenth** of June.*
*June the **thirteenth**.*
1994: *Nineteen ninety-four.*
26 or 26th March 1995 (26.3.95):
*The **twenty-sixth** of March, nineteen ninety-five.*

A Look at the numbers in brackets ( ). Cross out the wrong form and tick (✓) the right form for each one.

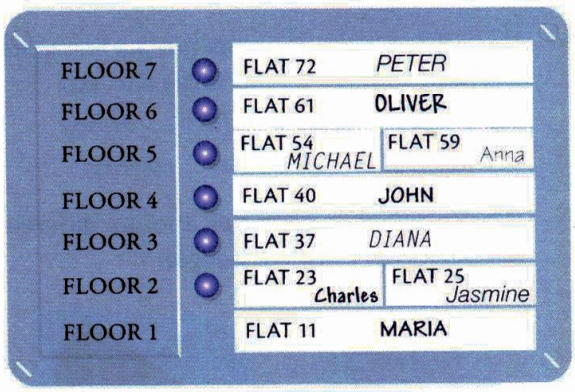
♦	(116)	~~one hundred sixteen~~	one hundred and sixteen ✓
1	(49)	fourty-nine	forty-nine
2	(600)	six hundred	six hundreds
3	(4th)	fourth	forth
4	(12th)	twelfth	twelfth
5	($2,000)	two thousand dollars	two thousands dollars
6	(23rd)	twenty-three	twenty-third
7	(78)	eighty-seven	seventy-eight
8	(8th)	eightth	eighth
9	(17)	seventeen	seventeenth
10	(5th)	fiveth	fifth
11	(7,000,000)	seven million	seven millions
12	(9th)	ninth	nineth
13	(30th)	thirteenth	thirtieth
14	(395)	three hundred and ninety-five	three hundred ninety-five

B Write out the numbers in brackets ( ).

♦ (211) two hundred and eleven
1 (462) .....
2 (20th) .....
3 (1st) .....
4 (12th) .....
5 (9,000,000) .....
6 (310) .....
7 (8th) .....
8 (111) .....
9 (14) .....
10 (2nd) .....
11 (5,000) .....
12 (68) .....
13 (34th) .....
14 (150) .....
15 (3rd) .....
16 (25th) .....
17 (19th) .....

C Look at where these people live in the block of flats and complete the sentences.

♦ John lives in flat forty on the fourth floor.
1 Charles lives in flat .....
2 Maria .....
3 Diana .....
4 Michael .....
5 Peter .....
6 Jasmine .....
7 Anna .....
8 Oliver .....



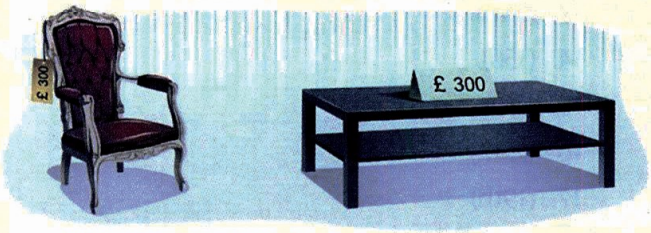
D Write the dates and years in words in this interview using the information in brackets ( ).

A: When were you born?
B: I was born on (13.10.90) ♦ the thirteenth of October, nineteen ninety .....
A: When did you go to secondary school?
B: In (2001) [1] .....
A: And when did you leave secondary school?
B: Seven years later. My final exam was on (16.6.08) [2] .....
A: Did you start university in the same year?
B: Yes, on (29 September) [3] .....
A: Did you spend three or four years there?
B: Well, I left in (2012) [4] ..... That's four years.
A: And your first job? When was that?
B: I started work in an office on (10.1.13) [5] .....
A: Did you enjoy it? How long did you stay?
B: It was terrible! I left two months later, on (9 March) [6] .....
A: What did you do then?
B: I went to America. I spent two years in New York. I returned to England in (2015) [7] .....

irlanguage
مرجع زبان ایرانیان

68 Comparison: (not) as ... as

1 We use as + **adjective** + **as** (e.g. **as old as**) to say that two things or people are the same in some way:



*The chair is **as expensive as** the table.*

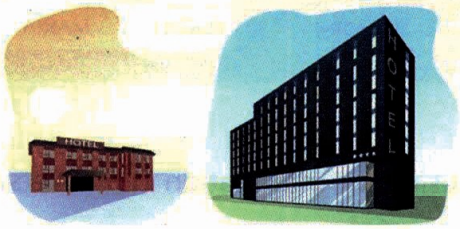
*You're **as old as** me.* (= We are the same age.)

Note that we say **as me/as him/as her/as us/ as them**, and not **as I/as he/as she**, etc:

*She's as strong as **him**.* (NOT ... ~~*as he*~~.)

*I'm as fast as **them**.* (NOT ... ~~*as they*~~.)

We use **not as ... as** to talk about a difference between two things or people:



*The two-star hotel **isn't as big as** the four-star hotel.*

*I'm **not as clever as** her.* (= She is cleverer than me.)

2 We can also use **as** + **adverb** + **as** (e.g. **as well as**):

*Abigail cooks **as well as** Tom.* (= Abigail and Tom are both good cooks.)

*He couldn't run **as quickly as** Maria.* (= Maria ran more quickly than him.)

3 We use **as many** + **plural noun** + **as** (e.g. **as many friends as**) to say that the numbers of two things are equal:

*Jasmine has got **as many friends as** Mary.*

We use **not as many ... as** to say two things are not equal:

*I don't have **as many books as** you.*

4 We use **as much** + **uncountable noun** + **as** (e.g. **as much money as**) to compare two things. Uncountable nouns are words for things that we cannot count, and so they do not have a plural form (e.g. **money**, **work**, **luggage**, **traffic**):

*Helen earns **as much money as** Matt.*

*Jack doesn't do **as much work as** me.*

*They aren't carrying **as much luggage as** us.*

(See also **Unit 53**.)

A Complete each sentence so that it means the same as the one above it. Use *as* + adjective/adverb + *as*.

♦ Sweden is bigger than Britain.
Britain isn't as big as Sweden

1 The other students learn more quickly than me.
I don't learn _____ the other students.

2 You're very angry and I'm very angry also.
I'm _____ you.

3 The seats at the front are more expensive than the seats at the back.
The seats at the back aren't _____ the seats at the front.

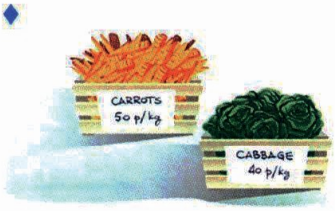
4 Central Park in New York is bigger than Hyde Park in London.
Hyde Park in London isn't _____ Central Park in New York.

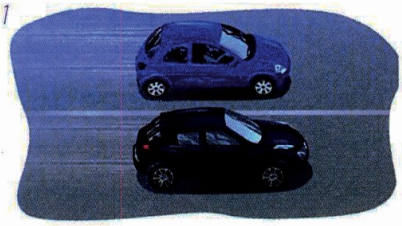
5 Her last film was very good and her new film is also very good.
Her new film is _____ her last film.

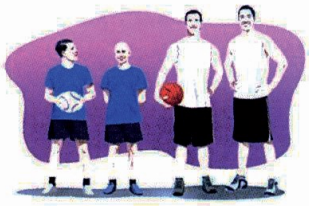
6 The other students work harder than him.
He doesn't work _____ the other students.

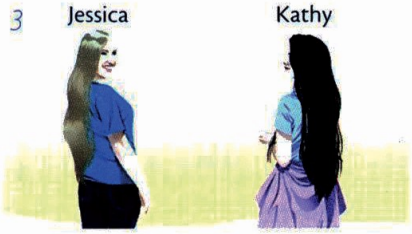
B Look at the pictures and complete the sentences using *as … as* and a word from the box.

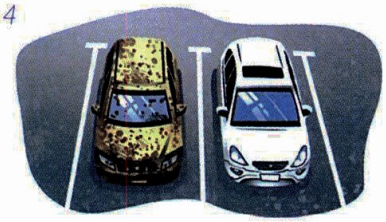
long clean fast fresh tall big ~~cheap~~ strong wide full

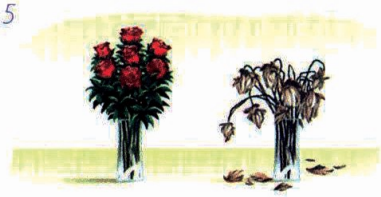
♦ 

1 

2 

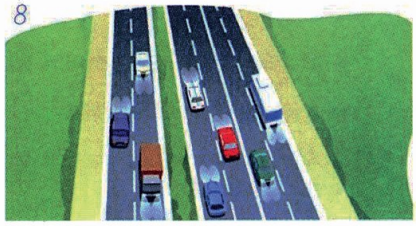
3 

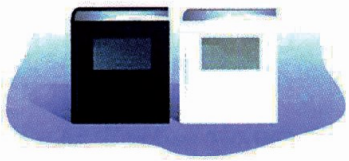
4 

5 

6 

7 

8 

9 

♦ The carrots aren't as cheap as the cabbages.

1 The black car is going ..... the blue car.

2 The footballers aren't ..... the basketball players.

3 Jessica's hair is ..... Kathy's hair.

4 The car on the left isn't ..... the car on the right.

5 The flowers on the right aren't ..... the flowers on the left.

6 The big glass isn't ..... the little glass.

7 Jasmine is ..... Martha.

8 High Street isn't ..... Main Street.

9 The black book is ..... the white book.

C Join the sentences in brackets ( ) using *as much … as* or *as many … as.*

♦ (I've got about 50 books. Jack's got about 100.) I haven't got as many books as ..... Jack.

♦ (You've done a lot of work. I've done a lot of work also.) I've done as much work as ..... you.

1 (Oliver earns a lot of money. Michelle only earns a little.)
Michelle doesn't earn ..... Oliver.

2 (George has been to five countries. I've also been to five countries.)
I've been to ..... George.

3 (You've had five jobs. I've only had two.)
I haven't had ..... you.

4 (Tom has a lot of luggage. Jasmine has a lot of luggage too.)
Jasmine has ..... Tom.

5 (Mary answered most of the questions. I only answered about half.)
I didn't answer ..... Mary.

6 (Ruth spent £50. I also spent £50.)
I spent ..... Ruth.

69 Too and enough

1 Look at this example:



*The case is **too heavy**. He can't carry it.*

We use **too** to mean 'more than is good or suitable in the situation'.

2 We can use **too** like this:

too + ADJECTIVE:
*I don't want to go out. I'm **too tired**.*
too many + PLURAL NOUN:
*I couldn't find her at the concert because there were **too many people** there.*
too much + UNCOUNTABLE:
*(e.g. **too much work/money/food/noise/salt/information/time/bread**)*
*Our teacher gives us **too much work**.*

3 We can use **too** with **to** + infinitive to explain why someone cannot do something:

*She's **too young to drive**.* (= She can't drive because she's too young.)

4 Now look at this example:



*This case is **big enough**. I can put all my clothes into it. The small case isn't **big enough**.*

We use **enough** to mean 'as much or as many as we need'. We use **not ... enough** to mean 'less than we need'.

5 We can use enough like this:

ADJECTIVE + **enough**:
*Is your room warm **enough**?*
enough + PLURAL NOUN:
*I've got **enough potatoes**, thanks.*
enough + UNCOUNTABLE NOUN:
*I can't talk to you now. I haven't got **enough time**.*

6 We can also use **not ... enough** + **to** + infinitive to say why someone cannot do something:

*She isn't **old enough to drive**.* (= She can't drive because she isn't old enough.)

A Complete the sentences using *too* or *enough* and the word in brackets ( ).

- ♦ I can't eat this soup because it's *too hot* (hot).
- ♦ We couldn't buy the tickets because we didn't have *enough money* (money).
- ♦ We didn't buy the car because it wasn't *big enough* (big).

1 I couldn't see her because it was ..... (dark).
2 I can't decide what to do because I haven't got ..... (information).
3 You can't change the situation now. It's ..... (late).
4 Have you had ..... (food), or would you like some more?
5 He did badly in the exam because he was ..... (nervous).
6 Slow down! You're driving ..... (fast).
7 He shouldn't play in the team because he isn't ..... (good).
8 I haven't got ..... (clothes). I must buy some more.
9 Robert didn't go to work because he didn't feel ..... (well).
10 I couldn't lift the suitcase because I wasn't ..... (strong).
11 We didn't go swimming because the water was ..... (cold).
12 Mary couldn't post all the packages because she didn't have ..... (stamps).

B Complete the sentences using *too much, too many* or *enough* and the word in brackets ( ).

♦ I'm not enjoying my job at the moment because they're giving me too much work (work).

♦ Is your coffee sweet enough (sweet)?

1 Shall we have another coffee? Have we got ..... (time)?

2 I couldn't finish the exam because there were ..... (questions).

3 We didn't go for a walk because it wasn't ..... (warm).

4 I couldn't eat the meal because there was ..... (salt) in it.

5 Mary passed the test because she answered ..... (questions) correctly.

6 I didn't enjoy the party because there were ..... (people) there.

7 Is that chair ..... (comfortable) or would you like to sit here?

8 George couldn't work because the others were making ..... (noise).

9 We can't play that game because we haven't got ..... (players).

10 Shall I make some sandwiches? Have we got ..... (bread)?

11 Her work isn't very good. She makes ..... (mistakes).

C Join the sentences using *too* or *enough* with *to* + infinitive (e.g. *to do, to go*).

♦ Clare couldn't sleep. She was too worried.
Clare was too worried to sleep.

♦ I can't go on holiday. I haven't got enough money.
I haven't got enough money to go on holiday.

1 I can't do any more work. I'm too tired.
.....

2 Julia won't pass the exam. She isn't good enough.
.....

3 Clive can't play basketball. He's too short.
.....

4 His girlfriend couldn't go to the party. She was too ill.
.....

5 David couldn't pay the bill. He didn't have enough money.
.....

6 Shall we go to the beach? Is it hot enough?
.....

7 I can't see you tonight. I'm too busy.
.....

8 I don't want to go home. It's too early.
.....

9 Chris couldn't repair the car. He didn't have enough tools.
.....

10 I didn't visit all the museums. I didn't have enough time.
.....

irlanguage
مرجع زبان ایرانیان

70 So and such

1 We use **so** and **such** to intensify adjectives. Compare:

*Helen got all the answers right. She is **so** clever.* (= She is very clever.)

*Helen got all the answers right. She is **such a** clever person.* (= She is a very clever person.)

We use **so** before adjectives that do not have a noun after them, and before adverbs:

	ADJECTIVE
*This tea is **so***	*sweet!*
*Tom's feet are **so***	*big!*

	ADVERB
*They get up **so***	*late.*
*Maria sang **so***	*beautifully!*

We use **such a/an** before an adjective + singular noun (e.g. **person**).
We use **such** before a plural noun (e.g. **feet**) or an uncountable noun (e.g. **food**):



	ADJECTIVE + NOUN
*It was **such an***	*amazing car!*
*He has **such***	*big feet!*
*That was **such***	*excellent food.*

(For uncountable nouns, see **Unit 53**.)

2 We can use **so** with **many** and **much:**

- **so many** + plural noun:
  *There were **so many** people in the shop.*
- **so much** + uncountable noun:
  *We had **so much** work to do.*

We can use **such** with **a lot of**:

- **such a lot of** + plural noun:
  *There were **such a lot of** people in the shop.*
- **such a lot of** + uncountable noun:
  *We had **such a lot of** work to do.*

3 Sentences with **so** and **such** can also describe the result of something:

	RESULT
*It was **so** dark*	*that we didn't see him.*
*He arrived **so** late,*	*he missed his plane.*

	RESULT
*It was **such a** dark night*	*that we didn't see him.*
*It was **such a** lovely day,*	*we went to the beach.*

A Complete the sentences with *such* or *so*.

- ♦ Tom is very handsome. He has *such* beautiful eyes.
- ♦ It was a very pleasant trip because the guide was *so* nice.

1 My birthday was wonderful. I got _____ lovely presents.
2 It was difficult to drive because there was _____ much snow.
3 I like Tom. He is _____ a nice person.
4 We couldn't play tennis because it was _____ windy.
5 Jack loves his children. He is _____ a wonderful father.
6 Nobody listens to Jasmine because she says _____ silly things.
7 The nurses are wonderful here. They are _____ helpful.
8 Look at the stars. They are _____ bright tonight.

B **Complete the sentences with *such*, *such a* or *such an*.**

♦ Edinburgh is such a wonderful city.

1 Motorbikes are _____ dangerous machines.

2 I love skiing. It's _____ exciting sport. But it's a dangerous sport, too.

3 My cousin had _____ terrible accident. He almost died.

4 I like these new dresses. They have _____ pretty colours.

5 We had _____ wonderful meal. The food was excellent.

6 Susan Strange is _____ interesting writer.

C **Write sentences using *so*, *such*, *such a* or *such an* and the words in brackets ( ). Put the verbs in the correct tense.**

♦ I can't believe that Tom is only 13 years old. (He/have/grow/tall!)
He has grown so tall!

♦ I never believe those boys. (They/be/always/tell/stupid lies!)
They are always telling such stupid lies!

1 I enjoy John's cooking. (He/be/wonderful cook.)

2 I can't hear anything. (Those people/be/make/much noise.)

3 Jacob won three prizes. (He/be/lucky.)

4 Sara always looks lovely. (She/wear/pretty clothes.)

5 We had three ice creams. (They/be/delicious.)

6 I don't smoke. (It/be/unhealthy habit.)

7 I enjoyed that test. (It/be/easy.)

D **For each sentence, write another sentence with a similar meaning. Use *so* … *that*.**

♦ We decided not to call them because it was very late.
It was so late that we decided not to call them.

1 Ellie didn't finish the exam because she worked very slowly.
She worked

2 We didn't buy the sofa because it was very expensive.
The sofa was

3 Paul didn't go out because he was very tired.
Paul was

4 Peter couldn't see the holes because they were very small.
The holes were

5 I couldn't finish the food because there was too much of it.
There was

71 Comparative adjectives

1 Look at the way we compare things:



£100 per night



£50 per night

*The Plaza Hotel is **cheaper than** the Excelsior.*
*The Excelsior Hotel is **bigger than** the Plaza.*
*The Excelsior is **more expensive than** the Plaza.*
*The Plaza Hotel is **smaller than** the Excelsior.*

2 **Cheaper** and **more expensive** are comparative adjectives. We form them like this:

▶ short adjectives (one syllable):

ADJECTIVE	COMPARATIVE
old	*older*
long	*longer*
nice	*nicer*
new	*newer*
slow	*slower*
fat	*fatter*
hot	*hotter*
big	*bigger*

▶ long adjectives (two syllables or more):

ADJECTIVE	COMPARATIVE
famous	*more famous*
difficult	*more difficult*
careful	*more careful*
expensive	*more expensive*

▶ adjectives ending with **-y**:

happy	*happier*
hungry	*hungrier*

▶ irregular adjectives:

good	*better*
bad	*worse*

(For more information, see **Appendix 4**, page 245.)

3 To compare things, we use a comparative adjective + **than**:

*Tom is **richer than** Paul.*
*Paris is **more beautiful** than London.*
*My new car is **better than** my old one.*

A Write the comparative form of these adjectives.

♦ cold *colder*
1 big .....
2 careful .....
3 expensive .....
4 good .....
5 fat .....
6 famous .....
7 new .....
8 modern .....
9 young .....
10 cheap .....
11 delicious .....
12 rich .....
13 long .....
14 hungry .....
15 nice .....
16 happy .....
17 difficult .....
18 old .....
19 beautiful .....
20 friendly .....
21 hot .....
22 wonderful .....
23 bad .....
24 small .....
25 sad .....

B Write comparative sentences about the pictures using *than* and the words in brackets ( ). Use the Present Simple.

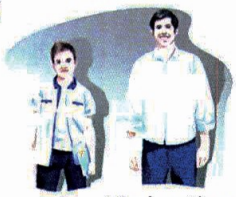
♦ 
Tom Sam

1 
Alaska Spain

2 
Steve Jane

3 
Washington New York

4 
Mary Mike

5 
I My brother

6 
Film stars Teachers

7 
Peter Chris

♦ (be/tall) Tom is taller than Sam.

1 (be/cold) .....

2 (be/hungry) .....

3 (be/small) .....

4 (be/happy) .....

5 (be/young) .....

6 (be/rich) .....

7 (be/friendly) .....

C Look at the information about two boats, the Queen Anne and the King John.

BOATS	LENGTH	AREA	TOP SPEED	YEAR MADE	PRICE
Queen Anne	14 metres	40 metres²	35 knots	2005	£9,000
King John	9 metres	23 metres²	30 knots	1997	£3,500

Now put words from the box in the sentences.

King John (x2)	~~bigger~~	slower	is	than
Queen Anne (x2)	longer	expensive	more	

♦ The Queen Anne is bigger than the King John.

1 The King John is smaller ..... the Queen Anne.

2 The Queen Anne is ..... modern than the King John.

3 The King John ..... older than the Queen Anne.

4 The ..... is faster than the ..... .

5 The Queen Anne is more ..... than the King John.

6 The King John is ..... than the Queen Anne.

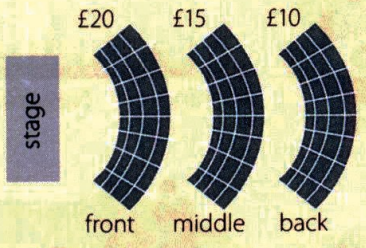
7 The ..... is cheaper than the ..... .

8 The Queen Anne is ..... than the King John.

irlanguage
مرجع زبان ایرانیان

72 Superlative adjectives

1 We use superlatives in the following way:



The most expensive seats are at the front of the theatre.
The cheapest seats are at the back.
The least expensive seats are at the back.
He is the worst player in the team.
It was the happiest day of their lives.

We can use the superlative without a noun:
The seats at the back are the cheapest.

2 Look at these tables:

▶ short adjectives (one syllable):

ADJECTIVE	SUPERLATIVE
warm	the warmest
tall	the tallest
low	the lowest
big	the biggest
hot	the hottest
wet	the wettest

▶ long adjectives (two syllables or more):

ADJECTIVE	SUPERLATIVE
famous	the most/least famous
difficult	the most/least difficult
careful	the most/least careful
expensive	the most/least expensive

▶ adjectives ending with **-y**:

easy	the easiest
happy	the happiest

▶ irregular adjectives:

good	the best
bad	the worst

(For more details see **Appendix 4**, page 245.)

3 We usually use **the** before the superlative:
*London is **the biggest** city in England.*
*The Taj Mahal is **the most beautiful** building in the world.*

Note that we use **in** (not **of**) for places after the superlative:
*... the **richest** man **in** Europe.*
(NOT ... ~~*of Europe*~~.)

We do not always use a noun after a superlative adjective:
*George and Mary have three children. Mike is **the oldest**.*
A: *Which table did you buy?*
B: ***The most expensive.***

4 We often use the Present Perfect with ever after the superlative:
*That was the **best** film **I've ever seen**.*
A: *How was your holiday?*
B: *Fantastic! Iceland is the most beautiful country **I've ever visited**.*

A Put the words in brackets ( ) in the right order to make sentences.

♦ (the world – Antarctica – coldest – is – place – the – in – .)
Antarctica is the coldest place in the world.

1 (city – the – Manchester – in England – is – friendliest – .)
.....

2 (in New York – expensive – restaurant – The Manhattan – the – is – most – .)
.....

3 (is – river – Africa – the – The Nile – longest – in – .)
.....

4 (town – most – in Spain – Granada – beautiful – is – the – .)

.....

5 (painting – The Mona Lisa – the – famous – in – is – most – the world – .)

.....

6 (the – Europe – mountain – in – highest – Mont Blanc – is – .)

.....

B **Complete the sentences using the superlative form of the adjective in brackets ( ).**

♦ Anna is the youngest (young) person in the class.

1 We stayed in ..... (bad) hotel in the whole city.

2 People say that it is ..... (funny) film of the year.

3 What is ..... (tall) building in the world?

4 Her teachers say that she is ..... (good) student in the school.

5 Many people say that Venice is ..... (beautiful) city in the world.

C **Look at the information about three boats and complete the sentences using the correct superlative form of the adjectives in brackets ( ).**

BOATS	LENGTH	TOP SPEED	PRICE
Queen Anne	14 metres	35 knots	£9,000
Red Devil	6 metres	72 knots	£23,000
Jolly Jim	4 metres	28 knots	£6,000

♦ (long) The Queen Anne is the longest ..... boat.

1 (short) ..... boat.

2 (fast) ..... boat.

3 (slow) ..... boat.

4 (expensive) The Red Devil is ..... boat.

5 (expensive) The Jolly Jim is ..... boat.

D **Write sentences using the words in brackets ( ). Use *the* + superlative, and the Present Perfect + *ever*.**

♦ (It's/cold/place/I/visit) It's the coldest place I've ever visited. .....

1 (It's/big/ship/I/see) .....

2 (He's/rich/man/I/meet) .....

3 (It's/difficult/exam/I/do) .....

4 (It's/sad/film/I/see) .....

5 (She's/happy/person/I/meet) .....

6 (It's/modern/flat/I/see) .....

7 (It's/hot/country/I/visit) .....

8 (It's/small/dog/I/see) .....

73 Adverbs (1): adjectives and adverbs

1 Here are some adjectives and adverbs:

ADJECTIVE	ADVERB
quick	*quickly*
careful	*carefully*
easy	*easily*

2 Compare adverbs and adjectives:

ADVERBS

We use adverbs to describe how someone or something does an action:

*Peter **plays the violin beautifully.***

(*Beautifully* describes how Peter plays.)

ADJECTIVES

We use adjectives to describe people or things.

We use adjectives before nouns, or after **be/seem/get**:

*Look at that **beautiful violin!***

*That violin is **beautiful.***

3 We form most regular adverbs by adding **-ly** to the adjective:

slow → slowly *bad → badly*

*The whole team played very **badly**.*

If an adjective ends with **-y**, the adverb ends with **-ily**:

happy → happily *easy → easily*

*We solved the problem **easily**.*

If an adjective ends with **-ble**, the adverb ends in **-bly**:

comfortable → comfortably

4 Some adverbs are irregular; they do not end with **-ly**:

good → well

*He's a **good** guitar player.* (*good* = adjective)

*He plays the guitar **well**.* (*well* = adverb)

Fast and **hard** are both adjectives and adverbs:

fast → fast *hard → hard*

*Maria is a **fast** learner.* (*fast* = adjective)

*Maria learns **fast**.* (*fast* = adverb)

*James is a **hard** worker.* (*hard* = adjective)

*James works **hard**.* (*hard* = adverb)

5 We form the comparative of regular adverbs with **more** or **less**:

carefully → more/less carefully

*You should do your work **more carefully**.*

*She does her work **less carefully** than other people.*

The comparative of **well** is **better**:

*She speaks Arabic **better** than **me**.*

The comparatives of **fast** and **hard** are **faster** and **harder**:

*Could you walk **faster**? We're in a hurry.*

*You will have to work **harder** in future.*

6 We form the superlative of regular adverbs with **the most/the least**:

more efficiently → the most efficiently / the least efficiently

*In the office, Oliver does his work **the most efficiently** and Ellie does her work **the least efficiently**.*

The superlative of **well** is **the best** and the superlative of **badly** is **the worst**:

*Which member of the team played **the best** and who played **the worst**?*

The superlatives of **fast** and **hard** are **the fastest** and **the hardest**:

*They decided to find out who could run **the fastest**.*

*Who works **the hardest** in your class?*

A Choose the correct adjective or adverb in brackets ( ) to complete the sentences.

♦ The train was very slow (slow/slowly) and I arrived late.

1 The journey took a long time because the train went very ..... (slow/slowly).

2 Mrs Green went ..... (quick/quickly) back to her office.

3 I'm afraid I can't give you an ..... (immediate/immediately) answer.

4 The work that the builders did for us was very _____ (bad/badly).
5 The builders did the work for us very _____ (bad/badly).
6 She organized the party very _____ (good/well), and everybody enjoyed it.

B Complete the sentences using the adverb form of the adjective in brackets ( ).

♦ She read the message quickly (quick).
1 Read the instructions _____ (careful).
2 He looked at her _____ (angry), but he didn't say anything.
3 She passed all her exams _____ (easy).
4 I ran as _____ (fast) as I could.
5 He thinks that he did the test _____ (bad) and that he'll fail.
6 She was working _____ (busy) when I arrived.
7 He was playing _____ (happy) when I came into the room.

C Complete the dialogues with the adverb form of the adjectives from the box.

slow fast hard good (x2) ~~easy~~ bad

♦ **A:** Were the questions difficult?
B: No, I answered them easily.

1 **A:** Does she speak English _____?
B: No, she only knows a few words.

2 **A:** Hurry up! I'm waiting!
B: Just a minute. I'm coming as _____ as I can.

3 **A:** Did you lose at tennis again?
B: Yes, I played _____ and I lost.

4 **A:** Have you been working _____ today?
B: No, I've done nothing all day!

5 **A:** Have you finished that book yet?
B: No, I always read very _____. It takes me a long time to finish a book.

D Complete the sentences using the comparative or superlative adverb form of the adjectives in brackets ( ).

♦ You must do your work more carefully (careful) in future.
1 He has run the 100 metres _____ (fast) than any other athlete in the world this year.
2 Everyone else did the test _____ (good) than me, because they'd worked _____ (hard) than me.
3 You can travel _____ (cheap) at certain times of the year.
4 He plays _____ (confident) than he did in the past because he has got _____ (good) at the game.
5 You could eat _____ (expensive) if you didn't buy so many takeaways.
6 You will be able to sit _____ (comfortable) in this chair.

74 Adverbs (2): adverbs of frequency

1 Look at how often Jasmine does things in a year:

She has a cup of tea at breakfast.	*365*
She goes to the cinema.	*10*
She walks to work.	*0*
She goes swimming.	*52*
She goes on holiday.	*2*

We can say:

*She **always** has a cup of tea at breakfast.*
*She **sometimes** goes to the cinema.*
*She **never** walks to work.*
*She goes swimming **every week**.*
*She goes on holiday **twice a year**.*

2 We use these adverbs to talk about how often we do things:

always	*usually*	*normally*	*often*
sometimes	*rarely*	*hardly ever*	*never*

We put **always**, **usually**, etc. after **be** or an auxiliary (e.g. **have**, **must**):

*He **is always** late.*
*I've **often** been to Spain for my holidays.*
*You **must never** swim after a big meal.*

But we put **always** etc. before main verbs:

*I **usually walk** to work.*
*She **hardly ever drinks** coffee.*

3 We can compare the meaning of these adverbs like this:

0%	*never*	*100%*	*always*
5%	*hardly ever*	*90%*	*usually*
10%	*rarely*	*80%*	*normally*
30%	*sometimes*	*70%*	*often*

(We usually say the word **often** without pronouncing the letter **t**.)

4 If we want to say exactly how often we do things, we use these expressions:

every ...	*once a ...*	*twice/two times a ...*
three times a ...		*four times a ...*

We put these expressions at the end of sentences. Here are some examples:

*I run round the park **every day**.*
*I play tennis **once a week**.*
*She drinks coffee **three times a day**.*
*I go skiing **once a year**.*
*He drives to London **twice a month**.*

A Rewrite the sentences, putting the words in brackets ( ) in the correct place.

♦ I work late at the office.
(often) I often work late at the office.

1 You must lock the front door when you leave.
(always) .....

2 Steve and Charlotte play golf.
(twice a month) .....

3 I eat a sandwich for lunch.
(usually) .....

4 I go to jazz concerts at the weekend.
(sometimes) .....

5 My teacher gives me a lot of homework.
(every day) .....

6 We see our Mexican friends.
(hardly ever) .....

7 They go to Morocco for their holidays.
(often) .....

8 William and Marie go to the theatre.
(four times a year) .....

9 They are at home in the evening.
(rarely) .....

B **Look at the table and write sentences comparing Liz and Nathan. Use adverbs from the table in Section 3 (opposite).**

		10%	20%	30%	40%	50%	60%	70%	80%	90%	100%
♦ *walk to work*	Liz										
	Nathan										
1 *get up early*	Liz										
	Nathan										
2 *watch TV*	Liz										
	Nathan										
3 *take a taxi*	Liz										
	Nathan										
4 *have supper at home*	Liz										
	Nathan										

♦ Liz sometimes walks to work. Nathan never walks to work.

1 .....

2 .....

3 .....

4 .....

C **Look at the table about John's activities and write sentences using the words in brackets ( ) and the Present Simple.**

	DAY	WEEK	MONTH	YEAR
swimming		2		
French	1			
his mother			3	
a shower	2			
broad				1
sister				3
tennis		4		

♦ (He/go/swimming) He goes swimming twice a week.

1 (He/practise/French) .....

2 (He/phone/his mother) .....

3 (He/have/a shower) .....

4 (He/go/abroad) .....

5 (He/visit/his sister) .....

6 (He/play/tennis) .....

75 Adverbs (3): place, direction, sequence

1 We use **here** with the meaning 'in or to this place/the place where the speaker is':

*I've been living **here** for three years.*

*Come **here**, I want to speak to you.*

We use **there** with the meaning 'in or to that place/another place, away from where the speaker is':

*Stay **there**, I'll come and get you.*

*Go and stand **there**, I'll take a picture of you.*

We also use **there** with the meaning 'in or to a place previously mentioned':

*I lived in France for a year and I made a lot of friends while I was **there**.*

We often use **over here** and **over there** when we are speaking informally:

*Come **over here** and sit down.*

2 Some common adverbs describing a place or a movement in a particular direction are:

abroad (= in/to another country)
ahead
away
back
downstairs/upstairs
in/out
inside/outside (= in or out of a building)
nearby
forward(s)/backward(s)/sideways

*Mary is **abroad** but she's coming back soon.*

*She ran **downstairs** and opened the front door.*

*He walked **out**, saying that he couldn't stay.*

*The queue slowly moved **forward(s)**.*

Notice that we use **out** with the meaning 'not at home/work, etc. for part of a day or a day' and **away** with the meaning 'not at home/work, etc. for more than a day':

*Mr Butler is **out** at the moment. He'll be back at around 12 o'clock.*

*My wife is **away** this week. She's at a three-day conference.*

3 We often use these adverbial phrases when giving someone directions to a place:

straight on/ahead
turn left/right
on the left/right (to say where something is)
to the left/right (for movement)
as far as

*Go **straight on**. When you come to the traffic lights, **turn right**. The first road **on the left** is the one you want.*

4 When we talk about a number of actions or events that happen one after the other, we can indicate the order with these adverbs and adverbial phrases:

first(ly)/first of all
second(ly)
third(ly), etc.
last(ly)
finally

Instead of using **second(ly)**, **third(ly)**, etc., we often use the following adverbs and adverbial phrases to link actions or events in a sequence:

then
next
afterwards
after that

*To make this dish, **first** you chop the tomatoes, **then** you add the garlic ...*

*First of all I went to Paris, **after that** I spent some time in Switzerland, **then** I travelled round Germany and **finally** I went to the Netherlands.*

A Complete the sentences with the correct adverb in brackets ( ).

Jess lived *abroad* (abroad/away) for several years, mostly in the US.

1 We had to wait ..... (out/outside) until the club opened.

2 I'm going ..... (out/away) now and I'll be back in about an hour.

3 Fortunately there was a hospital ..... (nearby/nearly).

4 I went ..... (upstair/upstairs) and looked for the bathroom.

5 The queue of traffic slowly moved ..... (forwards/out).

6 We're going ..... (out/away) for the weekend.

7 George has gone ..... (out/away) until the end of the week.

8 Would you like to live ..... (away/abroad)?

B Complete the directions from the station to Tom's house using the adverbial phrases from the box.

on the right turn left straight ahead turn right ~~turn right~~

♦ Come out of the station and turn right.

1 ..... at the first junction.

2 Go ..... until you reach the traffic lights.

3 ..... into my road.

4 You'll find my house .....

C Look at this sequence of events and put them in the correct order. Link the events using suitable adverbs or adverbial phrases. More than one answer is possible.

How I found an apartment to rent:

I agreed with the landlord that I would rent it.
I made a list of apartments I could afford.
I signed the contract.
I went to see some of the apartments.
~~I looked through the adverts online.~~
I moved into the apartment.
I paid the first month's rent as a deposit.
I decided which apartment to rent.

♦ First of all/First(ly) I looked through the adverts online.

1 .....

2 .....

3 .....

4 .....

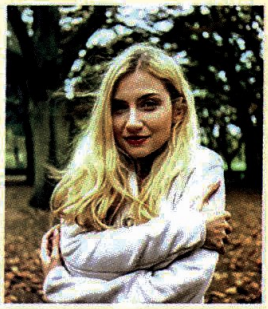
5 .....

6 .....

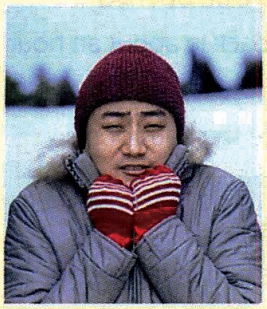
7 .....

76 Adverb + adjective; noun + noun; etc.

1



It was cold.



*It was **very** cold.*

We can use an adverb (e.g. **very**) before an adjective (e.g. **cold**) to make the adjective stronger. Some common adverbs we use in this way are:

very	*extremely*	*really*

*We were **very tired** after the trip.*
*I felt **extremely nervous** before the exam.*
*I'm **really angry** with you.* (= very angry)

We can also make an adjective weaker with these adverbs:

fairly	*quite*	*rather*

*Our car is **fairly old**.* (= It's old, but it isn't very old.)
*The meal was **quite nice**.* (= It was nice but not wonderful.)
*It was **rather late** when we finally arrived.* (= It was late but not very late.)

2 When we use two adjectives together, we order them like this:

- We use 'opinion' adjectives (e.g. **wonderful**, **nice**, **pleasant**, **strange**) before any other adjective (e.g. **new**):

	OPINION	
a	*wonderful*	*new product*
a	*lovely*	*warm day*
a	*beautiful*	*little cottage*
an	*horrible*	*green shirt*

- We use 'size' adjectives (e.g. **big**, **tall**) before an adjective that gives other information, for example its age (**new**, **old**), its colour, its shape (**thin**, **round**):

	SIZE	
a	*big*	*new building*
a	*small*	*red mark*
a	*huge*	*black cloud*
an	*large*	*round stone*

3 We can use two nouns together. The first noun is like an adjective and gives information about the second noun:

	NOUN +	NOUN
a	*cardboard*	*box*
a	*coffee*	*pot*
a	*laundry*	*basket*
an	*office*	*building*

A Complete these sentences using *really* or *quite*.

♦ The film was really good. I enjoyed it a lot.
1 It's ..... cold outside, but not very cold.
2 It isn't a wonderful book, but it's ..... good.
3 The tickets were ..... expensive – they cost much more than I expected.
4 This series is ..... popular in my country; millions of people watch it.
5 He's ..... good at his job, but he sometimes makes bad mistakes.
6 The meal was ..... nice, but it wasn't very good.
7 It's ..... dangerous to drive so fast in such terrible weather conditions.
8 I'm not a brilliant tennis player, but I am ..... good.
9 They're all ..... intelligent students, and they will all pass their exams easily.
10 The company that I work for is ..... big, but it's not enormous.

B Put the words in brackets ( ) into the correct order.

♦ (a – town – beautiful – little) a beautiful little town

1 (a – day – pleasant – sunny) .....

2 (a – smile – big – nice) .....

3 (a – large – coffee – black) .....

4 (a – old – coat – horrible) .....

5 (a – large – building – white) .....

6 (a – bird – big – grey) .....

7 (a – woman – thin – tall) .....

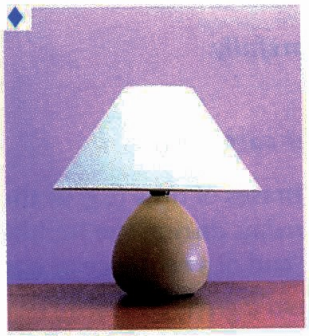
8 (a – small – car – blue) .....

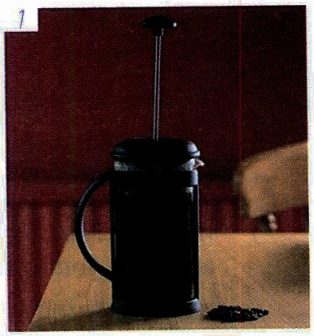
9 (a – story – little – strange) .....

C Match the words in box A and box B to describe what you can see in each picture.

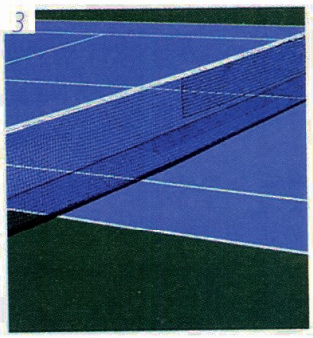
A		
~~table~~	tennis	paper
rubbish	door	soup
road	picture	key
coat	coffee	light

B		
cup	court	pot
handle	sign	hanger
ring	bowl	~~lamp~~
bulb	frame	bin

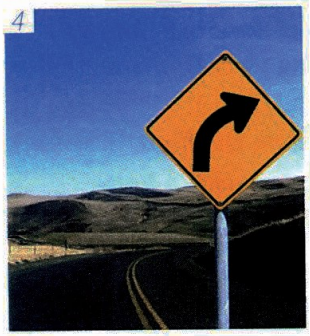
♦ 

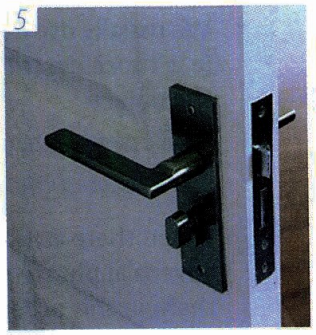
1 

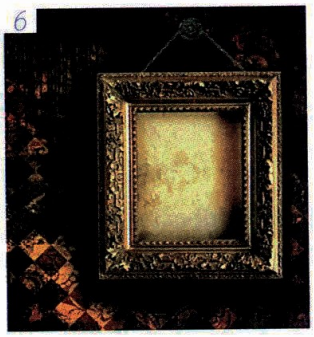
2 

3 

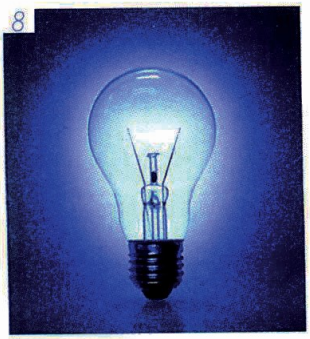
a table lamp

4 

5 

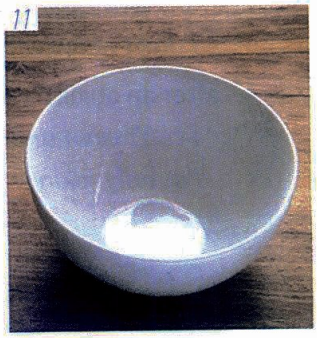
6 

7 

8 

9 

10 

11 

77 Position of adverbs in a sentence

1 There are four possible positions for adverbs:

- before the subject:
  Sometimes she gets very tired.
- between the subject and the verb:
  I sometimes read biographies.
- between a modal or auxiliary and the main verb:
  I can sometimes play this game very well.
- at the end of a clause or sentence:
  He makes me angry sometimes.

However, not all adverbs can go in all four positions.

2 We use adverbs of certainty (**probably**, **certainly**, **definitely**) in these positions:

- between the subject and a positive verb:
  Jasmine probably knows the answer.
- after a positive auxiliary/modal:
  They'll probably win.
- before a negative auxiliary/modal:
  Jasmine probably doesn't know the answer.
  They probably won't win.

3 We use adverbs of completeness (**almost**, **nearly**, etc.) in these positions:

- between the subject and the verb:
  He almost died.
- after an auxiliary/modal:
  I've nearly finished.

4 We use some adverbs that emphasize a statement (**even**, **just** (= simply), **only**, **also**) in these positions:

- between the subject and the verb:
  She was rude and she even laughed at me.
  I don't know why, I just like jazz.
- after an auxiliary/modal:
  I can't even understand a word.
  I'm only joking.

Notice that we use **just** before a negative modal or auxiliary:

I just don't understand why it happened.

5 Note that all these adverbs go after **be**:

She is probably at work now.

For the positions of adverbs related to time (**just**, **already**, **yet**) see **Unit 15**.

6 We use **too** and **either** at the end of a sentence. We use **too** after two positive verbs and **either** after two negative verbs:

George earns a lot and he spends a lot too.
I don't like dogs and I'm not keen on cats either. (See also **Unit 103**.)

7 We usually use adverbs of manner (those that describe how something is done, e.g. **well**, **badly**, **quickly**, **carefully**) in these positions:

- after the verb:
  Please drive carefully.
- after an object:
  I read the letter carefully.

8 We use adverbial phrases of time (e.g. **in the morning**, **last Saturday**, **during the holidays**) at the beginning or end of a sentence or clause:

Last Saturday I had a great time.
I had a great time last Saturday.

We usually use other adverbial phrases (e.g. those describing place or manner) after the object:

He put his suitcase on the floor.
She opened the letters with a knife.

9 When there is more than one adverb or adverbial phrase in a sentence, we normally use them in this order:

manner → place → time

He was working hard in his office last night.

A Rewrite the sentences using the adverb in brackets ( ) in the correct place.

♦ (probably) They will take the train. They will probably take the train.

1 (definitely) She comes from Leeds. .....

2 (nearly) The meal is ready. .....

3 (even) He lent me some money. .....

4 (certainly) She works very hard. .....

5 (only) There were two tickets left. .....

B These sentences are taken from a newspaper's sports section but they are all incorrect. Rewrite them so that they are correct.

♦ He will play definitely in Saturday's game.
He will definitely play in Saturday's game.

1 Tickets for the game almost have sold out.
.....

2 They won't probably become champions.
.....

3 He scored a penalty and he created also two goals.
.....

4 They didn't just play well enough to win.
.....

5 They won nearly but they were unlucky at the end.
.....

C These sentences are taken from film reviews. Put the adverbs in brackets ( ) into the correct position in the underlined parts of the sentences.

♦ This film will be a big hit with the public. (definitely) will definitely be

1 Many of the characters and events are unbelievable. (almost) .....

2 This film doesn't create any interest or excitement. (just) .....

3 The plot isn't very interesting and the performances aren't very good. (either) .....

4 Although the film was released last week, it has earned a lot of money. (only) .....

5 This film has attracted a lot of publicity. (certainly) .....

6 She can act very well and she can sing very well. (also) .....

Put the words in brackets ( ) in the correct order to make sentences.

♦ (hard–worked–yesterday– .)
Lucy worked hard yesterday.

1 (all day–have–well–worked– .)
They .....

2 (after lunch–in the sea–swam– .)
The children .....

3 (during the night–rained–heavily– .)
It .....

4 (before supper–did–in my room–my homework– .)
I .....

5 (better–last week–played– .)
Our team .....

Test G Adjectives and adverbs

A **Complete the conversation between two neighbours using the comparative or superlative form of the adjective or adverb in brackets ( ).**

Sam: I'm pretty sure my house is a bit ♦ *bigger* (big) than yours.

Pete: Really? I thought mine was [1] ..... (big) in the street.

Sam: Oh. Anyway, my daughter Jo is [2] ..... (bright) girl in her class.

Pete: That reminds me. I saw you and Jo pushing your car last week. I must say my car works [3] ..... (good) than yours.

Sam: Really? What's [4] ..... (far) you've ever driven? We've crossed America from coast to coast in my car.

Pete: Your wife didn't enjoy the journey, though, did she? You know, I think I've been [5] ..... (happy) married than you.

Sam: I'm not surprised. You've bought your wife [6] ..... (expensive) presents in the world, haven't you?

Pete: Well, I've got enough money. I suppose I work [7] ..... (hard) than you, don't I, and earn money [8] ..... (quick)?

Sam: I think we'd have a fight if you weren't [9] ..... (tall) man in town.

B **Jasmine has just arrived in a small town in Italy. She's emailing her friend Mia in England. Choose the correct words in brackets ( ) to complete the email.**

Hi Mia,

I arrived about three hours ago. I'm sitting in the living room on the ♦ *third* (three/third) floor of the house. I was [1] ..... (excited/exciting), of course, on the way here, but the journey was [2] ..... (tired/tiring). It's [3] ..... (so/such) a beautiful house! I'm a bit [4] ..... (worried/worrying), though. Life here for the next six months is going to be very [5] ..... (quietly/quiet). On the [6] ..... (16/16th) of June, there's a festival in the village, but that's the only thing this year! I hope you will email me. I will be [7] ..... (disappointed/disappointing) if I don't get a message now and again. I met my neighbour just after I arrived. She was [8] ..... (so/such) helpful! She got married last month, and it's her [9] ..... (28/28th) birthday tomorrow. She speaks English [10] ..... (good/well), and she sings [11] ..... (beautifully/beautiful) – I can hear her now! Anyway, you know I'm going to try to write a book about my father, so I won't be [12] ..... (boring/bored) here. I'm a [13] ..... (slowly/slow) writer, but I think it will be an [14] ..... (interesting/interested) story in the end.

Speak soon,
Jasmine

C **Tom, Ingrid, Raphael and Hilary are talking about their children. Rewrite the underlined part of the conversation.**

Tom: I'm worried, Ingrid. Paul is quicker at schoolwork than Joanna. ♦ *Joanna* isn't as *quick at schoolwork as Paul*.

Raphael: Kids work too hard at school these days in my view, Tom. Our son Andy didn't watch the football match with me on Saturday. He was too tired!

[1] ..... too tired to ..... !

Ingrid: But you need to work hard to get a job with good pay. Our oldest boy, Sam, is 25 now. He can't buy a house. He hasn't got enough money.
[2] _____ enough money to _____.

Hilary: But everything costs so much these days! We took Andy to a cycle shop to see a new bike yesterday. We didn't buy it because it was really expensive.
[3] _____ so expensive that _____.

Tom: I know! We looked at a new car. I've never seen a more beautiful machine!
[4] It's the _____ I've ever seen!

Ingrid: And you drive wonderfully, Tom! [5] And you're _____!

Tom: Thank you, darling. I'm not as fast as Raphael. [6] Raphael _____.

Hilary: Tom! Don't say things like that! Raphael is the worst driver I've ever met!
[7] I've never _____.

Raphael: How do you know? You don't open your eyes in the car. You're too frightened.
[8] _____ too frightened to _____.

Hilary: I'm not going to argue with you. I haven't got enough time.
[9] _____ enough time to _____.
Boys and their cars! Why don't you spend more time in the garden, Raphael?

D Put the words in brackets ( ) in the correct order to complete the text about Bath.

Bath is • *an interesting English city in the South West.* (in the South-West/an/English/interesting/city). Tourists [1] _____ (for four or five days/stay/usually/there). Most people will visit [2] _____ (the/Roman/old/amazing/Baths), and then they [3] _____ (probably/will/a bus/up to the Royal Crescent/take). After that they [4] _____ (beautiful/parks/in one of Bath's/green/can either relax) or have tea in [5] _____ (the/18th-century/elegant/very/Pump Rooms). There's a festival once a year, and [6] _____ (to get/tickets/difficult/always/it's) because it's so popular. Outside Bath, you can visit [7] _____ (American/unusual/the/really/Museum), or the lions at Longleat, or you [8] _____ (can/peacefully in the countryside/drive around/just).

E Esther is leaving a voicemail message. Complete her message with the words from the box.

as far as garden on the left ~~at home~~ upstairs away
crates fairly sideways address table outside

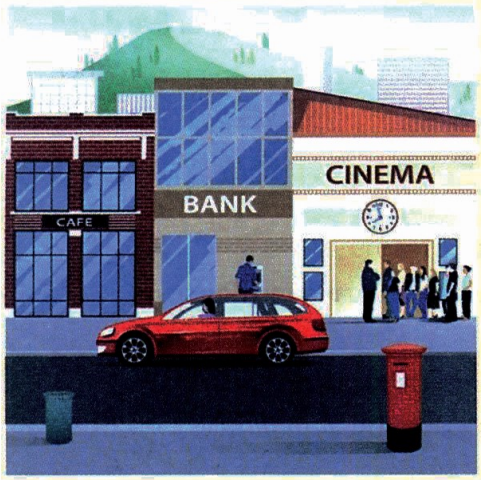
'Hi there Helen! I thought you'd be • *at home*. Oh dear. Anyway, I'm going [1] _____ for a few days. I'm leaving the car [2] _____, though. It's [3] _____ old, like me, and the garage is full of old [4] _____. I've lost my [5] _____ book, but I think I know the way to The Grange. You take the train [6] _____ Little Hollow, and then it's [7] _____ when you leave the station. Anyway, the weather looks good, so if you want to borrow my [8] _____ chairs while I'm away, go [9] _____, turn left and they're in that little cupboard. You'll have to go into the cupboard [10] _____, I'm afraid, because it's full of old [11] _____ legs and things like that! Anyway, I'd better go. Bye for now!'

78 Prepositions of place and movement

1 **In**, **on** and **at** are used to talk about places:

- We use **in** with enclosed spaces (e.g. rooms, buildings) and limited areas (e.g. towns, parks, countries, continents):
  in my pocket *in her car* *in Germany*
- We use **on** with surfaces (e.g. walls, floors, shelves) and lines (e.g. paths, coasts, the equator):
  on the grass *on the sea*
  on the line *on the third floor*
- We use **at** with a point (e.g. **at** the bus stop), and **at** with a building, when we mean either inside or outside:
  A: *Let's meet **at** the cinema.*
  B: *OK. Shall we meet **in** the cinema itself or **on** the pavement outside?*

2 Look at the illustration and read the sentences:



*There is a woman **in** the car.*
*There are people **outside** the cinema.*
*The people are **on** the pavement.*
*There is a clock **above** the cinema entrance.*
*The cinema entrance is **under** the clock.*
*The bank is **next to/beside** the cinema.*
*The letter box is **opposite** the cinema.*
*The bank is **between** the cinema and the cafe.*
*There is a hill **behind** the town.*
*The car is **in front of** the bank.*

3 **Into**, **onto**, and **to** are used to talk about movement:
*We moved the chairs **into** my bedroom.*
*The actor ran **onto** the stage.*
*They walked **to** the next town.*

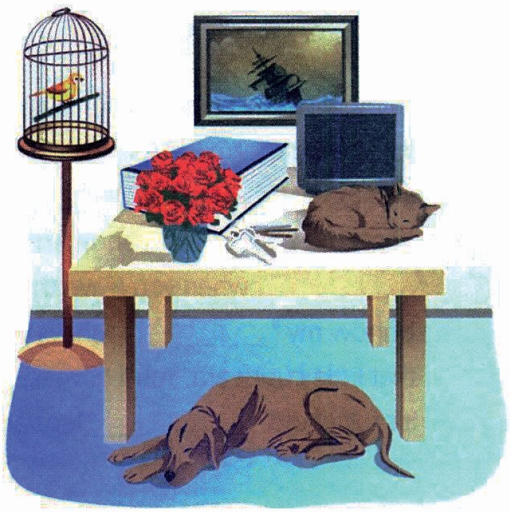
The opposites are **out of**, **off** and **from**:
*We moved the chairs **out of** my bedroom.*
*The actor ran **off** the stage.*
*We drove **from** London to Edinburgh.*

Here are other prepositions of movement:
*They ran **across** the field to the road.*
*James cycled **along** the road to the next town.*
*I walked **up** the hill and ran **down** the other side.*
*The bus went **past** the bus stop without stopping.*
*The train goes **through** three tunnels.*

A These sentences describe the picture. Look at the picture and change the underlined words which are wrong. Tick (✓) the underlined words which are correct.

- ♦ There is a TV under *on* ..... the table.
- ♦ There is a dog on ✓ ..... the floor.

1 The dog is under ..... the table.
2 The cat is next to ..... the flowers.
3 The keys are next to ..... the flowers.
4 The flowers are in ..... the vase.
5 There is a big book in front of ..... the flowers.
6 There is a picture on ..... the TV.
7 The cat is above ..... the table.
8 There is a bird on ..... a cage.



B Complete the sentences with *in*, *on* or *at*.

♦ Peter lives in Turkey.

1 There were some beautiful pictures _____ the walls of their sitting room.

2 The children are playing _____ the grass _____ the park.

3 Does this bus stop _____ the railway station?

4 I live in a flat _____ the fifth floor.

5 Ecuador is _____ South America; it lies _____ the equator.

6 There is a queue of people _____ the bus stop.

C Complete the sentences using the words from the box.

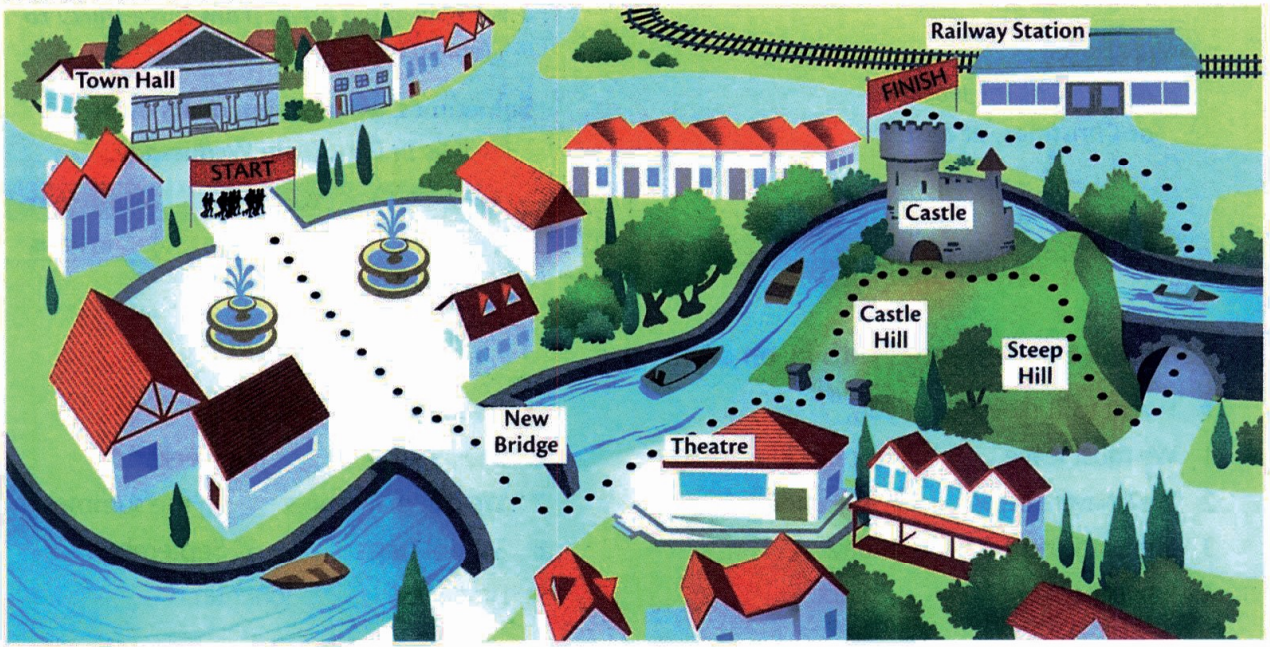
into (x3) onto (x2) ~~to~~ out of off

♦ The march started in the park. From there we marched to _____ the Town Hall.

1 The tiger escaped from its cage and jumped _____ the lake. It took a long time to get it _____ the lake and back _____ its cage.

2 Stupidly, Simon drove his car _____ the beach and then he couldn't move it, because the wheels sank _____ the sand. In the end he needed eight people to push it _____ the beach and back _____ the road.

D Look at this picture of a town showing the route for a race and complete the text using the words from the box.



across along ~~at~~ down in front of past from under through up

The race starts ♦ at _____ the Town Hall. The runners start [1] _____ the Town Hall and run [2] _____ the main square, to the river. Then they run over New Bridge and go [3] _____ the road beside the river for about 200 yards. They go [4] _____ the theatre and [5] _____ Castle Hill. They turn right [6] _____ the castle, and they go [7] _____ Steep Hill. Then they go [8] _____ the tunnel [9] _____ the river, and they finish at the station.

79 Prepositions of time

1 When we talk about time we often use the prepositions **in**, **on** or **at**.

- We use **in** with parts of the day, and with months, seasons and years:
  - *in the morning, in the afternoon, in the evening*
  - *in January, in February, in March*
  - *in the spring, in the summer, in the autumn, in the winter*
  - *in 1542, in 1868, in 2016*
- We use **on** with days and dates:
  - *on Wednesday, on Thursday evening, on Christmas Day, on her birthday*
  - *on 9th April* (We say *On April the ninth* or *On the ninth of April.*)
- We use **at** for times of the day, and with meals and mealtimes:
  - *at 11 a.m., at three o'clock*
  - *at breakfast, at lunchtime, at teatime, at dinner*

We also say:

- *at night, at the weekend*
- *at Christmas, at Easter*

2 The following words can replace **in**, **on** and **at**:

this *next* *last* *every*

I'm going home	***in** April.*
	***this** April.*
I'm playing tennis	***on** Wednesday.*
	***next** Wednesday.*
She left	***at** the weekend.*
	***last** weekend.*
He visits Jasmine	***on** Saturdays.*
	***every** Saturday.*

3 We can use **from ... to** to talk about time:

THE FRICK COLLECTION

OPENING HOURS

10.00 – 6.00

*The museum is open **from** 10 a.m. **to** 6 p.m.*

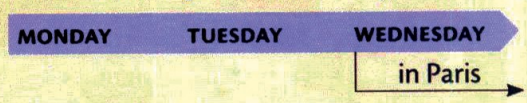
Here are some more examples:

*She's staying here **from** Sunday **to** Tuesday.*

*We have a tea break **from** three-thirty **to** four o'clock.*

Sometimes, we use **from** on its own:

*I will be in Paris **from** Wednesday.*



A Complete the sentences with *in*, *on* or *at*.

♦ I went to Turkey in July.

1 We must leave ..... five o'clock.
2 We'll have a break ..... the afternoon.
3 She's arriving ..... Monday.
4 It's very cold here ..... night.
5 I was born ..... 1992.
6 I never work ..... the weekend.
7 We can play tennis ..... the summer.
8 School starts ..... 5th September.
9 I'll see you ..... lunchtime.

B

two o'clock ~~summer~~ 2015 winter weekend Saturday birthday

Anna: Are you going on holiday in the ♦ summer ?

Tom: No, but I went skiing in Italy in the [1] ....., and I'm going to America at the [2] .....; I'll be in New York on [3] .....; then I'm travelling south to Texas. What about you? Are you going away this year?

Anna: Yes. In fact, I'm flying to Morocco at [4] ..... tomorrow.

Tom: Really? It's a wonderful country. I was there in [5] .....

Anna: Just think! I'll be on a Moroccan beach on my [6] .....!

C **In these sentences there are some mistakes. Sometimes the underlined prepositions are wrong. Sometimes the prepositions are not necessary. Cross out the prepositions which are wrong and replace them if necessary. Put a tick (✓) if the preposition is correct.**

♦ I normally go to the south of France ~~on~~ in the winter. I usually go in ✓ December, but ~~in~~ – last December I couldn't go because my wife was ill.

1 We'll leave at eleven o'clock in Saturday morning.

2 Shall we visit George in Spain in next April?

3 I always drink two cups of coffee on breakfast. In the afternoon I drink tea. I drink hot milk in night before I go to bed.

4 They play golf on every Tuesday in the summer.

5 I gave her a painting on her birthday at June.

D **Look at the table with your arrangements for the next few days (*today, this week*), and for the next few months (*in December, next year*). Use the information in the table to write sentences using the Present Continuous (*I'm doing*), and a preposition (*in, on,* etc.) if necessary.**

♦ ~~(play/golf) → the afternoon~~	
1 (meet/Steve) → Wednesday morning	4 (start/a new job) → next Monday
2 (go/to the bank) → ten o'clock on Friday	5 (visit/Egypt) → December
3 (go/sailing) → the weekend	6 (sell/my house) → 10th January

♦ I'm playing golf in the afternoon.

1 I

2 I

3

4

5

6

E **Complete the sentences using the information in brackets ( ).**

♦ (two o'clock → three o'clock) The shop is closed from two o'clock to three o'clock.

♦ (Friday →) She will be on holiday from Friday.

1 (June → August) The beach is busy

2 (ten o'clock) I'll be at the sports centre

3 (March →) The new motorway will be open

4 (Monday → Friday) We work

5 (2009 → 2012) He lived in Kenya

6 (January →) She will be in Hong Kong

80 As/like; as if/as though

1 We use **as** + noun:

- to talk about someone's job or role:
  *She works **as an assistant** in a laboratory.*
  *He came to fame **as the main character** in a successful film.*
- to talk about the function or use of something:
  *I lent him some money **as a favour**.*
  *You can use this sofa **as a bed**.*

2 We use **as** in phrases that refer to something that has already been stated or is already known:
__As I told you last week__, I'm going away tomorrow.
__As you know__, some friends are staying with me at the moment.

3 We use **as** after certain verbs for giving descriptions or talking about attitudes:
*She **described** her boss **as** short and hairy.*
*I **regard** her **as** my best friend.*

4 We use **as** in the phrases **such as**, **the same as** and **as usual**:
*Some sports, **such as** golf, don't interest me.*
(= for example)
*I really like buildings **such as** this.*
(= of the same type)
*His income is about **the same as** mine.*
__As usual__, she gave me some very good advice.

5 We use **like** + noun/pronoun for comparing, with the meaning 'similar to':
*He doesn't behave **like other people**.*
__Like most boys of his age__, he's keen on sports.
*I wish I could sing **like you**.*

6 We use **like** + noun/pronoun with the meaning 'in a similar way to':
*If you cook it **like this**, it always tastes better.*

7 We use **like** + noun/pronoun with the meaning 'such as':
*Some people, **like my brother**, really love their jobs.*
*I really enjoy music **like this**.*

8 We use **look**, **sound**, **taste**, **feel** + **like** + noun/pronoun to talk about the appearance of someone/something or the impression something gives us:
*She doesn't **look like her sister** at all.*
*He **sounds like his father** when he speaks.*
*This **tastes like coffee**.*

(See also **Unit 33**.)

9 We use as **if/as though** + subject, verb, etc. with the meaning 'in a way that suggests ...'.

We use **as if/as though** + subject to describe how something seems:
*He talks **as if** he's an expert on the subject.*
(= he isn't or may not really be an expert)
*She acted **as though** we had never met before.*
(= but we had met before)

A Complete these sentences taken from reviews of new music, using *as* or *like*.

♦ This song sounds exactly like ..... the band's previous one.
1 At the moment, there is no one quite ..... this singer on the music scene.
2 Many people regard her ..... one of the best singers in the country at the moment.
3 Although she looks ..... a small and delicate girl, she has a very big voice.
4 ..... everyone knows, this band shot to fame last year.
5 He describes this new album ..... an experiment in a new style of music.
6 Bands ..... this tend to be popular for only a short time.

B Complete the dialogues using *as* or *like*.

♦ A: What did you do before this job?
B: I spent seven years as a teacher at a university.

1 A: Are you coming to the party tonight?
B: No, I told you before, I'm going somewhere else.

2 A: Do you like this programme?
B: No, it's all those reality TV shows, it's really boring.

3 A: I'm having trouble doing this job on the computer.
B: That's because you shouldn't try to do it that. Look, I'll show you.

4 A: Let's stay at this hotel for the whole trip.
B: Yes, we can use it a base for travelling around the region.

5 A: Did you enjoy the book I lent you?
B: Yes, I don't usually enjoy novels that, but it was excellent.

6 A: Did you discuss the problem with William?
B: Yes, and I thought, it was an easy one to solve.

7 A: What's your opinion of Anna?
B: I get on well with her most of the time, but sometimes she acts a child.

8 A: That was a horrible thing to say.
B: Don't get upset. I only said it a joke.

C Complete these sentences describing people using *as, like* or *as if/as though*.

♦ Felicity behaves as if/as though she's more important than everyone else.
1 Sarah doesn't think other people, she has her own ideas.
2 most people know, Matt has not had an easy life.
3 Helen dresses the girls she sees in magazines.
4 Toby talks money is the only thing in life that matters.
5 all his friends, James is extremely interested in football.
6 When he talks, Simon sounds someone who is not from this area.
7 a student, Ruth works very hard and is very serious.

D Complete these sentences using *as, like* or *as if/as though*.

♦ He's a very good guitarist and he sounds like a professional when he plays.
1 People him really make me angry.
2 This doesn't taste anything I've eaten before.
3 The thief was described tall and thin.
4 usual, she arrived late for work.
5 Older people such my parents have different attitudes from mine.
6 Most people were shocked but she acted nothing important had happened.
7 You sound you've got a bad throat.
8 What you're telling me now is not the same what you told me yesterday.

81 In; with; preposition + -ing

1 We can use **in** to describe what somebody is wearing:

*Jasmine is the woman **in** the red dress.*
*I went to the interview **in** my new suit.*
*It was a sunny day, and everyone was **in** summer clothes.*
*Are you allowed to go to work **in** jeans?*
*We saw some soldiers **in** uniform.*

2 We can use **with** to describe a part of somebody's body:

*A small boy **with** red hair came into the shop.*
*Our teacher is a tall man **with** a beard.*
*Lisa is a pretty girl **with** blue eyes.*
*Jack was talking to a man **with** a big nose.*

We can also use **with** to describe animals:

*A rabbit is an animal **with** big ears and a small tail.*

3 We can use **with** to talk about a part of something:

*They live in a white house **with** a flat roof.*
*I bought a shirt **with** red stripes.*
*I used the pot **with** the wooden handle.*
*They have a garden **with** three apple trees.*

4 We can use **with** before something, for example a tool, that we use in order to do something:

*You clean your teeth **with** a toothbrush.*
*You open a tin **with** a tin opener.*
*I cleaned the table **with** a cloth.*
*Please eat **with** your knife and fork.*

5 We use **by + -ing** (e.g. **by doing**) to describe how we do or did something:

*She learnt French **by listening** to it.*
*You start a car **by turning** the key.*
*She became successful in business **by working** very hard.*
*The prisoners escaped **by climbing** over a wall.*

We use **without + -ing** (e.g. **without doing**) to say that a particular action is not done or was not done:

*She passed the exam **without doing** a lot of work.*
*They left **without waiting** for me.*
*He did the work **without making** any mistakes.*

A Complete the sentences using *in* or *with*.

♦ A young man with a moustache was driving the car.
1 He showed me a photograph of a woman _____ blue eyes.
2 It's the only house _____ the street.
3 A lot of businessmen _____ suits were on the train.
4 There was a plant _____ big green leaves in the corner of the room.
5 John was walking down the street with a woman _____ a black coat.
6 Look at that bull _____ those enormous horns!
7 One of the children was a girl _____ long, dark hair.
8 A man _____ a hat came into the cafe.
9 Soldiers _____ uniform were standing at the entrance to the building.
10 She wanted to buy a computer _____ a screen, a keyboard and a mouse.
11 We booked a hotel room _____ a bathroom.
12 It was cold, so I went out _____ a coat and scarf.
13 We've bought a television _____ a big screen.
14 He arrived for the meeting _____ a grey jacket.

B **Match the first and second halves of the sentences. Then link the two halves with a preposition (*in, with,* etc.).**

♦	You must speak to the woman	a	a sharp knife.
1	A giraffe is an animal	b	sitting in the sun.
2	I want a shirt	c	a spade.
3	She cleans her teeth	d	lots of sugar.
4	They live in a house	e	beards.
5	I like my coffee	f	a brush.
6	He's digging the garden	g	the green skirt.
7	She painted the kitchen	h	breaking a window.
8	You should always cut meat	i	four chimneys.
9	They got into the house	j	uniform.
10	The soldiers do all their exercises	k	toothpaste.
11	She has a car	l	a very long neck.
12	He dried his hair	m	a round collar.
13	You can't make an omelette	n	breaking eggs.
14	Some women prefer men	o	four-wheel drive.

♦	in (g)	3	.....	6	.....	9	.....	12	.....
1	.....	4	.....	7	.....	10	.....	13	.....
2	.....	5	.....	8	.....	11	.....	14	.....

C **Rewrite the sentences using *by* or *without*.**

♦ She sat in the corner. She didn't say anything.
She sat in the corner without saying anything.

♦ He opened the door. He turned the key.
He opened the door by turning the key.

1 He repaired the car. He changed some of the parts.

2 She answered the question but she didn't read it carefully.

3 He left. He didn't say thank you.

4 She got the money because she sold her car.

5 I threw the letter away. I didn't open it.

6 We worked all day and we didn't eat anything.

7 He lost weight. He went on a strict diet.

8 I went out, but I didn't lock the door.

82 Other uses of prepositions

There are many common phrases that have prepositions in them.

1 We use **at** in these phrases:

at the beginning/end of, at first, at last, at the moment, at the weekend, at once (= 'immediately' or 'at the same time')

*She'll be back **at the beginning of** next week.*
***At first**, I didn't believe what he was saying.*
*I waited for weeks and **at last** the letter arrived.*
*Are you busy **at the moment**?*
*You don't have to do everything **at once**.*

We also use **at** for speeds:
*He was driving **at** over 150 km an hour.*

2 We use **by** with means of transport:

by car/bike/bus/plane/boat/ship/train, etc.

*Do you go to work **by train** or **by car**?*

But we say **on foot** (= walking):
*I came here **on foot** because I wanted to get some exercise.*

We use **the car/in my, our**, etc. to talk about someone's car:
*It was only a short journey but we went **in my/our/the car**.*

We use **on my, our**, etc. with **bike**:
*He came **on his bike**.*

We use **on the** before other means of transport:
*I met her by chance **on the train**.*

We use **by** in phrases describing processes (e.g. sending something, ordering something, paying for something, making something):
*I'll send the information **by post/email**.*
*Can you book tickets **by phone**?*
*You can pay **by card** or **by bank transfer**.*
*All these products were made **by hand**.*

But we say **in cash**:
*I paid for the holiday **in cash**.*

We also use **by** in these phrases:
by chance, by accident, by mistake

3 We use **for** in these phrases:

for example, for sale, for ever (OR ***forever***)

*Their house is **for sale**.*
*I'd like to live here **for ever**.*

4 We use **in** in these phrases:

in advance, in danger, in future, in a hurry, in charge (of), in control, in fashion, in general, in love, in my opinion, in the past

*You are advised to book a table **in advance**.*
*I can't talk to you now, I'm **in a hurry**.*
***In general**, she has a good life.*

Notice also: **in writing/pen/pencil/capitals**
*Please write your name **in capitals** in this box.*
*Put your complaint **in writing**.*
(= write a letter or email)

5 We use **on** in these phrases:

on business/on holiday/on a trip, on (the) TV/televison, on the radio, on the internet, on (a/the) computer, on the phone (= speaking, using it), ***on strike, on fire, on the floor***

*I'm going away **on holiday/on business** next week.*
*All this work is done **on computers** these days.*
*There are no trains because the drivers are **on strike**.*
*I found a lot of useful information **on the Internet**.*
*She was **on the phone** when I went into the room.*

6 Notice also the common prepositions **except (for)** and **instead of**:

*Everyone was happy **except (for)** Elaine.*
(= Elaine was the only person who wasn't happy.)
*I'd prefer a cold drink **instead of** a coffee at the moment.*

We use an **-ing** form after **instead of**:
*I walked to work **instead of going** by car.*

irlanguage
مرجع زبان ایرانیان

A Match the first and second halves of the sentences.

♦ I waited for ages until the parcel arrived at — d
1 You should buy your tickets well in
2 As part of her job she has to travel a lot on
3 I didn't plan to meet him, it happened by
4 I won't make the same mistake in
5 This kind of music is currently in
6 Their plane was late because some pilots were on

a fashion.
b strike.
c advance.
d last.
e business.
f chance.
g future.

♦ d ..... 1 ..... 2 ..... 3 ..... 4 ..... 5 ..... 6 .....

B Complete these official instructions by putting in the correct prepositions.

♦ We can be contacted by ..... phone at the number below.
1 Complaints must be put ..... writing and sent to the address below.
2 Please complete your personal details ..... capitals.
3 Applications sent ..... post will be dealt with as soon as possible.
4 Payment can be made ..... credit card or ..... bank transfer but not ..... cash.
5 Feel free to contact me ..... email at any time.

C Complete Nick's email to a friend using the words from the box and the correct preposition.

first holiday once ~~hurry~~ charge ever example mistake

Hi Pete,

I've been living in this city for a couple of months now. It's a very crowded and busy place and everyone seems to be ♦ in a hurry all the time. Nobody is willing to wait for anything, they want to have it [1] ..... . I see this all the time. [2] ..... , I was in a restaurant the other day and the man at the next table demanded to speak to the person [3] ..... because he'd been waiting five minutes for his meal! When the waiter then brought the wrong meal [4] ....., he went completely mad! [5] ..... I thought I'd like living here, but now I've decided it's a good place to stay if you're [6] ..... . I wouldn't want to live here [7] ..... .

Nick

D Complete these sentences with the correct prepositions.

♦ Did you have a good time at ..... the weekend?
1 ..... my opinion, you're wasting your time.
2 A few minutes later, the whole building was ..... fire.
3 They've been ..... love ever since they first met.
4 They've won every game ..... one, which they lost badly.
5 She does most of her work ..... her laptop.

83 Verb + preposition

1 After some verbs we use a particular preposition* (e.g. **for**, **to**, **on**):

VERB + PREPOSITION	
wait for:	*I was **waiting for** a bus.*
listen to:	*She **listens to** the radio a lot.*
belong to:	*Does that book **belong to** you?*
ask for:	*Have you **asked for** the bill?*
apply for:	*He has **applied for** another job.*
depend on:	*The salary **depends on** your age.*
agree with:	*I don't **agree with** you.*

2 Now look at these examples:

- **arrive at/in:**
  *We **arrived at the airport**.* (You **arrive at** a place, for example a building.)
  *We **arrived in Portugal**.* (You **arrive in** a town or country.)
- **look at/for:**
  ***Look at** that strange **man** over there!* (You **look at** something you can see.)
  *I'm **looking for** my **diary**.* (You **look for** something that you are trying to find.)
- **talk to/about:**
  *She was **talking to** some friends.* (You **talk to** somebody.)
  *They were **talking about** politics.* (You **talk about** something.)

3 In questions that begin with a question word like **What**, **Who** or **How many**, we usually put the preposition at the end:

***Who** are you waiting **for**?*
***What** does their decision depend **on**?*

4 We do not usually use a preposition after these verbs:

phone/ring/call: *He **phoned/rang/called** me last night.* (NOT ~~*He phoned/rang to me* ...~~)

discuss: *We often **discuss** sport.* (NOT ... ~~*discuss about sport*~~.)

answer: *She didn't **answer** me.* (NOT ... ~~*answer to me*~~.)

reach (= arrive): *I **reached** the office at nine o'clock.* (NOT ... ~~*reached to the office* ...~~)

5 Note that we **pay someone**, but we **pay for something**:

*She paid **him** yesterday.* (You pay a person.)
*I paid **for the books**.* (You **pay for** something that you receive.)

But note that we **pay** a bill: *I'll pay **the bill**.*

*Another term for verb + preposition is prepositional verb.

A Complete these sentences with the correct prepositions (*to*, *for*, etc.). In some sentences no preposition (–) is required.

♦ I'm waiting for a phone call.
♦ We reached – the airport after 11 o'clock.
1 I'll ask _____ some information.
2 Let's listen _____ some music.
3 Where do I pay _____ this shirt?
4 Let's discuss _____ the arrangements for tomorrow.
5 Who's going to pay _____ the taxi driver?
6 We paid _____ the bill and left the restaurant.
7 I'll phone _____ the theatre and book two tickets.
8 The price of the holiday depends _____ when you want to travel.

9 He walked out of the room without answering ..... me.
10 A lot of people don't agree ..... you.
11 I've applied ..... a visa.
12 Who does this pen belong ..... ?

B **Complete the story with prepositions. For some gaps no preposition is required.**

When Jack arrived ♦ *at* ..... the theatre, Alice was waiting [1] ..... him. 'Where have you been?' she asked [2] ..... him. 'We can talk [3] ..... that later,' said Jack. 'I tried to phone [4] ..... you to say that I was going to be late, but you didn't answer. Let's go into the concert.' 'OK,' said Alice, 'but as you were late, you have to pay [5] ..... the tickets!' 'What?' said Jack. 'I don't want to argue [6] ..... it, but I don't agree [7] ..... you. It's not fair!'

C **Complete the questions using the words in brackets ( ). Add the correct preposition.**

Tim: What are you doing here, Grace?
Grace: I'm just waiting.
Tim: (who/you/wait) ♦ *Who are you waiting for?* .....
Grace: Sara. She's talking to the boss.
Tim: (what/they/talk) [1] .....
Grace: She wants more money.
Tim: (how much/she/ask) [2] .....
Grace: I don't know, but she's started looking for a new job.
Tim: (how many jobs/have/she/apply) [3] .....
Grace: Five or six, I think. By the way, is that a new phone that you've got?
Tim: Yes, I got it the other day.
Grace: And (what/you/listen) [4] .....
Tim: My favourite Beatles album. It's great!

D **Complete the postcard by putting in the prepositions that are necessary. Sometimes, no preposition is required.**

Dear Sam,

We arrived ♦ *in* ..... Greece at about 11 o'clock. We got a taxi from the airport to the port, and found the boat going to our island. I enjoyed looking [1] ..... the scenery on the way. When we reached [2] ..... the island, we looked [3] ..... our villa but we couldn't find it. I talked [4] ..... a local man, and I asked [5] ..... directions. He offered to take me there. When we arrived [6] ..... the villa, I offered to pay [7] ..... him, but he didn't want any money. The weather's lovely. I'll call [8] ..... you when we get back from our holiday.

Love,

Tina

84 Adjective + preposition

1 Some adjectives can be followed by a preposition + noun:

ADJECTIVE + PREPOSITION + NOUN		
I'm ***afraid***	***of***	*dogs.*
She's ***good***	***at***	*maths.*

Here are some more examples:

*Some people are **afraid of** thunder.*
*John is very **angry with** me.*
*I was **annoyed with** my sister.*
*Jenny is **brilliant at** maths.*
*Tom was **busy with** his work.*
*William is **careless with** his money.*
*Anna's mother was **cruel to** her.*
*France is **famous for** its cheese.*
*Peter is very **fond of** children.*
*Our cat is **frightened of** your dog.*
*The rooms were **full of** old furniture.*
*Are you **good at** sport?*
*They were **grateful for** our help.*
*She's **interested in** old coins.*
*He's very **keen on** chess.*
*Your sister was very **kind to** us.*
*I'm often **lucky at** games.*
*Ian was **pleased with** the result.*
*They're **proud of** their children.*
*Are you **sure about** her name?*
*I was **surprised by** her anger.*

2 Some adjectives are followed by a preposition + **-ing** form:

	ADJECTIVE + PREPOSITION + -ing FORM	
He was	***sick of washing***	*dishes.*

*I'm not very **good at running**.*
*Robert is very **fond of talking**.*
*Anna is **used to working** at night.*
(= She often works at night, and she doesn't mind it.)

3 A few adjectives can have an **-ing** form without a preposition:

busy	*no good*	*not worth*

	ADJECTIVE + -ing FORM	
They were	***busy getting***	*things ready.*

*It's **no good worrying** about the weather.*
*It's **not worth taking** the car, we can walk.*

A Complete these sentences using prepositions (e.g. *with, of*).

♦ Mary was pleased with ..... her exam results. She had got good marks in most subjects.
1 Thank you very much. I am very grateful ..... your help.
2 I'm not sure ..... the price, but I think they cost about £5.
3 It was the day of the concert, and everyone was busy ..... the preparations.
4 I didn't expect to win the match. I was quite surprised ..... the result.
5 Amber was very brave. We are very proud ..... her.
6 I like geography and I'm very interested ..... history as well.
7 We've got plenty of food. The fridge is full ..... things to eat.
8 Mary didn't like the director. She was annoyed ..... him.
9 John is very clever. He's brilliant ..... physics and chemistry.
10 Jasmine doesn't like small animals, but she's very fond ..... horses.
11 Julian should look after his glasses. He's very careless ..... them.
12 Lucy and Jasmine like sports. They are particularly keen ..... hockey.
13 Matt must be good ..... French. He got top marks in the exams.
14 Mike has never learnt to swim because he's afraid ..... water.

B Write these dialogues in the Present Simple or Continuous. Use the words in brackets ( ) and any prepositions (e.g. *with, of, at*) that you need.

♦ A: (Jasmine, why/be/you/angry/Peter?) B: (Because he/be/very careless/his money)

A: Jasmine, why are you angry with Peter?

B: Because he is very careless with his money.

1 A: (be/their daughter/good/school work?) B: (Yes, in fact she/be/brilliant/everything)

A: .....

B: .....

2 A: (Why/be/Mr Bell's dog/hide?) B: (Because it/be/afraid/fireworks)

A: .....

B: .....

3 A: (be/Jenny/fond/classical music?) B: (Yes, she/be/very keen/Bach, for example)

A: .....

B: .....

4 A: (be/you/pleased/Peter's exam results?) B: (Yes, we/be/very proud/him)

A: .....

B: .....

C Complete the dialogue using the words from the box and a preposition if it is necessary.

busy famous full good interested ~~kind~~ no good sick used worried worth

Isaac: How did your job interview go?

Chloe: All right, I think. The company director was quite ♦ kind to ..... me.

Isaac: What does the company make?

Chloe: Clothes. It's [1] ..... its sports clothes, in fact. I had to wait for a while because the director was [2] ..... talking to some clients. The corridor where I waited was [3] ..... boxes with clothes in them.

Isaac: And what did he ask you?

Chloe: She. The director's a woman. She asked me if I was [4] ..... maths. I said yes. She asked me if I was [5] ..... working under pressure, and I told her that I prefer to be busy at work so that it was no problem. Then she asked me why I was [6] ..... changing jobs, and I told her that I was [7] ..... working hard for so little pay. I'm a bit [8] ..... that answer now; perhaps it wasn't the best thing to say.

Isaac: It's [9] ..... thinking about it now. What do you think your chances are?

Chloe: I'm not sure. I'm not really sure that I want to change jobs just now, but I think it's [10] ..... going to an interview from time to time because it gives you practice and makes you more confident.

Test H Prepositions

A This is a weather forecast on a local radio station. Complete the missing words.

'Good morning. This is the weather [0]at six o'clock in the morning [1]o Thursday 7 February. It's cold [2]o, and there's ice [3]o the roads, so don't drive too close to the car [4]i f of you! There should be 40 metres [5]b you and that car! If you're driving [6]i the city [7]t morning, pay attention to schoolchildren walking [8]a the road. Remember, you might be [9]n t a school! Traffic is moving very slowly [10]t the city centre at the moment. There was an accident [11]l night, so if you're driving [12]p Central Library, the police may stop you and ask you a few questions. That's all for now. More weather news [13]e hour, [14]f six [15]i the morning [16]t six at night, this is the KC News Network making sure you're up to date with the news on the road!'

B Anthony is talking to Michelle. Complete their conversation by writing in the missing words from the box.

at by (x2) in good of with (x3) without ~~without~~ worth.

[0] without

Anthony: Jack says he can learn a new language working.

Michelle: Who's Jack?

Anthony: He's that new boy the bright blue jumper. The one long hair. He's bought an audiobook, and he says he learns listening to it while he's asleep.

Michelle: I think that's silly.

Anthony: But you're good learning new words, aren't you? I might try Jack's audiobook. I'm sick making mistakes all the time.

Michelle: It's no use worrying about mistakes. We learn making mistakes.

Anthony: It's easy for you. You can pass French exams doing much work. How do you do it?

Michelle: I just sit down a dictionary and a French newspaper. It's not buying an expensive audiobook, in my view.

C Melanie is sending an email to Emilia. Cross out the wrong words.

Hi Emilia,

I want to be [0]on/~~in~~ holiday! It's too hot to work. The office is [1]as/like an oven [2]on/at the moment. It looks [3]as/like if my boss will be in Germany [4]on/in business next week so I'll be [5]at/in charge. Are you enjoying yourself in Cancun? Is Mexico good [6]like/as a holiday destination? [7]Like/As usual, I haven't booked my holiday yet, but I think I'll go to Spain [8]by/in car and visit my old friend Pilar in Madrid. You really sounded [9]as/like though you were [10]on/in love when I spoke to you [11]by/on the phone last week. [12]As/Like you know, I think your new boyfriend is a really nice guy. I'm sure you'll be happy together.

Love,

Melanie

D **A tour guide is showing tourists a Roman camp near Hadrian's Wall in the north of England. Complete the tour using words from the box.**

reach busy interested waiting talk sure proud
~~Listen~~ depended grateful surprised brilliant

♦Listen to me now, please. Can you hear me? I'm going to [1] ..... to you today about daily life for Romans living in the camp. I think you will be [2] ..... by some of the things that you see. This part of the camp was the kitchen. Imagine 15 cooks [3] ..... with the meals for the soldiers and their families! The cooks [4] ..... on local farms for the food, and they were [5] ..... at keeping food for a long time, using salt for example. If you're [6] ..... in cooking, please ask for more information at the tourist centre. Shall we continue? Who are we [7] ..... for? We're not [8] ..... about this part of the camp, but we think it was a bathing area, and we know that the Romans were [9] ..... of their bathrooms. I expect that the people living here were [10] ..... for hot water in winter. Let's move on. In a moment we'll [11] ..... the family part of the camp, and I'll let you look around by yourselves.'

E **Olivia and Dan are talking on the phone. In gaps 1–7, circle the correct preposition. In gaps 8–20, write the correct preposition.**

Olivia: Hi! Is that you, Dan? I'm glad you haven't left yet. When you come to the conference tonight, could you bring the green file? It's ♦onto/(on) my desk, [1]behind/between the phone. Can you see it? That's right. It's [2]across/under the dictionary. Great! Now, do you know how to get to the hotel?

Dan: I think so. After I've driven out [3]from/of London, I go north [4]in/up the A54, through Watford, [5]as/like though I was going to Milton Keynes. But in fact I take the B254 [6]on/to Halton before I reach Milton Keynes. I think I should get there about nine o'clock, shouldn't I?

Olivia: That's right, unless you get lost [7]as/like me!

Dan: Isn't there a big house [8] ..... sale, just before the Halton road?

Olivia: Yes. It's [9] ..... the left. I didn't see it, so I had to ask [10] ..... directions.

Dan: Is the boss there already? I plan to arrive at the hotel [11] ..... jeans instead [12] ..... my suit and tie. I hope that's OK. By the way, did you apply [13] ..... Phil's job?

Olivia: I wasn't sure about it, but yes, I did apply. I was a bit annoyed [14] ..... the advertisement on the website, though. There was a sentence [15] ..... the end of it, saying 'You must be good [16] ..... talking to people.'

Dan: What's wrong with that?

Olivia: Well, Phil was very good at talking to people, but he wasn't fond [17] ..... doing any work, was he?

Dan: You sound [18] ..... you didn't really like Phil.

Olivia: Well, I thought he was a bit cruel [19] ..... his co-workers.

Dan: Yes, I think they were frightened [20] ..... him, weren't they? Look, I'd better go. See you later!

85 Have and have got

Verbs

1 Look at this example with **have**:

*They always **have** breakfast at seven o'clock.*

POSITIVE		
I/you/we/they	have	
He/she/it	has	
NEGATIVE	**FULL FORM**	**SHORT FORM**
I/you/we/they	do not have	
He/she/it	does not have	
QUESTIONS		
Do	I/you/we/they	have ...?
Does	he/she/it	

2 Look at this example with **have got**:

I've got three brothers.

POSITIVE	FULL FORM	SHORT FORM
I/you/we/they	have got	've got
He/she/it	has got	's got
NEGATIVE		
I/you/we/they	have not got	haven't got
He/she/it	has not got	hasn't got
QUESTIONS		
Have	I/you/we/they	got ...?
Has	he/she/it	

3 We can use **have** or **have got**:

- to talk about the things we possess:
  - *We **have** a house in Spain.*
  - *We**'ve got** a house in Spain.*
  - *Paul **doesn't have** a car.*
  - *Paul **hasn't got** a car.*
  - *Do you **have** any money?*
  - *Have you **got** any money?*
- to talk about our families:
  - *Jasmine **has** a brother and a sister.*
  - *Jasmine**'s got** a brother and a sister.*
- to describe people:
  - *She **has** blue eyes.*
  - *She**'s got** blue eyes.*
  - *Does your brother **have** long hair or short hair?*
  - *Has your brother **got** long hair or short hair?*
- to say that we are not feeling well:
  - *I **have** a headache.*
  - *I've **got** a headache.*

4 We use **have** (NOT ~~*have got*~~) to talk about meals and holidays, and with a bath, a shower, or a wash:

- *Do you normally **have** a big **breakfast**?*
- *Have a good **holiday**!*
- *She's **having a shower** at the moment.*
- *I always **have a wash** before I go out.*

A Write positive or negative sentences or questions, using *have got* and the words in brackets ( ).

♦ (she/not/brown eyes.) She hasn't got brown eyes.

1 (he/a flat/in the town centre.) .....

2 (you/a car?) .....

3 (I/not/a brother.) .....

4 (she/a headache.) .....

5 (Steve/brown hair?) .....

Now write sentences or questions using *have* in the Present Simple (*have, has, don't have,* etc.).

♦ (we/always/eggs/for breakfast) We always have eggs for breakfast.
6 (John/always/a holiday in August) .....
7 (she/a bath/every Friday) .....
8 (you/a shower/in the morning?) .....
9 (I/always/lunch/in the park.) .....
10 (They /not/a swimming pool.) .....

B Put the words in brackets ( ) in the correct order to complete the dialogues.

♦ (got – I've – two brothers)
A: Have you got any brothers or sisters?
B: Yes, I've got two brothers.

1 (in Edinburgh – a flat – she's got)
A: Does your sister live in Scotland?
B: Yes, ...

2 (you – got – have – a headache?)
A: What's the matter? .....
.....
B: No, but I feel tired.

3 (blonde hair – she – got – hasn't)
A: Jasmine's tall and blonde.
B: No, you're wrong. .....
.....

4 (have – you – do – a holiday every year?)
A: .....
B: No, I don't.

5 (he's – a shower – having)
A: Where's Michael? Is he ready?
B: No, ...

6 (a car – I – got – haven't)
A: Are you going to drive to Scotland?
B: No, ...

7 (you – dinner at seven o'clock? – have – do)
A: .....
B: No, we always eat at seven-thirty.

C Some of the sentences are wrong. Rewrite the wrong sentences and tick (✓) the correct sentences.

♦ We've got a holiday in Mexico every year. We have a holiday in Mexico every year.
♦ Paul's got a sister in Scotland. ✓
1 She is tired, but she doesn't have a cold. .....
2 I haven't got lunch every day. .....
3 Have you got a shower every day? .....
4 Have you got an English dictionary? .....
5 Do you have a headache? .....
6 We've got a large garden. .....
7 I've got a bath at ten o'clock and I go to bed at eleven o'clock. .....
8 They're having got dinner at the moment. .....
9 They've got two dogs. .....
10 Have got a good weekend! .....
11 Have you got a motorbike? .....

86 Make, do, have, get

1 There are many phrases in which a particular verb is used together with a particular noun, for example:

make a cup of coffee
do some work
have breakfast

2 We often use **make** in sentences about producing or creating something:

*They **made a fire** in the woods.*
*Shall I **make some coffee**?*
*He **made some sandwiches** for lunch.*

3 We also use **make** in these phrases:

*Excuse me. I have to **make a phone call**.*
*He **makes a lot of mistakes** in his work.*
*I couldn't sleep because the neighbours were **making a lot of noise**.*

4 We often use **do** in sentences about working, or about doing particular jobs:

*Have you **done your homework**?*
*He offered to **do the washing-up**.*
*We're going to **do some shopping**.*
*I haven't **done much work** today.*

5 We use **have** + noun to describe activities:

*I'm going to **have a shower** in the morning.*
*We usually **have lunch** at about one o'clock.*
*I'm **having fish** for dinner tonight.*
*I **had a swim** in the sea this morning.*

6 We use **get** with adjectives that describe feelings, to say that we begin to have the feeling:

*I'm **getting tired** now. I need a rest.*
*They're late and I'm **getting worried**.*
*I **got angry** and shouted at them.*

7 We use **get** in some phrases that describe a change of situation:

*We **got lost** in Paris. (= We became lost ...)*
*It's **getting cold**. (= It's becoming cold.)*
*Jasmine was very ill, but she's **getting better**.*
*They **got married** three years ago.*
*It rained heavily and I **got very wet**.*

8 We use **make** + **someone** + adjective to talk about the cause of a feeling:

*He **made us very angry**.*
*The news **made him happy**.*

A Complete the sentences, using the correct forms of *make*, *do*, *have* or *get*. Be careful that you use the correct tense.

♦ He was making a cup of coffee in the kitchen.
♦ We has lunch in a very pleasant little restaurant yesterday.
1 She always _____ excited before her birthday.
2 A: Helen's ill.
B: Oh dear. I hope she'll _____ better soon.
3 We have to _____ some homework every evening.
4 I think I've _____ a terrible mistake.
5 They _____ the shopping and then they went home.
6 I was late because I _____ lost on my way there.
7 It always _____ very hot here during the summer.
8 Could I _____ a quick phone call, please?
9 Please don't _____ so much noise.
10 It was a lovely surprise and it _____ me very happy.
11 Her parents are _____ old. They are 60 or 70.
12 How old were you when you _____ married?

B **Look at the notes in the table about what Laura did yesterday. Complete the text using the correct forms of *make, do, have* or *get*. Sometimes more than one answer is possible.**

7.30	Got up. Shower.
8.00	Breakfast (fruit juice and toast).
8.30–9.00	Walk to work. Rain.
9.00–1.00	Work. Very busy.
1.00–2.00	Lunch in office. Sandwiches.
2.00–5.00	Work. Finished everything.
5.30	Shopping. Home.
7.00	Pizza for dinner. Washed up.
8.00–11.00	TV. Tired. Bed.









It was a normal day for Laura yesterday. She got up at 7.30 and she ♦ had a shower. Then she [1] _____ breakfast. For breakfast she [2] _____ fruit juice and toast. While she was walking to work, it rained and she [3] _____ wet. She [4] _____ angry about this. In the morning she [5] _____ a lot of work. She [6] _____ lunch at about one o'clock. She [7] _____ sandwiches for lunch. When she had [8] _____ all her work in the afternoon, she went home. On the way home she [9] _____ some shopping. She [10] _____ a pizza for dinner. She [11] _____ the washing-up and then she watched TV for three hours. By 11 o'clock she felt quite tired, and so she went to bed.

C **Complete the dialogues using the correct form of *make, do, have* or *get*.**

♦ A: Was the film good?
B: No, I got _____ bored in the middle of it.

1 A: Could you _____ some shopping for me?
B: Yes, what do you want me to buy?

2 A: Were you pleased by the news?
B: No, it _____ me very unhappy.

3 A: Was it a warm day?
B: Yes, but it _____ rather cold in the evening.

4 A: Are you hungry at the moment?
B: No, I _____ a big meal a couple of hours ago.

5 A: Did he pass the test?
B: No, he _____ a lot of mistakes.

6 A: Are you ready to go out?
B: No, I'm not. I want to _____ a wash first.

7 A: Could you repair this for me?
B: Yes, but I can't _____ the job until tomorrow.

87 Phrasal verbs (1): meanings and types

1 We can use many verbs together with another word to form 'phrasal verbs', e.g. **put on**, **get up**.

The same verb can go with several different words to form phrasal verbs with different meanings, e.g. **put away**, **put on**, **put up**.

The meaning of a phrasal verb is not always clear from the two parts. You should check the meaning of phrasal verbs in a dictionary.

2 Grammatically, there are three types of phrasal verb.

- One type consists of verb + adverb and there is an object, e.g.:

  *She **put on** the hat.*

  *She **put** the hat **on**.*

  Some common verbs of this type are:

  bring up, calm down, cross out, fill in, find out, give in, give out, look up, pick up, point out, pull off, put away, put up, take off, try on, turn off, work out

  When the object is a pronoun, it goes between the two parts of the verb, e.g.:

  *She **put** it **on**.* (NOT ~~*She put on it.*~~)

- The second type of phrasal verb consists of verb + adverb but there is no object, e.g.:

  *I usually **get up** at seven o'clock.*

  Some common verbs of this type are:

  break down, check in, get off, get up, go on, go out, hang about, look out, set off, show up, stay up, take off, turn out, turn up

- The third type consists of verb + adverb + preposition and there is an object, e.g.:

  *We're **looking forward to** your news.*

  Some common verbs of this type are:

  do away with, face up to, run out of, look up to

(See also **Unit 88**.)

A Complete these dialogues with a phrasal verb and a pronoun.

♦ A: Has Mary put her hat on?
B: Yes, she's put it on.

1 A: Who brought up the children?
B: Their uncle _____.

2 A: Did you cross out the wrong words?
B: No, the teacher _____.

3 A: When do we have to give in the homework?
B: We have to _____ tomorrow.

4 A: Can you pick Ellie up after school?
B: OK, I'll _____ on my way home.

5 A: Children, can you put your toys away now please.
B: Can't we _____ later?

B Rewrite each sentence replacing the underlined expressions with the correct form of the phrasal verbs from the box.

break down | give out | go on | keep off | ~~look out~~ | look up to | put up

♦ Be careful! Don't step into the hole!
Look out! Don't step into the hole!

1 The young boys really admire the first team players.
The young boys really _____ the first team players.

2 The teacher distributed the exam papers.
The teacher ..... the exam papers.

3 You don't have to go home now. We can give you a bed for the night.
You don't have to go home now. We can ..... you ..... for the night.

4 What's happening here? What are you doing?
What's ..... here? What are you doing?

5 James's old car stopped working completely last weekend.
James's old car ..... completely last weekend.

C **Ellie and Jasmine are staying in Barcelona and are planning to do some shopping. Complete the dialogue with the correct form of the verbs from the box. Use a dictionary to check the meanings.**

find out get off look up put on run out of set off take off try on ~~work out~~

Ellie: Have you ♦ worked out ..... worked out ..... where the best shopping centre is?

Jasmine: Yes, I [1] ..... it ..... in the guidebook. We can take the metro right across the street and we [2] ..... at the fourth station.

Ellie: By the way, I've [3] ..... euros so we'll have to call at a bank.

Jasmine: We can go to the hotel reception and [4] ..... if there's a cash machine near here. What are you going to wear?

Ellie: If we're going to [5] ..... clothes, I think I'll wear a skirt. It's more difficult to [6] ..... jeans and [7] ..... them ..... all the time.

Jasmine: OK, as soon as you've changed we can [8] ..... .

D **Choose the correct words in the story to complete the phrasal verbs. Use a dictionary to check the meanings**

We were looking forward ♦ to/~~on~~ our holiday, but the night before we were going to leave we stayed [1]down/up talking until about three o'clock. We didn't hear the alarm so we got [2]up/in late and we were late getting to the airport. When we went to check [3]in/up, we were lucky because some passengers hadn't shown [4]up/out so there were still some seats left. When we got on the plane, Tim was a bit nervous because he hadn't flown before but I gave him a herbal pill and that calmed him [5]down/out. The cabin crew told us to turn [6]in/off our mobiles. Then the lights went [7]up/off and Tim thought something was wrong but I pointed [8]out/up that they always do that before the plane takes [9]out/off. When we got to Rome, we went to pick [10]up/off our cases. Mine was one of the first to come out, but Tim's didn't appear. We hung [11]about/up for a long time but it didn't turn [12]out/up. We went to an office to report it and Tim had to fill [13]in/on all his details on a form. After several phone calls, it turned [14]out/up that Tim's case was in Athens. Luckily we got it back that same evening. As soon as it arrived, Tim pulled [15]out/off his sweaty clothes, had a cold shower and put [16]in/on a clean shirt and trousers. We were just in time to go and have dinner.

88 Phrasal verbs (2): separability

1 Grammatically, phrasal verbs fall into three* groups. Some phrasal verbs can belong to different groups (see **Unit 87**), sometimes with different meanings. For example, **clear up**:

*Who's going to **clear up** the mess?*
(= remove)

*The weather soon **cleared up**.*
(= improved)

2 Verbs in the first group consist of verb + adverb and they have an object. When the object is a noun, there are two possible positions:

*Tim **cleared up** the mess.*
*Tim **cleared** the mess **up**.*

However, when the object is a pronoun, it goes between the two parts of the verb:

*Tim **cleared** it **up**.* (NOT ~~*Tim cleared up it.*~~)

Some common verbs in this group are:

break off, carry on, draw out, get off, give up, knock down, lay off, let out, make up, pay in, put on, rub out, set up, shut down, sort out

3 Verbs in the second group consist of verb + adverb but there is no object, e.g.:

*Where did you **grow up**?*

Some common verbs in this group are:

call in, come about, cut down, drop in, go on, hang on, look out, stay in

4 Verbs in the third group consist of verb + adverb + preposition and they have an object:

*I can't **put up with** all this noise.*

Some common verbs in this group are:

do away with, face up to, get away with, put up with

* Some people also classify prepositional verbs (**Unit 83**) as phrasal verbs.

A Complete these dialogues with the phrasal verb and a pronoun.

♦ A: Has somebody put the lights on?
B: I think Joe's put them on.

1 A: When did they knock down the cinema?
B: They _____ several months ago.

2 A: Look at this skirt! How can I get the ink off?
B: I think the only way to _____ is to take it to the cleaner's.

3 A: Somebody's rubbed out my name.
B: Well, I haven't _____.

4 A: Ellie and Pete have broken off their engagement.
B: Oh no! When did they _____?

B Replace the underlined expressions in the sentences with the correct form of the phrasal verbs from the box.

drop in get away with hang on ~~knock down~~ put up with sort out

♦ They're going to demolish those old houses.
They're going to knock down those old houses.

1 The gang escaped taking £5 million.
The gang _____ £5 million.

2 I'm going out. I can't stand the smoke in here.
I'm going out. I can't _____ the smoke in here.

3 Maddie says she's going to visit us on Thursday.
Maddie says she's going to _____ on Thursday.

4 Wait! I've just got to get my jacket.
_____ ! I've just got to get my jacket.

5 We still haven't arranged who does the different jobs.
We still haven't _____ who does the different jobs.

C Complete this interview using the correct form of the phrasal verbs from the box.

carry on | come about | cut down | do away with | draw out | drop in | face up to | give up | go on | ~~grow up~~ | lay off | let out | make up | pay in | set up | shut down | stay in

Interviewer: I understand that your early life was not easy. Can you tell us a little about it? Where were you born?

Ruth: In Barnsley, in the north of England, and that's where I ♦ *grew up* _____ .

Interviewer: Were you lonely as a child?

Ruth: I had three sisters and two brothers so it was never quiet. There was always something [1] _____ . The house was never empty because neighbours [2] _____ all the time.

Interviewer: Do you remember any particularly happy moments?

Ruth: Yes, when we went to bed my mother always told us stories. She didn't have a book – she just [3] _____ them _____ herself.

Interviewer: And then things went wrong. How did that [4] _____ ?

Ruth: Well, in the first place my father smoked a lot. He always said that he was going to [5] _____ , but he smoked more rather than less. He got very ill and he was in hospital for several weeks. Even when the hospital [6] _____ him _____ , he wasn't well. He had to [7] _____ and keep warm so that his bronchitis wouldn't start again. But at least he had the sense to finally [8] _____ smoking.

Interviewer: But things got worse.

Ruth: Yes, while he was recovering we heard that the factory where he worked had [9] _____ a lot of workers. At first he wasn't affected but then we heard that they were going to [10] _____ the factory _____ .

Interviewer: And then things got better.

Ruth: Yes, my parents had to [11] _____ their new situation. They said that businesses could [12] _____ factory workers but they would always need office staff. Luckily they had a savings account and every week they had [13] _____ something _____ . Now they decided to [14] _____ their savings and [15] _____ a little business selling office equipment. It did quite well and when they retired I decided to [16] _____ it _____ .

Interviewer: Well, that is a story with a happy end. Thank you for speaking to me.

89 Passive sentences (1)

1 We form the Present Simple passive like this:

	am/is/are +	PAST PARTICIPLE	
Glass	*is*	*made*	*from sand.*

POSITIVE AND NEGATIVE
*This programme **is shown** on TV every Thursday.*
*These computers **aren't produced** any more.*
QUESTIONS
*When **is** breakfast **served** in this hotel?*

(For information on the forms of regular past participles see **Appendix 2** on page 243, and for irregular past participles see **Appendix 3** on page 244.)

2 We form the Past Simple passive like this:

	was/were +	PAST PARTICIPLE	
Anna	*was*	*born*	*in Germany.*

POSITIVE AND NEGATIVE
Romeo and Juliet *was written* by Shakespeare.
*The goods **weren't delivered** yesterday.*
QUESTIONS
*When **was** your camera stolen?*

3 Look at these sentences:

		OBJECT	
ACTIVE:	*They sell*	*cold drinks*	*here.*
PASSIVE:	*Cold drinks* (SUBJECT)	*are sold here.*	

Notice that the object in the active sentence (**cold drinks**) is the same as the subject in the passive sentence. We use the passive when it is not important who does the action, or when we don't know who does it:

These cars are made in Japan. (We don't need to say ...~~*by Japanese workers.*~~)

This castle was built in the 12th century. (We don't know who built it.)

4 Now look at these examples:

(i) ***Alfred Hitchcock** was a great film-maker. **He** directed this film in 1956.*

(ii) *This is a wonderful **film**. **It** was directed by Alfred Hitchcock.*

In (ii) we use the passive because we have been talking about something (**the film**), and not the person who did it (**Hitchcock**). We use **by** to say who does, or did, the action:

*This film was directed **by** Hitchcock.*

A Complete these sentences using the correct form of the verbs from the box. Use the passive form of the Present Simple or Past Simple.

build check found hold ~~make~~ produce ~~repair~~ sell speak write

♦ Scotch whisky *is made* in Scotland.

♦ The car *was repaired* last week.

1 The Olympic Games _____ every four years.

2 English _____ in many countries.

3 'Yesterday' _____ by John Lennon and Paul McCartney.

4 Car speeds _____ by radar.

5 The Channel Tunnel _____ to connect Britain with Europe.

6 Souvenirs _____ at all popular tourist places.

7 The first Volkswagen Beetles _____ in 1937.

8 *The Times* newspaper _____ in 1785.

B Now write questions for the sentences in exercise A, using the passive form.

♦ Where is Scotch whisky made?
♦ When was the car repaired?
1 How often
2 Where
3 Who
4 How
5 Why
6 Where
7 When
8 When

C Change the active sentences into passive sentences. Use the words in brackets ( ).

♦ We sell tickets for all shows at the box office. (Tickets for all shows/sell/at the box office)
Tickets for all shows are sold at the box office.
1 Thomas Edison invented the electric light bulb. (The electric light bulb/invent/by Thomas Edison)
2 Someone painted the office last week. (The office/paint/last week)
3 Several people saw the accident. (The accident/see/by several people)
4 Where do they make these cars? (Where/these cars/make)
5 Six countries signed the agreement. (The agreement/sign/by six countries)
6 A stranger helped me. (I/help/by a stranger)
7 They don't deliver the post on Sundays. (The post/not/deliver/on Sundays)

D Complete the text using the correct active or passive form in brackets ( ).

Fiat ♦ was started (started/was started) by a group of Italian businessmen in 1899. In 1903, Fiat [1] (produced/was produced) 132 cars. Some of these cars [2] (exported/were exported) to the United States and Britain. In 1920, Fiat [3] (started/was started) making cars at a new factory at Lingotto, near Turin. There was a track on the factory roof where the cars [4] (tested/were tested) by technicians. In 1936, Fiat launched the Fiat 500. This car [5] (called/was called) the Topolino - the Italian name for Mickey Mouse. The company grew, and in 1963 Fiat [6] (exported/was exported) more than 300,000 vehicles. Today, Fiat is based in Turin, and its cars [7] (sold/are sold) all over the world.

90 Passive sentences (2)

1 Here is a summary of passive tenses. Note that a passive verb always includes a past participle (e.g. **repaired**, **taken**). For more information on past participles, see **Appendices 2** and **3** on pages 243–4.

▶ Present Simple:

	VERB (PRESENT)	+ PARTICIPLE
ACTIVE:	Someone **repairs** the machine.	
PASSIVE:	The machine **is repaired**.	

▶ Past Simple:

	VERB (PAST)	+ PARTICIPLE
ACTIVE:	Someone **took** my phone.	
PASSIVE:	My phone **was taken**.	

▶ Present Perfect:

	have/has	+ PARTICIPLE
ACTIVE:	She **has packed** the books.	
PASSIVE:	The books **have been packed**.	

▶ Past Perfect:

	had	+ PARTICIPLE
ACTIVE:	Rob **had paid** the bill.	
PASSIVE:	The bill **had been paid**.	

▶ Present Continuous:

	am/is/are + -ing	+ PARTICIPLE
ACTIVE:	They **are mending** the car.	
PASSIVE:	The car is **being mended**.	

▶ Past Continuous:

	was/were + -ing	+ PARTICIPLE
ACTIVE:	They **were building** the bridge.	
PASSIVE:	The bridge **was being built**.	

▶ **will**, **can**, **must**, etc.

	+ INFINITIVE + PARTICIPLE
ACTIVE:	We **will finish** the job.
PASSIVE:	The job **will be finished**.
ACTIVE:	We **must do** the work.
PASSIVE:	The work **must be done**.

2 In all passive sentences, the first verb (= auxiliary verb) is singular if the subject is singular, and plural if the subject is plural:

	AUXILIARY VERB	
The house	**is**	being built.
The houses	**are**	being built.

We also use the auxiliary verb to make questions and negatives:

***Have** the books been packed?*
*The bill **hadn't** been paid.*

A Make questions from the passive sentences in brackets ( ).

♦ (That car was made in Germany.) Where was that car made?
1 (Mary was examined by the doctor this morning.) When .....
2 (The food will be prepared on Friday.) When .....
3 (This window has been broken three times.) How many times .....

B Write the negative forms of the sentences in brackets ( ) from exercise A.

♦ That car was not made in Germany.
1 Mary .....
2 The food .....
3 This window .....

C Complete these passive sentences using the correct form of the words in brackets ( ).

♦ Nowadays, most bread *is made* (be/make) from white flour.
♦ Two workers died while these houses *were being built* (be/be/build)
1 Good chips ..... (be/make) from good potatoes.
2 You mustn't smoke while your car ..... (be/be/fill) with petrol.
3 This work ..... (must/be/finish) by this afternoon.
4 These bones ..... (be/find) last year in a cave.
5 Some money ..... (have/be/steal) from Tom's jacket.

D Make these active sentences passive. Use a phrase with *by*.

♦ Your manager must write the report.
The report *must be written by your manager.*
♦ The children are organizing the Christmas party.
The Christmas party *is being organized by the children.*
1 The French team has won the silver medal.
The silver medal .....
2 A Danish specialist was training the guard dogs.
The guard dogs .....
3 People of all ages can play this game.
This game .....
4 A large crowd was watching the match.
The match .....
5 My daughter designed the decorations.
The decorations .....
6 Two different teachers have marked the exams.
The exams .....
7 A police car is following that green van.
That green van .....

E Complete the sentences with the correct passive form of the verb in brackets ( ).

♦ The castle *was built* (build) in 1546.
♦ These mountains can *be seen* (see) from a great distance.
1 These houses ..... (build) in 1946.
2 The repairs must ..... (finish) by tomorrow.
3 The room has ..... (paint) in several different colours.
4 The decision has already ..... (take).
5 The newsletter will ..... (send) tomorrow morning.
6 White wine can ..... (make) from red grapes.
7 The accident happened while the cars ..... (load) onto the lorries.
8 The new models will ..... (deliver) next week.

91 Have (something) done

1 Look at this sentence:

*Mary and Tim **painted** their flat.*

This tells us that Mary and Tim were the painters; they painted their flat.

Now look at this sentence with **have something done**:

*Jenny and John **had** their flat **painted**.*

This tells us that Jenny and John wanted their flat painted, and that someone painted it for them.

2 Here are some more examples:

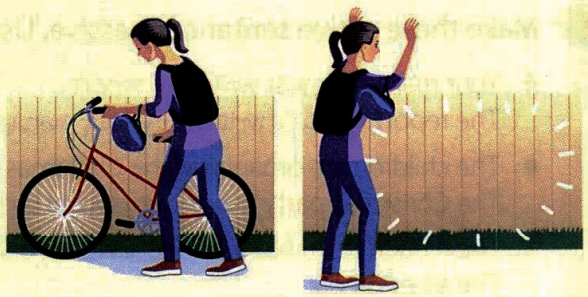
HAVE +	SOMETHING +	DONE
I have mended	*my bike.*	
I have had	*my bike*	*mended.*

*Michelle **is going to cut** her hair.*
*Michelle **is going to have** her hair **cut**.*
(= Someone is going to cut it for her.)
*She **washes** her car every Sunday.*
*She **has** her car **washed** every Sunday.*
(= Someone washes her car for her.)
*I **must clean** my suit this week.*
*I **must have** my suit **cleaned** this week.*
(= I must pay someone to clean it for me.)
*I'll **mend** that broken window.*
*I'll **have** that broken window **mended**.*
(= Someone will mend that window for me.)

3 We sometimes use **get** instead **of have**:

*I must **get** my suit **cleaned**.*

4 Now look at this example:



*Lucy is very cross. She **had** her bike **stolen**.*

Here, we use **have something done** to talk about something that happens to someone, usually something unpleasant. Here is another example:

*The group **had** two concerts **cancelled** because of bad weather.*

A Make sentences with a form of *have something done* for these situations. Use the correct tense.

♦ SITUATION: Tom's windows were dirty, but he didn't have time to clean them himself.
Last Saturday, Tom had his windows cleaned.

1 SITUATION: The shop delivers Mary's food.
Mary .....

2 SITUATION: At the butcher's Jacob said, 'Please cut the meat into small pieces'.
Jacob ..... into small pieces.

3 SITUATION: The hairdresser cuts Rachel's hair about twice a year.
Rachel ..... about twice a year.

4 SITUATION: Last week, the optician checked Mr Stone's eyes.
Last week, Mr Stone .....

5 SITUATION: Mrs Frost's doctor says to her: 'When you come to see me next week, I'll check your blood pressure.'
When Mrs Frost goes to see the doctor next week, she .....

6 SITUATION: Last week, the garage serviced Jasmine's car.
Last week, Jasmine .....

7 SITUATION: A builder is going to mend the roof on our house.
We ..... on our house.

B **Look at these signs from some shops and a garage. Write what people think when they see the signs using the words in brackets ( ) and *have* or *had*.**

♦ WE REPAIR ALL KINDS OF BOOTS AND SHOES

(That reminds me. I/must/my brown boots/repair)

That reminds me. I must have my brown boots repaired.

1 LET US CLEAN YOUR CARPETS AND CURTAINS

(My parents use that company. They/their carpets/clean/there)

My parents use that company. .....

2 CAN WE CHECK YOUR OIL AND TYRES?

(That reminds me. I/must/the tyres/check)

That reminds me. .....

3 WE MAKE KEYS OF ALL TYPES

(I'd almost forgotten. I/ought to/a new key/make/for the front door)

I'd almost forgotten. .....

4 OUR SPECIALITY: PAINTING HOUSES AND FLATS

(I don't think I can afford to/our flat/paint)

I don't think I can afford to .....

5 WE MEND WATCHES AND CLOCKS

(That shop isn't expensive. I/my watch/mend/there last week)

That shop isn't expensive. .....

6 WE TEST YOUR EYES FOR FREE

(Ah, yes! My husband/his eyes/test/there last winter)

Ah, yes! .....

7 WE REMOVE ALL KINDS OF STAINS FROM ALL KINDS OF CLOTHES

(Wonderful! I'll take my suit there and/that coffee stain/remove)

Wonderful! I'll take my suit there and I'll .....

C **Some unpleasant things happened to these people last week. Use the sentences in brackets ( ) to write sentences with *had (something) done*.**

♦ (Mary's bag was pulled off her shoulder.)

Mary had her bag pulled off her shoulder. .....

1 (Peter's driving licence was taken away by the police.)

Peter .....

2 (Olivia's bike was stolen from the garage.)

Olivia .....

3 (Fiona's glasses were broken.)

.....

4 (John's clothes were torn in a fight.)

.....

5 (Jasmine's flat was burgled at the weekend.)

.....

6 (Our electricity was cut off because we had forgotten to pay the bill.)

.....

92 Infinitive with/without to

1 Look at this example:

	to + INFINITIVE	
I want	*to buy*	*some stamps.*

We use **to do**, **to buy**, **to start**, etc. (**to** + infinitive) after some verbs, e.g.:

want	*decide*	+ TO + INFINITIVE
agree	*promise*	
forget	*offer*	
hope	*plan*	
arrange	*try*	

*She **agreed to lend** him some money.*
*He **forgot to book** the tickets.*
*I'm **hoping to get** a new bike soon.*
*I've **arranged to play** tennis tonight.*
*They've **decided to start** a new company.*
*You **promised to help** me.*
*She **offered to do** the washing-up.*
*We're **planning to go** away this weekend.*
*He's **trying to learn** French.*

2 We can also say **want** + **someone** + **to**:

*His parents **want him to go** to university.*
*Do you **want me to help** you?*

3 Now look at this example:

	INFINITIVE	
He can	*speak*	*Spanish.*

Can is a modal verb. We use **do**, **speak**, **see**, etc. (infinitives) after a modal verb. Some of the most common modal verbs are:

will ('ll)	*should*	*may*		+ INFINITIVE
might	*can*	*could*	*must*	

I'll see you soon.
She won't agree.
Where should I sit?
We may go by train.
It may not cost much.
Can I park here?
I couldn't hear her.
We must pay now.

4 We can use **make** + **someone** + infinitive, to mean 'cause' or 'force':

*The film **made me cry.*** (= It caused me to cry.)
*They **made us leave.*** (= They forced us to leave.)

5 We can use **let** + **someone** + infinitive, to mean 'allow':

*She **let me stay.*** (= She allowed me to stay.)

A Complete these sentences using the verbs in brackets ( ). Use an infinitive (*call*) or *to* + *infinitive* (*to call*).

♦ You can't *smoke* (smoke) here. Smoking is not allowed in this building.
1 I'm sorry I forgot ..... (call) you yesterday. I was very busy.
2 Don't worry. The exam may not ..... (be) very difficult.
3 Her mother makes her ..... (clean) her room.
4 It's not a very good film. You won't ..... (enjoy) it.
5 She didn't want ..... (wait) any longer, so she left.
6 How many people are you planning ..... (invite) to the wedding?
7 She couldn't ..... (reply) because she didn't know what to say.
8 This kind of music makes me ..... (feel) good.
9 My friend let me ..... (drive) her car.
10 I'm afraid I've forgotten ..... (bring) the map.
11 They might not ..... (receive) the information until next week.

B Complete each sentence so that it has the same meaning as the sentence in brackets ( ).

♦ (I don't think it's a good idea to argue with him.)
I don't think you should *argue with him.*

1 (I won't be able to come to the meeting on Friday.)
I can't .....

2 (I'm meeting some friends tonight.)
I've arranged .....

3 (Listen to what I'm telling you.)
I want you .....

4 (It's important that you lock the door when you go out.)
Don't forget .....

5 (Perhaps we'll go out for a meal this evening.)
We may .....

6 (Allow me to pay for the meal.)
Let .....

7 (I'd like to do a course in Art History.)
I want .....

8 (He said, 'I'll pay the bill.')
He offered .....

9 (Should I sit in this chair?)
Do you want me .....

10 (His stories were very funny, and I laughed a lot.)
His funny stories made .....

11 (Perhaps he'll phone you tomorrow.)
He might .....

12 (It's possible that Tom won't be angry with you.)
Tom might not .....

13 (Jasmine allowed me to drive her new car.)
Jasmine let .....

C Complete the conversation using the verbs in brackets ( ) with or without *to*.

Charlie: I want ♦ *to do* .....(do) something interesting this weekend. Can we [1] .....(do) something together?

Laura: Well, I've arranged [2] .....(go) on a trip to the coast with some friends. Do you want [3] .....(come) with us?

Charlie: Yes, that sounds good. When are you planning [4] .....(leave)?

Laura: Well, we've decided [5] .....(start) about nine o'clock tomorrow morning, and I've promised [6] .....(take) the others in my car. We're hoping [7] .....(reach) the coast by about 11 o'clock. So, you must [8] .....(meet) me here just before nine.

Charlie: OK, good. I won't [9] .....(be) late.

93 Verb + -ing; like and would like

1 Look at this example:

	-ing FORM	
I like	listening	to music.

(For details on **-ing** forms, see **Appendix 2** on page 243.)

We can use certain verbs with an **-ing** form:

like	enjoy	love	keep	+ -ing FORM
finish	stop	mind	hate	

*She doesn't **like cooking**.*
*Do you **enjoy driving**?*
*They **love living** in a village.*
*He **keeps saying** the same things.*
(= He says the same things many times.)
*Have you **finished eating**?*
*Suddenly she **stopped talking**.*
*I don't **mind waiting**.*
*She **hates using** a drill.*

2 Compare this pair of sentences:

*I **like working** here.* (= I enjoy my job here.)
I'd like (= I would like) *to get a better job.*
(= I want to get a better job.)

We use **like** + **-ing** (e.g. **like listening**, **like working**) to talk about things that we enjoy doing. We use **would like to** to say that we want to do something.:

*She **likes painting** pictures.* (= She enjoys painting pictures.)

*She **would like to be** an artist.*
(= She wants to be an artist.)
*I **like going** to the theatre.*
(= I enjoy going to the theatre.)
*I'd **like to go** to the theatre tonight.*
(= I want to go to the theatre tonight.)
*Do you **like playing** cards?*
(= Do you enjoy playing cards?)
*Would you **like to play** cards now?*
(= Do you want to play now?)

In offers and requests it is more polite to say **would like** than **want**:

*Would you **like to come** for dinner?* (OFFER)
*I'd **like to leave** work early, please.* (REQUEST)

3 We use **go** + **-ing** for sports and hobbies that we go out to do, and with **shopping**:

*We often **go skiing** in the winter.*
*Let's **go swimming** this afternoon.*
*She **goes dancing** at weekends.*
*I'm **going shopping** this afternoon.*

4 We can use the **-ing** form of a verb as the subject of a sentence to talk about activities:

__Swimming__ is a healthy activity.

In sentences like this, we can use a noun, adverb or prepositional phrase after the **-ing** form:

__Riding__ motorbikes can be dangerous.
__Exercising__ regularly is good for you.
__Dancing__ to this kind of music can be difficult.

A Complete the sentences using a Present Simple form of the first verb in brackets ( ). Study the example first.

♦ She likes playing (like/play) tennis, but she doesn't like watching (not/like/watch) it.

1 The buses _____ (stop/run) at midnight.
2 I _____ (not/mind/listen) to his problems.
3 He's not very good at chess, so he _____ (keep/lose).
4 She _____ (enjoy/go) to other countries and she _____ (like/meet) new people.
5 I _____ (keep/make) the same stupid mistakes!
6 They usually _____ (finish/eat) at about eight-thirty in the evening.
7 She _____ (not/enjoy/drive), but she _____ (love/cycle).

B Complete the sentences using *like/not like + -ing* or *would like + to* with the words in brackets ( ).

♦ She *doesn't like working* (work) here. She hates this job and is going to look for a better one.

♦ *Would you like to watch* (you/watch) a different programme, or do you want to watch this one?

1 I _____ (live) here. I have lived here for many years and I think it's a nice town.

2 Sarah _____ (be) a journalist when she leaves university. She wants to work for a newspaper or a magazine.

3 I _____ (get up) so early every morning, but I have to do it.

4 I _____ (go out) for dinner in an Italian restaurant tonight.

5 Clare _____ (find) a job in the United States. She wants to work in Boston or in New York.

6 I _____ (watch) television all the time; I think it's a waste of time.

7 Mary _____ (lie) on the beach when she's on holiday. She doesn't like swimming or going on trips.

C Look at the pictures. They show what John did last week on holiday. Complete the sentences using the correct form of *go* and a verb from the box.

dance ~~shop~~ sail swim ski cycle

♦



Monday

1



Tuesday

2



Wednesday

3



Thursday

4



Friday

5



Saturday

♦ On Monday *he went shopping.*

1 On Tuesday _____

2 On Wednesday _____

3 On Thursday _____

4 On Friday _____

5 On Saturday _____

D Complete these sentences using the *-ing* form of the verbs in brackets.

eat play ~~walk~~ drive

♦ *Walking* in the countryside is very pleasant at this time of year.

1 _____ the guitar is his favourite hobby.

2 _____ on motorways can be very tiring.

3 _____ fatty foods all the time is sure to be bad for you.

94 Verb + to or verb + -ing

1 Look at these sentences:

*My sister **promised to help** me.*
*John doesn't **want to wait**.*

We use **to** + infinitive after some verbs, e.g.:

afford	*dare*	*decide*	
deserve	*want*	*hope*	
learn	*mean*	*offer*	+ TO +
pretend	*promise*	*refuse*	INFINITIVE
seem	*plan*	*agree*	
arrange	*have* (='must')		

2 Look at these sentences:

*Have they **finished painting** the garage?*
*We **enjoy sitting** in the garden.*

We use an **-ing** form after other verbs, e.g.:

avoid	*dislike*	*enjoy*	
finish	*give up*	*imagine*	+ -ing
keep	*practise*	*stop*	

3 Look at these sentences:

*Jenny **likes to stay** at home.*
*Jenny **likes staying** at home.*

These verbs can usually take an **-ing** form or **to** + infinitive with no difference in meaning:

begin	*continue*	*hate*	*intend*
like	*love*	*prefer*	*start*

But after **would hate, would like, would love** or **would prefer**, we use **to** + infinitive:

__Would__ you like to go for a walk?
__I'd love to visit__ Australia.

4 We can use an **-ing** form or **to** + infinitive after these verbs, but the meaning is different:

try	*remember*	*forget*

▶ *__I tried to lift that__ heavy stone.* (= make an attempt: I made an attempt to lift the stone.)
If you can't read where you are, __try sitting__ nearer the window. (= Test something out: sit nearer the window and see if you can read there.)

▶ *__Remember to go__ to the bank.* (= Remember that you must go to the bank.)
She __remembers going__ to the bank. (= She remembers that she went to the bank.)

▶ *Don't __forget to phone__ Mrs Grey.* (= Remember that you must phone Mrs Grey.)
I'll never __forget seeing__ that castle. (= I saw that castle, and I'll always remember it.)

A Complete the sentences using the correct form of the verb in brackets ( ).

♦ Paul dared *to argue* (argue) with the police.
♦ I can't imagine *living* (live) in the country.
1 We've decided ..... (go) to the beach.
2 I stopped ..... (play) tennis when I got married.
3 I meant ..... (buy) some butter, but I forgot.
4 Did you promise ..... (take) the children to the zoo?
5 Have the men finished ..... (repair) the roof yet?
6 I'd love ..... (visit) China.
7 You shouldn't avoid ..... (talk) about your problems.
8 Peter refused ..... (help) us.
9 Would you prefer ..... (pay) now or later?
10 I couldn't afford ..... (live) in London.
11 Why does Peter keep ..... (talk) about his mother?

B Complete this conversation between Jessica and Sian using the correct form of the verbs in brackets ( ).

Jessica: What do your children ♦ want to do (want/do) when they leave school?

Sian: Well, Anna ♦ enjoys writing (enjoy/write), so she's ♦ hoping to work (hope/work) for a newspaper. But I don't know about Paul. He [1] (give up/study) months ago. He seems to [2] (enjoy/do) nothing now. He doesn't [3] (deserve/pass) his exams. And he [4] (refuse/listen) to us when we tell him to [5] (keep/study).

Jessica: With our children in the past, if we [6] (offer/help) them, they always [7] (promise/study) hard. Nowadays if they [8] (want/talk) to us, that's fine, but I've learnt to [9] (stop/ask) them questions. I suppose they [10] (dislike/listen) to my suggestions. They [11] (seem/think) that they don't [12] (need/study) hard, but one day they'll [13] (have/find) a job.

C Complete the sentences using an *-ing* form, or *to* + infinitive, of the word in brackets ( ).

♦ You say that I've met Jessica, but I can't remember her.
I can't remember meeting (meet) Jessica.

1 Please remember that you must buy some fruit.
Please remember (buy) some fruit.

2 We wanted to open the door, but we couldn't.
We tried (open) the door.

3 John met Madonna once. He'll never forget it.
John will never forget (meet) Madonna.

4 Michelle intended to call Peter, but she forgot.
Michelle forgot (call) Peter.

5 Jenny had a headache. She took an aspirin, but it didn't help.
Jenny tried (take) an aspirin for her headache.

6 I have a special soap that will probably get your hands clean.
Try (wash) your hands with this special soap.

7 It will not be easy to do all the work today.
We'll try (finish) the work before tonight.

8 I stayed in Jasmine's flat while she was on holiday. I remembered that I had to feed her cats every day.
I remembered (feed) Jasmine's cats every day while she was on holiday.

9 Remember that you must invite Mary to the party next week.
Don't forget (invite) Mary to the party next week.

95 Purpose: for ...ing

1 Look at this dialogue:

A: *What's this machine for?*

B: *It's for cutting cloth.*

The question **What is it for?** asks about the purpose of something (what we use something for). When we describe the purpose of a thing, we use **for** + **-ing**. Here are some more examples:

This is an instrument for measuring wind speed.

This tool is used for making holes.

2 Now look at this dialogue:

A: *What does he need my camera for?*
(= Why does he need my camera?)

B: *He needs it for his work.* (= His work is the reason why he needs the camera.)

The question **What ... for?** asks about purpose. To talk about someone's purpose, we can use **for** + noun. Here are some more examples:

A: *What did he go to the shops for?*

B: *He went to the shops for some fruit.*
(= He wanted to buy some fruit.)

I buy the newspaper for the sports news.
(= ... in order to read the sports news.)

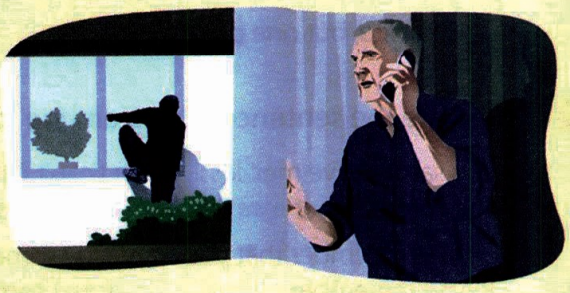
3 Now look at this dialogue:

A: *What does he need my camera for?*

B: *He needs it to take some photos.*
(= ... in order to take some photos.)

To talk about someone's purpose, we can also use **to** + infinitive (e.g. **to take**). Here are some more examples:

He went to the shops to buy some fruit.
(= ... in order to buy some fruit.)



John phoned the police to tell them about the burglar.

A Write definitions for the things in box A using one of the phrases from box B.

A

telescope — instrument
~~hammer — tool~~
fridge — appliance
kettle — appliance
thermometer — instrument
vacuum cleaner — appliance
drill — tool
speedometer — instrument
freezer — appliance



B

boil water
measure temperature
~~knock in nails~~
clean carpets
see things at a distance
keep food cold
measure speed
keep food frozen
make holes

♦ A hammer is a tool for knocking in nails.

1 A kettle .....

2 A thermometer .....

3 A vacuum cleaner .....

4 A fridge .....

5 A telescope .....

6 A speedometer .....

7 A freezer .....

8 A drill .....

B Write the dialogues using the words in brackets ( ). Use *What … for?* to make questions and *for* to make replies.

♦ A: (/did/Tom/go/to the park/?) What did Tom go to the park for?
B: (He/go/to the park/some fresh air.) He went to the park for some fresh air.

1 A: (/does/Mary/want/the money/?) .....
B: (She/want/the money/a train ticket.) .....

2 A: (/does/Raphael/want/the flour/?) .....
B: (He/want/the flour/a cake.) .....

3 A: (/did/William/go/to the butcher's/?) .....
B: (He/go/to the butcher's/some sausages.) .....

4 A: (/does/Helen/want/the polish/?) .....
B: (She/want/it/her shoes.) .....

5 A: (/did/Alice/go/to the library/?) .....
B: (She/go/to the library/a book on India.) .....

6 A: (/did/Jasmine/phone/Anna/?) .....
B: (She/phone/Anna/some advice.) .....

C Rewrite the replies from exercise B using the verbs from the box.

borrow buy (x2) clean get (x2) make

♦ Tom: He went to the park to get some fresh air.

1 Mary: .....

2 Raphael: .....

3 William: .....

4 Helen: .....

5 Alice: .....

6 Jasmine: .....

D Find the errors and rewrite the sentences correctly.

♦ This machine is for make pasta. This machine is for making pasta.

1 For what did he come? .....

2 A bus is for carry passengers. .....

3 She went to the baker's for to buy some bread. .....

4 The mayor came for give the prizes. .....

5 The woman jumped into the river to saving the child. .....

6 I'm training hard for to get fit. .....

7 This is a computer program for make three-dimensional drawings. .....

8 Can I use your pen for signing this form? .....

96 Verb + object (+ to) + infinitive

1 Look at these examples:

Laura said to Rob:

'Make some coffee please.'

We can say:

*Laura **asked Rob to make** some coffee.*

Anna said to Rose:

'Can you come to my party, Rose?'

We can say:

*Anna **invited Rose to come** to her party.*

Tom thinks Chris should see a doctor. He can say:

*I'll **persuade Chris to go** to the doctor's.*

The structure is:

VERB +	OBJECT +	TO +	INFINITIVE
She asked	*Charlotte*	*to*	*wait.*
She asked	*her*	*to*	*wait.*

We use these verbs in this structure:

tell	*force*	*teach*	
help	*allow*	*would like*	
ask	*invite*	*encourage*	+ OBJECT + TO
want	*forbid*	*persuade*	
advise	*remind*		

2 Note that the first verb can change its tense, but the second verb is always **to** + infinitive (**to make**):

*She **is asking Rob***
*She **will ask Rob*** } *to make some coffee.*
*She **has asked Rob***

Note that if we use a pronoun, we use **me**, **him**, **her**, **it**, **us**, **you**, **them** (object pronouns) after the verb:

*Laura asked **him** to make some coffee.*

3 Now look at these two sentences:

*The teacher **let Jasmine leave** school early.*
*I **made him tell** me the truth.*

Let here means 'allow', and **make** means 'force' or 'order'. **Make** and **let** are followed by an infinitive (without **to**):

	VERB +	OBJECT +	INFINITIVE
She	*let*	*Jasmine*	*leave.*

Feel, **hear**, **see** and **watch** can also be followed by an infinitive (without **to**):

*I **heard** your sister **shout** 'Fire!'*
(NOT ... ~~*to shout*~~ ...)
*Tom **saw** a car **come** round the corner.*

A Write sentences using the words in brackets ( ). Be careful to use the correct tense.

♦ (Tomorrow/I/encourage/Jessica/enter/the competition.)
Tomorrow I will encourage Jessica to enter the competition.

♦ (I was already tired, but I/force/myself/go on working.)
I was already tired, but I forced myself to go on working.

1 (Anna/teach/Mary/drive/last year.)

2 (Don't worry! Tomorrow I/persuade/my father/see/a doctor.)

3 (The boss has/forbid/his staff/wear/jeans in the office.)

4 (Last Sunday, John/invite/Michelle/come/for lunch.)

5 (Next year, the teachers/allow/the students/use/calculators in exams.)

B Complete the sentences using the words in brackets ( ).

♦ (Police officer: 'Can everyone please stay indoors?')
The police officer asked everyone to stay indoors.

1 (Jasmine: 'Remember to come home early, Tim.')
Jasmine reminded Tim .....

2 (Manager: 'You must work more quickly.')
The manager wants us .....

3 (Captain: 'Let's do our best in the game.')
The captain encouraged us .....

4 (Jo: 'Can you come to my party on Saturday?')
Jo invited me .....

C Answer the questions, changing the nouns (e.g. *Michael*) to pronouns (e.g. *him*). Be careful to use the correct tense.

♦ A: Did Nicola tell Michael to be careful?
B: Yes, she told him to be careful.

1 A: Would Kate like Peter to stay?
B: Yes, ...

2 A: Did Mrs Slater help her son to finish?
B: Yes, ...

3 A: Did the doctor advise Michael to stay in bed?
B: Yes, ...

4 A: Does Lucy allow her children to go to late-night parties?
B: Yes, ...

5 A: Did Mary remind Mark to call the office?
B: Yes, ...

D Write sentences with a similar meaning using the verb in brackets ( ).

♦ The police told everyone to leave the building. (make) The police made everyone leave the building.

1 The driver allowed the old man to travel on the bus without a ticket.
(let) .....

2 Jack told his younger brother to wash the dishes.
(make) .....

3 I don't allow people to smoke in my house or in my car!
(let) .....

E Combine the two sentences into one.

♦ Your sister shouted 'Fire!'. I heard her. I heard your sister shout 'Fire!'.

1 Tom prepared the sandwiches. Diane watched him.
Diane .....

2 The ground shook. We felt it.
We .....

3 Noah left early. Did you see him?
Did you .....

Test 1 Verbs, passives, infinitives, -ing forms

A Chris and Toby are walking in the mountains. If the words in brackets ( ) are incorrect, cross them out and rewrite them. If they're correct, put a tick (✓).

Toby: (We're getting) • ✓ lost. What shall we do?

Chris: (~~We did~~) • *We made* a mistake an hour ago. We took the wrong road.

Toby: (I've got) [1] a headache, and (I'm making) [2] more and more tired.

Chris: Try not to worry. (I got) [3] some aspirin in my bag.

Toby: It's cold! (Do you have) [4] an extra jumper?

Chris: I think we'll have to stop for the night. (It's getting) [5] dark.

Toby: What do you mean? (We haven't done) [6] a tent!

Chris: Try to stay calm. (We'll make) [7] a fire and (we'll have got) [8] a meal.

Toby: I suppose you're going (to make) [9] the shopping!

Chris: We're OK. (I've got) [10] some tea and some pasta in my bag.

Toby: What if it rains?

Chris: Stop worrying! I've got a job for you (to make) [11]. Go and find some wood.

Toby: I want (to have got) [12] a rest first!

Chris: Now (you're making) [13] me angry. Let's get on with it!

B Christine is talking to her doctor. Insert the missing words from the box.

it (x3) ~~gets~~ put ran out in down

'I'm worried about my husband. He • *gets* up very late. He never wants to go. You can't stay all your life, can you, Doctor? If the TV is on when our friends come round, he doesn't turn off. Last Saturday we ~~out~~ of milk. When we reached the supermarket, he said to me: 'I don't like your hat. Take off! Put away!' That's a strange thing to say, Doctor. I'm getting more and more worried. I don't think I can up with the situation much longer. When I try to talk to him he just says: 'Calm! I'm alright.' What shall I do?

C Look at this conversation. Make it more natural by rewriting some of it. Use the passive form and *someone*.

Anna: Well, we watched this TV programme about moving to Spain, and we decided to go. • Someone has packed our bags. We're ready to leave!

Celia: We wouldn't leave England, would we, John? [1] Someone decorated our house last month. It looks beautiful. [2] And someone is designing a summer house for the garden.

John: [3] But someone also stole our car last week. Perhaps Spain is a good idea, after all.

Celia: Anyway, I hope you two know what you're doing! Our neighbours went to France, and when they got there [4]someone hadn't built their new house! So they bought an old farmhouse instead. It was only after [5]someone repaired the windows [6]and someone mended the roof that they were happy. It took a long time.

Mike: [7]Well, someone has made our decision. [8]Someone booked our flight yesterday. [9]Someone is selling our house next month. We're on our way!

♦ Our bags *have been packed.*

1 Our house .....

2 And a summer house .....

3 But our car .....

4 their new house .....

5 their windows .....

6 and the roof .....

7 Well, our decision .....

8 Our flight .....

9 Our house .....

D **Maddie is replying to a message from a new friend. Complete her reply using the words in brackets ( ). Use the infinitive without changing it, or add *to* or change it to the *-ing* form.**

It was nice to hear from you. You asked me to tell you as much as I could about myself, so I will! To begin with, I don't like ♦ *cooking* (cook). And I hate [1] ..... (wash) up. I can't [2] ..... (drive), but I'm planning [3] ..... (learn) one day! I gave up [4] ..... (smoke) ten years ago. You don't [5] ..... (smoke), do you? What else can I [6] ..... (tell) you? Onions and old films make me [7] ..... (cry). I go [8] ..... (dance) on Sunday afternoons. And I don't mind [9] ..... (walk) in the rain. I think that's almost everything about me. Oh yes. Some time ago I decided [10] ..... (get) fit. [11] ..... (Jog) regularly makes me [12] ..... (feel) better, but I don't like [13] ..... (cycle), and I love [14] ..... (eat) chocolate! If you want me [15] ..... (continue), you'll have to write back! (But I'd rather hear about you.)

E **Will is talking to his boss. Rewrite the words in brackets ( ), adding *to* if necessary, or changing the infinitive to the *-ing* form.**

Will: You promised (give/me) a new job after two years here. ♦ *to give me*

Boss: Yes, but you must (finish/do) the job you've got. [1] .....

Will: But I would (prefer/start) something new now. [2] .....

Boss: Try (be/patient)! What did you join the company for? [3] .....

Will: I wanted (do/something) interesting, I suppose. [4] .....

Boss: And I allowed (you/do) lots of different things, didn't I? [5] .....

Will: And now you are asking (me/do) the same thing every day! [6] .....

Boss: I've seen (you/improve) so much! Just keep going a little longer. [7] .....

Will: You can't make (me/stay) in this job. [8] .....

Boss: No, I can't. But I can encourage (you/think) about the future. [9] .....

irlanguage
مرجع زبان ایرانیان

97 Zero Conditional and First Conditional

1 Look at this:

IF	+ PRESENT SIMPLE	+ PRESENT SIMPLE
If	*I eat too much,*	*I feel bad.*

(= Every time I eat too much, I feel bad.)

We use this structure (**if** + Present Simple + Present Simple) for facts that are generally true. This structure is called the Zero Conditional:

*If I **don't get** enough sleep, I **feel** tired.*

(= Every time I don't get enough sleep, I feel tired.)

*If you **want** to become a doctor, you **have** to study hard.* (= Anyone who wants to become a doctor has to study hard.)

2 We can say the same thing by reversing the two parts of the sentence:

PRESENT SIMPLE	+ IF	+ PRESENT SIMPLE
I feel bad	*if*	*I eat too much.*

Note that we do not use a comma (,) before **if**.

3 Now look at this:

IF	PRESENT SIMPLE +	+ WILL/WON'T
If	*I'm late,*	*she'll be angry.*

(= Perhaps I will be late; then she'll be angry.)

We use this structure (**if** + Present Simple + **will/won't**) to talk about things that may happen in the future. The verb after **if** is Present Simple, but we use it for a possible future action or situation; we use **will/won't** + verb for the result. This structure is called the First Conditional:

	FUTURE POSSIBILITY	+ RESULT
If	*we don't hurry,*	*we won't finish.*

4 We can reverse the order:

She'll be angry if I'm late.

We won't finish if we don't hurry.

5 We do not use ***will/won't*** after ***if***:

NOT ~~*If I will be late, she'll be angry.*~~

A Rewrite these sentences about various types of people using *if* + Present Simple + Present Simple. Make *you* the subject of both parts of the sentence.

♦ Doctors treat people who are ill.
If you're a doctor, you treat people who are ill.

1 Vegetarians don't eat meat.
If you're a vegetarian, ...

2 People who live in a hot country don't like cold weather.
If you live .....

3 Teachers have to work very hard.
If you're a teacher, ...

4 People who do a lot of exercise stay fit and healthy.
If you .....

5 Mechanics understand engines.
If you're a .....

6 People who read the news know what's happening in the world.
If you .....

B **Complete these sentences with *if* + Present Simple + *will/won't*, using the words in brackets ( ). Sometimes you do not need to change the words in brackets.**

♦ If it rains (it/rain), we won't go (we/not/go) out.

1 If _____ (the weather/be) nice tomorrow, _____ (we/drive) to the coast.

2 If _____ (she/post) the parcel now, _____ (they/receive) it tomorrow.

3 _____ (Fiona/be) angry if _____ (John/arrive) late again.

4 _____ (I/go) to their party if _____ (I/have) enough time.

5 If _____ (she/not/pass) this exam, _____ (she/not/get) the job that she wants.

6 _____ (you/learn) a lot if _____ (you/take) this course.

7 If _____ (I/get) a ticket, _____ (I/go) to the concert.

8 _____ (I/buy) that phone if _____ (it/not/cost) too much.

9 If _____ (you/run) very fast, _____ (you/catch) the bus.

10 _____ (I/go) to the doctor's if _____ (I/not/feel) better tomorrow.

11 If _____ (they/win) this game, _____ (they/be) the champions.

C **Complete the dialogues with the Present Simple or *will/won't* forms of the words in brackets ( ). Sometimes you do not need to change the words in brackets.**

♦ **A:** We must be at the airport at two o'clock.
B: Well, if we take (we/take) a taxi at one o'clock, we won't be (we/not/be) late.

1 **A:** I'd like a newspaper.
B: Well, _____ (I/buy) one for you if _____ (I/go) to the shop later.

2 **A:** Has John called yet?
B: No, and if _____ (he/not/call) this afternoon, _____ (I/call) him this evening.

3 **A:** Is Fiona there, please?
B: No, but if _____ (you/want) to leave a message, _____ (I/give) it to her.

4 **A:** Is Tim going to pass his exam?
B: Well, _____ (he/fail) if _____ (he/not/work) harder.

5 **A:** Could I have some information about this year's concerts, please?
B: Yes, if _____ (you/give me) your email, _____ (I/send) it to you.

98 Second Conditional

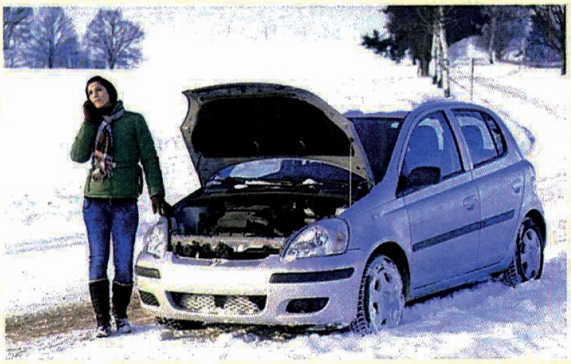
1 Look at this sentence:

*If Amy Winehouse **was** alive today, she **would** be over 30 years old.*

Winehouse isn't alive today. The sentence imagines something that is not true. The verb after **if** is Past Simple, but it refers to the present. This structure is called the Second Conditional:

IF +	PAST SIMPLE	+ WOULD (OR 'D)
If	*he worked harder,*	*he would do better.*

Another example is someone who doesn't have enough money to buy a new car and says:



I'd buy a new car if I had enough money.

Note that we do not use a comma (,) before **if**.

2 We can use the same type of sentence to talk about the future:

IF +	PAST SIMPLE	+ WOULD (OR 'D)
If	*I won a lot of money,*	*I'd buy a big house.*

This sentence describes an unlikely future situation: it is unlikely that I will win a lot of money.

3 We can use **wish** to say that we want something to be different from how it is now. Note that the verb after **wish** is past (e.g. **could**, **was**, **had**):



*She **wishes** (that) her dog **could** talk.*

*Mary **wishes** she **had** enough money for a new dress.*

*I **wish** I **was** very rich.*

4 After **if** and after **wish**, we sometimes use **I/he/she/it** with **were**:

*If she **were** (OR was) alive today, ...*

*I **wish** Amy Winehouse **were** (OR was) still alive.*

Notice also the expression **if I were you,** when you give someone advice:

If I were you, I'd go to the police.
(NOT ~~*If I was you, ...*~~)

A Complete these sentences using the words in brackets.

- ♦ If Ellie lived in Brighton, she *would be* (she/be) near her parents.
- ♦ Jacob would read more if *he didn't work* (he/not/work) so hard.

1 If Elizabeth didn't have to work in the evenings, _____ (she/go) to concerts.

2 Lucy wouldn't go to work by car if _____ (she/live) near a train station.

3 Oliver wouldn't be overweight if _____ (he/not/eat) so much.

4 If Peter didn't live in a flat, _____ (he/have) a dog.

5 Grace would definitely learn French if _____ (she/get) a job in France.

6 If Mark wanted to be healthy, _____ (he/not/smoke).

B Look at the predictions for the next few years and complete the sentences.

It is unlikely that astronauts will visit Mars.
~~It is unlikely that they will stop making weapons.~~
It is unlikely that doctors will find a cure for cancer.
It is unlikely that they will discover oil in Ireland.
It is unlikely that everyone will stop using plastic.

♦ If they stopped making weapons, the world would be safer.

1 If _____, the Irish would be very happy.

2 If _____, this terrible disease would disappear.

3 If _____, our rivers would be much cleaner.

4 If _____, we would learn a lot about the planet.

C A manager tells people why they can't have a job. Write the people's thoughts with *I wish*.

♦ You don't have a driving licence, so you can't have the job.
I wish I had a driving licence.

♦ You can't have the job because you can't type.
I wish I could type.

1 You can't have the job because you don't have good eyesight.
I wish _____

2 You can't speak German, so you can't have the job.
I wish _____

3 You don't have a degree, so you can't have the job.
I wish _____

4 You can't have the job because you are not 18 years old.
I wish _____

D Imagine how life nowadays could be better. Complete the sentences using the words in brackets ( ) and any other words you need.

♦ People don't do enough exercise, so there is a lot of heart disease.
(more, less) If people did more exercise, there would be less heart disease.

1 There are too many cars. The city is very polluted.
(fewer) I wish there _____, then the city would be less polluted.

2 People drive too fast, so there are a lot of accidents.
(more slowly) I wish people _____, then there would be fewer accidents.

3 People watch too much TV, so they don't have much time for reading.
(more) If people watched less TV, they _____.

4 Children have bad teeth because they eat too many sweets.
(fewer) Children would have better teeth if they _____.

5 Not enough people travel by bus, so the roads are crowded.
(more) I wish _____, then the roads would be less crowded.

6 People haven't got enough time to cook, so they eat a lot of fast food.
(more, less) If people _____, they _____.

99 Third Conditional

1 Look at this sentence:

*If Amy Winehouse **had died** in 2013, she **would have been** 30 years old.*

Winehouse did not in fact die in 2013. She died before she was 30 years old. The sentence imagines something that did not happen in the past. This structure is called the Third Conditional:

IF + PAST PERFECT + WOULD HAVE (OR 'D HAVE) + PAST PARTICIPLE

If he had tried harder, he would have won.

Here is another example:

*If Jasmine **had come** on her usual train, I **would have seen** her.* (= She didn't come on her usual train, so I didn't see her.)

Notice how we can also use the negative forms **wouldn't have** and **hadn't**:

*John F. Kennedy **wouldn't have died in 1963** if he **hadn't gone** to Dallas.* (= Kennedy died in 1963 because he went to Dallas, but this sentence imagines the opposite.)

*I would have phoned you if I **hadn't lost** your phone number.* (= I didn't phone you because I lost your phone number.)

*I **wouldn't have gone** to the museum if I had known it was shut.* (= I went to the museum because I didn't know it was shut.)

2 We can use **wish + had done** to talk about the past when we are sorry that something didn't happen, and we imagine that it did:



*He **wishes** he **hadn't driven** so fast.* (= He drove fast and now he's sorry about it.)

*I woke up very late this morning. I **wish** I **had gone** to bed earlier last night.*

We can use a negative form (**wish ... hadn't done**) to say that we are sorry that something did happen:

*Many people **wish** that John F. Kennedy **hadn't gone** to Dallas.* (= Many people are sorry that John F. Kennedy went to Dallas.)

A Read this story about Ellen and write sentences using the words in brackets ( ).

In May 2014 Ellen lost her job in London. She didn't have much money in the bank, so she was very worried. She looked in the newspapers and she saw an advertisement for a job as a translator from German into English. She didn't speak German very well, so she didn't apply for it. In June, she heard about some teaching jobs abroad because a friend phoned to tell her about them. She phoned the company, and they asked her to go for an interview with the director. Ellen thought the interview went badly, but in fact the director was happy with the interview and offered Ellen a job in Spain. However, Ellen couldn't start at once because she didn't know any Spanish. She took a course to learn the language. She was good at languages and she made rapid progress. So, by September she had a new job, and she still had a little money left in the bank.

♦ (If Ellen/have/a lot of money in the bank, she/not/be/so worried.)
If Ellen had had a lot of money in the bank, she wouldn't have been so worried.

♦ (If she/not/search/online, she/not/see/the advertisement.)
If she hadn't searched online, she wouldn't have seen the advertisement.

1 (If she/speak/German very well, she/apply/for the job.)

.....

2 (If her friend/not/call, she/not/hear/about the teaching jobs.)

.....

3 (If she/not/contact/the company, they/not/ask/her to go for an interview.)

.....

4 (If the interview/go/badly, the director/not/offer/Ellen a job.)

.....

5 (If Ellen/know/some Spanish, she/start/at once.)

.....

6 (If she/not/be/good at languages, she/not/make/rapid progress.)

.....

B **Complete the sentences using the information in brackets ( ).**

♦ (Sam didn't get the job as a translator because he failed the exam.)
Sam *would have got* the job as a translator if he *had* not *failed* the exam.

1 (Oliver lost our phone number, so he didn't call us.)
If Oliver ..... not ..... phone number, he ..... us.

2 (Ellie broke her leg, so she didn't go on holiday.)
If Ellie ..... not ..... her leg, she ..... on holiday.

3 (We didn't make a cake because we forgot to buy any eggs.)
We ..... a cake if we ..... not ..... to buy some eggs.

C **Write sentences about these people who are sorry about things they did in the past. Use *wish* or *wishes*.**

♦ Owen wasted his time at school; now he's sorry.
Owen wishes he hadn't wasted his time at school.

1 I didn't tell the truth; now I'm sorry.
I wish .....

2 John borrowed some money from his mother; now he's sorry.
John .....

3 Mary didn't get up early; now she's sorry.
Mary .....

4 Peter didn't go to the party; now he's sorry.
Peter .....

5 I didn't send Charlotte a birthday card; now I'm sorry.
I .....

6 Fiona didn't help her sister; now she's sorry.

.....

7 He shouted at the children; now he's sorry.

.....

100 Reported speech (1)

1 When we report something that somebody said earlier, we usually change the tense of the verb like this:

ACTUAL WORDS		REPORTED SPEECH
Present Simple	→	*Past Simple*
'I live in a small flat,' she said.		*She said (that) she lived in a small flat.*
Present Continuous	→	*Past Continuous*
'I'm leaving on Tuesday,' I said.		*I said (that) I was leaving on Tuesday.*
Past Simple *Present Perfect*	→	*Past Perfect*
'I learnt a lot,' he said.		*He said (that) he had learnt a lot.*
'Mr Jackson has left,' she said.		*She said (that) Mr Jackson had left.*
will	→	*would*
'I'll help you,' she said.		*She said (that) she would help me.*
am/is/are going to	→	*was/were going to*
'We're going to be late,' I said.		*I said (that) we were going to be late.*
can	→	*could*
'I can't find my money,' he said.		*He said (that) he couldn't find his money.*

2 Note that it is not necessary to use **that** in reported speech:

*She said (**that**) she knew the answer.*

3 Compare **say** and **tell** in these sentences:

*She **said** (that) she lived in a small flat.*

*She **told me** (that) she lived in a small flat.*

Note that with **say** we do not mention the person.

She said (that) she was going to be late.
(NOT ~~*She said me she was ...*~~)

I said that I disagreed with him.
(NOT ~~*I said him that I ...*~~)

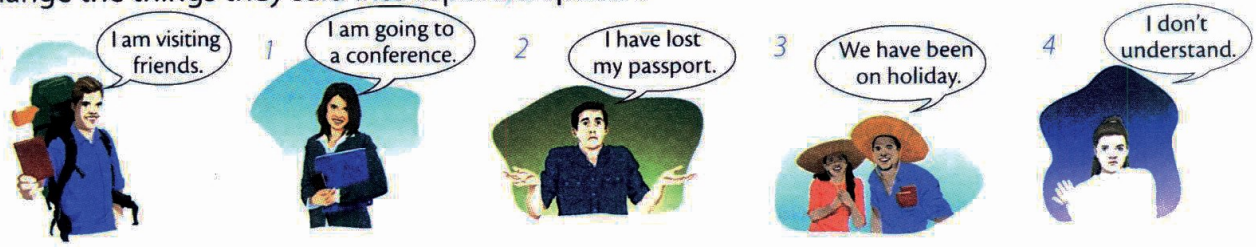
Note that with **tell** we must mention the person.

*He told **me** (that) he was happy.*
(NOT ~~*He told he was happy.*~~)

*He told **me** that he would pay me immediately.*
(NOT ~~*He told that he would pay me immediately.*~~)

*She told **Jacob** (that) she was going to meet someone.*
(NOT ~~*She told that she was going to meet someone.*~~)

A Look at these pictures of people coming through passport control at an airport. Change the things they said into reported speech.



♦ He said that he was visiting friends.

1 She said .....

2 He said .....

3 They said .....

4 She said .....

B Read this conversation and then report what Claudia and Nicole said.

Nicole: How long have you been in France?
Claudia: Six weeks.
Nicole: Are you enjoying your stay?
Claudia: Yes, I'm enjoying it a lot.
Nicole: Have you been here before?
Claudia: Yes. I've been to France many times.
Nicole: What are you doing here?
Claudia: I'm on holiday.
Nicole: Are you staying in a hotel?
Claudia: No, I'm staying with some friends.
Nicole: Where do they live?
Claudia: They have a flat in the city centre.
Nicole: How long are you staying?
Claudia: I'm leaving in March.
Nicole: Can you speak French very well?
Claudia: No, I can't. I'm going to have some lessons.
Nicole: I'll teach you.



♦ Claudia said (that) she had been in France for six weeks.
1 Claudia said ..... her stay a lot.
2 Claudia said ..... to France many times.
3 Claudia said ..... on holiday.
4 She said ..... with some friends.
5 She said ..... a flat in the city centre.
6 She said ..... in March.
7 She said ..... French very well.
8 She said ..... some lessons.
9 Nicole said ..... Claudia.

C Complete the sentences with *said* or *told*.

♦ She *said* ..... she wasn't feeling very well.
1 Alex ..... me that he would buy the tickets.
2 They ..... that the train was going to be late.
3 She ..... him that she was very angry with him.
4 She ..... him that she couldn't help him.
5 Who ..... you that I was leaving? It's not true!
6 They ..... us that they were leaving in the morning.
7 He ..... that he didn't know what was wrong with the car.
8 She ..... she had four sisters.
9 She ..... me that Tom worked in a factory.
10 He ..... me that he was a doctor, but he ..... Anna that he was a dentist.

101 Reported speech (2)

1 Requests

There are different ways to make a request, e.g.:

Sarah: *Please wait a minute, Tom.*
Sarah: *Will you wait a minute, please?*
Sarah: *Tom, could you wait a minute, please?*

We can report all of these requests in the same way, using **asked**:

*Sarah **asked** Tom to wait a minute.*

We do not usually use **please** in a reported question.

2 Orders

There are different ways to give an order:

'Stand up, John.'
'You must work harder.'

We can report orders like this, using told:

*He **told** John to stand up.*
*He **told** me to work harder.*

3 Advice

We can give advice like this:

'You ought to stay in bed, Peter.'
'You should stop smoking, John.'

We can report advice like this, using advised:

*He **advised** Peter to stay in bed.*
*She **advised** John to stop smoking.*

4 In reported speech, we use **ask**, **tell** and **advise** like this:

VERB	+ OBJECT	+ TO	+ INFINITIVE
Sarah	*asked*	*Tom*	*to wait.*
She	*told*	*him*	*to stand.*
He	*advised*	*Jasmine*	*to stop smoking.*

Here is a list of common verbs that we use in this structure:

advise	*ask*	*tell*	*order*
persuade	*remind*	*forbid*	*warn*

Examples:

I'll remind them to come early.
I advised them to go to the police.

We cannot use **say** in this structure:

She said (that) he should wait.
(NOT ~~*She said him to wait.*~~)

5 To report a negative request, order, etc. (e.g. *'Don't laugh'*), we use **not** + **to** + infinitive:

	VERB	+ OBJECT	+ NOT + TO + INFINITIVE
Sara	*told*	*Tom*	***not to** laugh.*
They	*warned*	*Owen*	***not to borrow** money.*
I	*reminded*	*John*	***not to be** late.*

A Rewrite the sentences using an object + *to* + infinitive.

♦ 'Make some coffee please, Rob.'
Laura asked Rob to make some coffee.

1 'You must do the homework soon, Jasmine.'
She told .....

2 'Remember to buy a map, Anna.'
He reminded .....

3 'You should see a doctor, Mrs Clark.'
He advised .....

4 'Keep all the windows closed, William.'
They warned .....

5 'Go home, Paul.'
Francis told .....

B Report what these people said using the words in brackets ( ) and the Past Simple.

Jacob said, 'Anna, would you lend me £5, please?'
(ask) *Jacob asked Anna to lend him £5.*

1 I said to John, 'Remember to call Ellie.'
(remind) .....

2 'You must wash your hands, children,' the teacher said.
(tell) .....

3 'Mary, please lend me your bicycle pump,' said Paul.
(ask) .....

4 She said, 'Children, stay away from the water.'
(warn) .....

5 'You should see a lawyer,' the police officer said to Mark.
(advise) .....

C Complete the conversations using the words in brackets ( ). You will also need a pronoun (e.g. *me, him, them*) and the word *not*. Use the Past Simple.

A: Did you tell the children to clean the car? B: (Yes, but I/tell/to use too much water.)
B: *Yes, but I told them not to use too much water.*

1 A: Did you ask William to come to the meeting? B: (Yes, and I/tell/to be late.)
B: .....

2 A: Did the doctor tell Lucy to keep warm? B: (Yes, and she/warn/to go outside the house.)
B: .....

3 A: Did you ask Michael to go to the butcher's? B: (Yes, and I/tell/to forget the bacon.)
B: .....

4 A: Did the police officer advise everyone to stay indoors? B: (Yes, and he/tell/to go near the windows.)
B: .....

5 A: Did the dentist advise you to eat carefully? B: (Yes, and she particularly/warn/to eat nuts.)
B: .....

D Complete the sentences using the words in the box.

advise ask order remind ~~tell~~ warn

The official said to George, 'Go to Room 23.' The official *told him to go* ..... to Room 23.

1 'Girls, you mustn't touch these wires. It can be dangerous,' said the guide.
The guide ..... the wires.

2 'The bus is all right, Anna, but it's better for you to take the train,' we said.
We ..... the train.

3 'Bring the money, Simon. Don't forget,' Mrs Walters said.
Mrs Walters ..... the money.

4 'This is the police,' the voice said. 'Spectators must leave at once.'
The police ..... at once.

5 I said, 'Please come in, Mr Tufnell.'
I ..... in.

102 Reported questions

1 'Yes/no' questions have a form of **be** (e.g. **is**, **are**) or an auxiliary verb (e.g. **can**, **do**, **have**) that goes before the subject:

	SUBJECT	
'Are	*they*	*English?'*
'Can	*John*	*type?'*

We report these questions with **ask if/whether**:

	SUBJECT	
She asked if	*they*	***were** English.*
She asked if	*John*	***could** type.*

OR:

*She asked **whether** they **were** English.*
*She asked **whether** John **could** type.*

Note that in a reported question we do not put **be** or an auxiliary before the subject (NOT ~~*She asked were they English.*~~)

2 Many questions begin with a question word (**Who**, **What**, **Where**, etc.):

	SUBJECT	
'Where does	*Anna*	*live?'*
'Why has	*Jasmine*	*gone?'*

We report these questions with **ask**:

	SUBJECT	
*They asked **where***	*Anna*	*lived.*
*She asked **why***	*Jasmine*	*had gone?'*

3 We can also **ask someone something**:

*The manager asked **me** if I could type.*
*They asked **him** where Sarah lived.*

4 Note that when we report a question that somebody asked earlier, we usually change the tense of the verb:

'Can John swim?'
*He asked if John **could** swim.*

The most common tense changes are:

- Present → Past:
  am/is → was **are → were**
  is living → was living **live → lived**
- Present Perfect → Past Perfect:
  has gone → had gone
- Past Simple → Past Perfect:
  arrived → had arrived
- Modals:
  will → would **can → could**

We often also change other words, for example:

*'Have **you** finished, Mike?'*
*She asked Mike if **he** had finished.*

5 We can use wanted to know and wondered instead of asked:

*She **wanted to know** if they were English.*
(OR *She wanted to know **whether** they were English.*)
*She **wondered** why Jasmine had gone.*

A Change each sentence into reported speech or a direct question by filling in the gaps. End each sentence with a full stop (.) or a question mark (?).

♦ (Did they come?) She asked if ..... they had come .....
♦ (I asked him where he worked.) Where ..... do you work? .....
1 (Do you speak English?) They asked me ..... I spoke English .....
2 (I wanted to know why he had taken my key.) ..... did you take my key .....
3 (How many people came to the party?) I asked ..... people had come to the party .....
4 (Does Anna work on Saturdays?) I asked ..... Anna worked on Saturdays .....
5 (Can we meet tomorrow?) I asked ..... we could meet tomorrow .....
6 (I asked what he had done.) ..... has he done .....

7 (When are your parents leaving?) I asked her _____ her parents were leaving _____

8 (Why has Jasmine gone home?) I asked _____ Jasmine had gone home _____

9 (Where do you go for your holidays?) I wanted to know _____ they went for their holidays _____

10 (Is William coming to the party, Jasmine?) I asked Jasmine _____ William was coming to the party _____

B **Use the words in brackets ( ) to write questions. Then complete the reported questions.**

♦ (Where/have/Maria/go/?) Question: Where has Maria gone? _____

Reported question: I asked where Maria had gone. _____

1 (Do/James/often/play/football/?) Question: _____

Reported question: I wondered if _____

2 (What/have/the children/eat/?) Question: _____

Reported question: She wanted to know _____

3 (Where/be/Mark/going/?) Question: _____

Reported question: I asked _____

4 (When/will/the next bus/leave/?) Question: _____

Reported question: We wanted to know _____

5 (Have/Anna/see/the film/?) Question: _____

Reported question: Tom asked _____

C **Steve Ellis robbed a bank and the police believe that Alan Reeves helped him. Complete what Reeves told the police officer using the questions from the box.**

♦ ~~How long have you been out of prison?~~

1 Have you worked since then?
2 Does your sister give you money?
3 Who else gives you money?
4 Do you know Steve Ellis?
5 How long have you known Steve?
6 Have you seen Steve recently?

♦ I asked him how long he had been out of prison, and he replied that he had left prison six months ago.

1 Then I asked him _____. He told me that he hadn't found a job.

2 I asked him _____, and he said she did give him some money, but not very much.

3 Then I asked him _____. He replied that nobody else did.

4 I asked him _____, and he said that he and Steve were friends.

5 So I asked him _____ and he said that he had known him for six years.

6 Then I asked him _____, and he said that he couldn't remember.

Test J Conditionals and reported speech

A **Antonio and Ellie are having a break at work. Complete their conversation with the verbs in brackets ( ) in the right tenses. Use contracted forms, if they sound more natural.**

Antonio: I feel old and useless.

Ellie: You're OK. Don't worry so much.

Antonio: If I ♦ *was* (be) in a different job, I might be happier.

Ellie: You always talk like this if you [1] ..... (be) tired.

Antonio: Yes, but if I had applied for other jobs, I [2] ..... (get) something more interesting by now. I wouldn't be so tired.

Ellie: If I [3] ..... (be) you, I'd take a holiday.

Antonio: I wish I [4] ..... (have) enough money.

Ellie: If you saved up, you [5] ..... (be) able to have holidays. We've had this conversation before, haven't we?

Antonio: Yes, I know. But if I [6] ..... (not talk) to you, I won't find an answer.

Ellie: I wish I [7] ..... (can) help you more.

Antonio: But I would have stopped work completely if I [8] ..... (not met) you, Ellie!

Ellie: If people [9] ..... (not speak) to each other, they lose hope. That's my opinion. What makes you happy, anyway?

Antonio: I wish I [10] ..... (know). The only thing I know is that I [11] ..... (sing) if I'm happy. Does that help?

Ellie: Perhaps. Where do you sing?

Antonio: In the shower mostly.

Ellie: Perhaps you [12] ..... (be) happier if you got a job in music?

Antonio: Perhaps. But I have to get back to work. I'll talk to you later.

B **Peter is making a political speech in the town centre. Improve his speech by using Second and Third Conditionals instead of the underlined text.**

'Please listen to me. ♦We don't work together, so we don't succeed. [1]You didn't vote for me at the last election, so your lives have not improved. Don't go away. I know it's raining! [2]Churchill isn't alive today. [3]Life isn't better, and he isn't our Prime Minister. Come back, sir! I haven't finished. [4]Our teachers aren't happy because our schools are short of money. [5]I won't become Prime Minister, so I won't give every child a new phone. [6]I didn't bring my wife with me today. [7]She isn't here because she's busy with her own work.'

♦ If *we worked together, we would succeed.*

1 If you .....

2 I wish Churchill .....

3 Life would .....

4 Our teachers would .....

5 If I .....

6 I wish I .....

7 If she wasn't .....

C Luke's parents got divorced ten years ago. Luke has just met his father, William, for the first time in five years. In this conversation, he is telling his girlfriend what his father said. Report it.

What William said:

♦ ~~'Are you living on your own?'~~
1 'Please get enough sleep.'
2 'You should get some qualifications.'
3 'Don't take any drugs.'
4 'Why did Paul leave the flat?'
5 'Where do you work?'
6 'Please give me your new address there.'

Michelle: What did he say?
Luke: ♦ (ask) He asked me if I was living on my own.
Michelle: None of his business! What else?
Luke: [1](advise) .....
Michelle: What does he think you've been doing for five years? What about college?
Luke: [2](tell) .....
Michelle: Did he get any himself? Anything else?
Luke: [3](warn) .....
Michelle: I suppose that's sensible. Did he say anything about your friend Paul?
Luke: [4](ask) .....
Michelle: Did you talk about work?
Luke: [5](ask) .....
Michelle: So you told him about the job in Sheffield?
Luke: Yes and [6](persuade) .....

D Now use William's report to his second wife to write what Luke actually said.

William's report:

♦ ~~He said I didn't look very well.~~
1 He said he would give me the name of his doctor.
2 He told me to eat more fruit.
3 He told me he was living in a flat on his own.
4 He said he had tried sharing with his friend, Paul, but Paul had left.
5 He said he was going to live in Sheffield.

Luke: ♦ You don't look very well.
William: I'm alright actually.
Luke: [1] .....
William: But I'm never ill.
Luke: [2] .....
William: Perhaps. Anyway, what are you doing these days?
Luke: [3] .....
William: Don't you get lonely?
Luke: [4] .....
William: Really? What are you going to do next, anyway?
Luke: [5] .....

103 And, but, so, both ... and, either, etc.

1 We use **and** and **both ... and** to link two similar ideas in one sentence:

She is tired. *She is hungry.*

*She is tired **and** hungry.*
*She is **both** tired **and** hungry.*
*We found **both** our tickets **and** our money.*

2 We use **but** to contrast two different ideas:

He swims. He doesn't play tennis.
*He swims, **but** he doesn't play tennis.*
*I live in Bristol, **but** I work in London.*

3 We use **so** to talk about the result of something (see **Unit 104**); it links two actions (= and therefore ...):

SITUATION:	RESULT:
I'm tired.	*I'm going to bed.*

*I'm tired, **so** I'm going to bed.*
*They were late, **so** they missed the train.*

4 We use **or** and **either ... or** to talk about two possibilities:

POSSIBILITY A:	POSSIBILITY B:
She's French.	*She's Swiss.*

*She's French **or** Swiss.*
*She's **either** French **or** Swiss.*
*That man is **either** a footballer **or** an actor.*
*I never work all day. I work **either** in the morning **or** in the afternoon.*

5 We use **neither ... nor** to put two negative statements together:

Peter didn't come. *Jess didn't come.*

*Neither Peter **nor** Jess came.*

The verb form (**came**) is positive, because **neither ... nor** makes the sentence negative:

NOT ~~*Neither Peter nor Jess didn't come.*~~

6 When we talk about two things, we can also use **both**, **either** and **neither** like this:

both / either / neither } *of* { *the / my / his / these* } PLURAL NOUN

PLURAL VERB

*Both of these suitcases **are** heavy.*

*I haven't seen **either of the films**.*

SINGULAR OR PLURAL VERB

*Neither of his sisters **was/were** there.*

We can also say:

both/either/neither + of + them/us

*He has two cars, but **neither of them** works.*

A Complete the second halves of the sentences with *but* or *so*.

♦ The film was very long, but it was interesting.
so we got home late.

1 The restaurant is very expensive, ... the food is terrible.
..... only rich people go there.

2 I'm studying hard, ... I don't have much free time.
..... I'm not making much progress.

3 I've got her email address, ... I can write to her.
..... I haven't got her mobile number.

4 We wanted to swim, ... we went to the seaside.
..... the sea was too cold.

5 They didn't have any money, ... they wanted to eat in a restaurant.
..... they couldn't go to a restaurant.

6 I lost my bag, ... I went to the police station.
..... I found £10 in my pocket.

B Combine these sentences with *both … and.*

♦ Jasmine owns a shop. She owns a restaurant. Jasmine owns both a shop and a restaurant.

1 This restaurant is cheap. It is good.

2 Jo bought a dress. She bought a jumper.

3 They play golf. They play tennis.

4 The film was funny. It was exciting.

C Now combine these sentences with *either … or.*

♦ POSSIBILITY A: She's at the office. POSSIBILITY B: She's at the airport.
She's either at the office or at the airport.

1 POSSIBILITY A: Paul's at home. POSSIBILITY B: Paul's at the gym.

2 POSSIBILITY A: The shop is in East Street. POSSIBILITY B: The shop is in Fox Street.

3 POSSIBILITY A: Her father is a doctor. POSSIBILITY B: Her father is a dentist.

4 POSSIBILITY A: The museum is in Oxford. POSSIBILITY B: The museum is in Bath.

D Now combine these sentences with *neither … nor.*

♦ Chris didn't have time to take a holiday. Michelle didn't have time to take a holiday.
Neither Chris nor Michelle had time to take a holiday.

1 The bus didn't arrive on time. The train didn't arrive on time.

2 David doesn't play tennis. Mike doesn't play tennis.

3 The restaurants aren't good. The hotels aren't good.

4 The English team didn't play well. The Scottish team didn't play well.

Complete the sentences with *both/either/neither + of + us/them* (e.g. *neither of us*).

♦ I went to the concert with Mary, but neither of us enjoyed it very much because it was a bit boring.

1 There are two flights we can catch to New York. Both flights cost the same amount, so we can choose _____.

2 I played two games against Harry, and I lost _____ because he is a much better player than me.

3 I saw Jasmine and Alice walking down the street and I waved at them, but _____ saw me because they were talking.

4 I looked at George, and George looked at me. Then _____ started to laugh because it was such a funny situation.

5 A man spoke to us but _____ could understand him, so we didn't answer.

6 Tim and I wanted to go to the game, but _____ could get tickets, so we watched it on TV.

104 Because, in case, so, so that

1 We use **because** to give the reason for something:

	REASON
Jack is in bed	*because he's got the flu.*

*We couldn't go out **because** the weather was terrible.*

*I took a taxi **because** I was in a hurry.*

We use **because of** with a noun (e.g. **flu**, **weather**, **noise**):

	REASON
Jack is in bed	*because of his flu.*

*We couldn't go out **because of** the storm.*

*I couldn't sleep **because of** the noise.*

2 We use **in case** when the reason is something that might happen:

	REASON
I'm taking an umbrella	*in case it rains.*

(= I'm taking an umbrella because it might rain.)

*I'll phone John, **in case** he wants to come with us.* (= ... because he might want to come with us.)

3 We use **so** to talk about the result of something:

	RESULT
I was in a hurry	*so I took a taxi.*

*Jack's got the flu **so** he's in bed.*

*The weather was terrible **so** we couldn't go out.*

*My neighbours were having a party and making a lot of noise **so** I couldn't sleep.*

4 We use **so that** to talk about the purpose of an action:

	PURPOSE
I took a taxi	*so that I would arrive on time.*

*I listen to the news in the morning **so that** I know what's happening in the world.*

*Tom goes jogging every day **so that** he'll stay fit.*

*I took a taxi **so that** my friends would not have to wait for me.*

(We can also use **to** + infinitive to talk about purpose; see **Unit 95**.)

A Write each sentence in a different way using the words given.

♦ Tom didn't want to go out because he had a cold.
Tom didn't want to go out ..... because of his cold .....

♦ Take some money because you might need to take a taxi.
Take some money ..... in case you need to take a taxi .....

♦ John and I asked for a drink because we were thirsty.
John and I were thirsty ..... so we asked for a drink .....

1 Mary went to bed because she was tired.
..... so .....

2 I couldn't sleep because it was so hot.
..... the heat.

3 Charlotte doesn't like apples so she doesn't eat them.
..... because .....

4 The streets were crowded because of the football match.
..... there was a football match.

5 I'll give Jasmine a key to the house because she might get home before me.
..... in case .....

B Complete the sentences with *because*, *in case* or *so*, and a phrase from the box. Use each phrase once.

I'll take a book to read	he lost his passport
I want to lose weight	his wife was ill
she's at home	more people come to the party
~~they had to wait for the next one~~	

♦ They missed one bus *so they had to wait for the next one.*

1 I don't know where my sister is, but I'll try phoning her .....

2 I'm eating less these days .....

3 Peter had trouble at the airport .....

4 It's a long journey .....

5 We've bought more food .....

6 Mr Smith didn't go to the meeting .....

C Write out complete sentences using the words in brackets ( ), making any necessary changes and including *so that*.

♦ (Mark/go/swimming every day/he can stay healthy.)
Mark *goes swimming every day so that he can stay healthy.*

1 (Last week, my brother/lend/me £60/I could buy some new trainers.)
.....

2 (Last month, the Government/pass/new traffic laws/there will be fewer accidents.)
.....

3 (Our school has/open/a new library/we can have more books.)
.....

4 (Anna always/write/everything in her diary/she doesn't forget her appointments.)
.....

5 (Last Friday, we/leave/home early/we could avoid the morning traffic.)
.....

D If the sentence is correct, put a tick (✓). If it is incorrect cross out any incorrect words and, if necessary, write in the correct word.

♦ A: Why are they tired? ✓
B: Because ~~that~~ their long journey. *of*

1 I can't come tomorrow, so that I came today. .....

2 Take a sandwich with you in case you get hungry. .....

3 Julie had to go to the shops so she needed something for lunch. .....

4 A: Good morning. I've come because of my back hurts. .....
B: You mean you've come so a check-up? ..... O.K. But we're very busy today so you'll have to wait about an hour. .....

105 Since, as, for

1 We can use **because**, **since** and **as** to express a reason for something. Normally we use **because** when the reason has not been mentioned previously; the reason usually comes in second place:

*We stayed at home **because** Tom was ill.*

If the conversation has already mentioned that Tom was ill, we normally express the reason with **since** or **as**; the reason usually comes in first place:

*Tom wasn't feeling well. **Since/As** Tom was ill, we stayed at home.*

2 We can use **for** to express purpose or reason with different structures. We can use it with a noun to express a purpose:

*I went to the shops **for some cheese**.*
*We stopped **for a drink**.*

When the action and the purpose involve different people, we express this with **for** and a noun or pronoun followed by the infinitive with **to**:

*We stopped **for the children** to have a drink.*
*I waited **for him** to finish his homework.*

We can use **for** with a noun or an **-ing** form to give the reason for a reaction:

*The teacher sent Charlotte home **for cheating**.*
*My cousin was arrested **for robbery**.*
*Johnson is in prison **for dangerous driving**.*
*Sam won a medal **for saving a young boy**.*

Here the reason happens before the reaction.

3 You will sometimes see **for** used in a way similar to **because**:

*Diane was pleased to receive the books, **for** she was fond of reading.*

However, this is not common and you can always use **because** in these cases.

4 We can also use prepositions **due to** and **owing to** with a noun to express a reason:

*Many people arrived late **due to/owing to** the heavy rain.*
__Due to/Owing to__ ~~the road~~ repairs, we had to take a different route.

If we use these prepositions with a clause, we have to include **the fact that**:

*The concert was cancelled **due to/owing to the fact that** the pianist had appendicitis.*

Note that we can use noun + **be** + **due to** + noun:

*The delay **was due to fog**.*

We cannot use **owing to** in this way:

NOT ~~*The delay was owing to fog.*~~

Here the reason happens before the action or fact.

A Complete the sentences with an expression from the box.

due to a problem with the brakes
for the best drawing
since Carolyn's a vegetarian
~~for a cup of coffee~~
for the children
for some bottled water
owing to the underground strike

♦ The workers had a break *for a cup of coffee*.
1 She kept a box of toys _____ to play with.
2 Amber won a prize _____.
3 _____, we can't take her to our usual restaurant.
4 Jasmine's accident was _____.
5 Jack has gone to the shops _____.
6 Many people were late for work _____.

B **For each pair of sentences, complete the second so that it means the same as the first. In some cases there is more than one possibility.**

♦ Lucy went to the kitchen to get some ice cubes.
Lucy went to the kitchen for *some ice cubes*.

1 Jonny's mother sent him to his room because he misbehaved.
Jonny's mother sent him to his room for _____.

2 The ferry was late due to the heavy winds.
The ferry was late due to _____ it was very windy.

3 Nathan hit his sister and his father punished him.
Nathan's father punished him for _____.

4 We had the meeting in the annex because they were repairing the main building.
We had the meeting in the annex owing to _____ the main building.

5 The boss gave Isaac a bonus because he worked at the weekend.
The boss gave Isaac a bonus for _____ at the weekend.

6 I can't get into the bathroom because Emily's there.
Since _____, I can't get in there.

7 The road is blocked because some trees have fallen.
The blocked road is due to _____.

8 They waited while the sheep crossed the road.
They waited for _____ cross the road.

C **Here is a story about a day out for the Long family. Choose the correct options to complete it.**

Mr Long is a careless driver. In fact he has a reputation as a dangerous driver ♦ because/~~owing to~~ the police have fined him three times [1] because/for speeding. [2] Due to/Since he drives carelessly, his wife usually drives the family car, especially when the children are with them. The children often feel sick in the car [3] due to the fact that/owing to they are not good travellers, and when this happens Mrs Long has to stop the car [4] for/as them to have a break. Some people take pills for travel sickness, of course, but Mrs Long doesn't like the idea [5] because/due to she doesn't think they work. One hot summer's day the family were on their way to visit Mrs Long's mother [6] owing to the fact that/owing to it was her birthday. [7] Since/For it was a special day the children were wearing their best clothes, so it was obviously a bad day [8] for/because them to get dirty. Very soon the children were feeling sick, probably due [9] to/for the heat, so Mrs Long stopped the car several times [10] for/since them to get out for some fresh air. When they finally arrived, grandmother said, 'You're a bit late but I suppose that's [11] due to/owing to the traffic.' 'Not really,' said Mrs Green. 'The journey took longer than usual [12] because/owing to the heat and we had to stop several times [13] to/for a break.' At their grandmother's the children soon felt better and they had a great afternoon. After lunch they went for long walk with Grandma's dog, Queenie. On the way home they were tired and fell asleep straightaway in the car.

106 Although, while, however, despite, etc.

1 We can contrast two ideas or situations within a sentence with **although**:

__Although__ the weather was very cold, we decided to go for a walk.

The government passed the new law __although__ many people opposed it.

Informally we can use **though** in the same way:

__Though__ the weather was very cold, we decided to go for a walk.

The government passed the new law __though__ many people opposed it.

While is not possible here.

2 We can use **while** to contrast two aspects of the same thing or two similar things within a sentence:

__While__ I agree with the idea, I don't think it's very practical.

Some of my friends have found work __while__ others are still unemployed.

(Al)though is also possible here.

3 When the contrast is expressed in a separate sentence, we use **however**:

The government passed the new law. __However,__ many people were against it.

I agree with the idea. I don't think it's very practical, __however__.

We use a comma to separate **however** from the rest of the sentence.

Though can also go at the end of a separate sentence:

I agree with the idea. I don't think it's very practical, __though__.

Although is not possible here.

4 We can use prepositions **in spite of** and **despite** with a noun (but not usually a personal pronoun) to express concession or contrast:

__In spite of__/__Despite__ the cold weather, we decided to go for a walk.

The government passed the new law __in spite of__/__despite__ the opposition.

If we use these prepositions with a clause, we have to include **the fact that**, e.g.:

The government passed the new law __in spite of__/__despite the fact that__ many people were against it.

A In each question, complete the second sentence (or pair of sentences) so that the meaning is the same as the first sentence (or pair of sentences).

♦ Jacob is older than Megan but she is taller than he is.
Although Jacob is older than Megan, she is taller than he is .....

1 In spite of the fact that it was dangerous, many people helped in the rescue.
Many people helped in the rescue although .....

2 Some people continue to smoke cigarettes although there is a serious warning on every packet.
..... the warning on every packet, some people continue to smoke cigarettes.

3 There were several stronger teams but it was Greece that won the cup.
There were several stronger teams. It was Greece that won the cup, ...

4 Although London is more expensive than the rest of Britain, many people prefer to live there.
Many people prefer to live in London despite .....
it is more expensive than the rest of Britain.

5 My work is interesting but it is not very well paid.
While ....., it is not very well paid.

6 Although Amy complained about the exams, she got very good marks.
Amy complained about the exams. ....., she got very good marks.

B **Complete this speech about drugs by putting in *although, despite, however* or *while*. In some cases there is more than one possibility.**

Ladies and gentlemen. Today I want to explain why I think drugs should be legalized. Many people think that all drugs are illegal. ♦ However, the legal situation is different in different countries. For example, [1] ..... coca leaves are legal in some parts of South America, they are banned in the USA and many other countries. But even in the USA and Europe, it is not true that all drugs are illegal. [2] ..... tobacco and alcohol are seriously addictive, they are a regular aspect of most social gatherings in our countries. Not everybody who smokes tobacco or drinks alcohol is an addict, of course. Many regular smokers would like to cut down or stop, [3] ....., and in fact many have tried several times. [4] ..... their many attempts, they continue smoking, precisely because nicotine is so addictive. Anyway, what are the disadvantages of the illegal drugs remaining illegal? In the first place, illegality means that there is no quality control to protect the consumer. People think they are buying cocaine, for example, [5] ..... the substance is often mixed with dust or even poisonous powders. Also drugs on the street are fairly expensive so [6] ..... consumers might not have a job, they need their drugs and this quickly leads to stealing and prostitution in order to pay for them. Second, the drug industry generates enormous quantities of money, enough to corrupt many police officers and politicians. We like to think that our authorities control crime. The reality, [7] ....., is that in some countries crime controls the authorities. Ladies and gentleman, [8] ..... you may not like drugs, as long as drugs are illegal, they are outside democratic control.

Anthony and Grace are discussing the talk about drugs. Complete their conversation using the expressions from the box.

~~although~~ although despite however in spite of the fact that though

Anthony: What did you think of the talk?

Grace: I don't agree with her, ♦ although I have to accept that her talk was clever. It's true that the present situation isn't perfect. [1] ....., if they legalize drugs, things will be much worse.

Anthony: Oh, I don't know. Society seems to manage all right with tobacco and alcohol [2] ..... they're perfectly legal.

Grace: You make it sound as if they're harmless. I think it's truer to say that society functions [3] ..... they're legal because they cause problems for a lot of people.

Anthony: A few people misuse them. Most people use them sensibly, [4] .....

Grace: It doesn't make sense to say that you can smoke sensibly. That's why there are health warnings on the packets. People are stupid enough to smoke [5] ..... all the warnings.

107 Relative clauses (1)

1 If we use a sentence like:

The police have found the boy.

it may not be clear which boy.
We can make it clear like this:

*The police have found the boy **who disappeared last week**.*

Who links the relative clause (**who disappeared last week**) to the main clause (**The police have found the boy**).

2 When we talk about people, we use **that** or **who**:

*I talked to the girl **that** (OR **who**) won the race.*

When we talk about things or animals, we use **that** or **which**:

*I like the car **that** (OR **which**) won the race.*

3 **That**, **who** or **which** can be the subject of the relative clause, like this:

	SUBJECT	
I talked to the girl	***who***	***won.***
	The girl	*won.*
That is the dog	***that***	***attacked me.***
	The dog	*attacked me.*

There is no other pronoun (e.g. **it**, **they**):

NOT ~~*That is the dog that it attacked me.*~~

4 **That**, **who** or **which** can be the object of the relative clause, like this:

	OBJECT	
The card	***which***	***Jon sent was nice.***
Jon sent	*the card.*	
The man	***that***	***I saw was very rude.***
I saw	*the man.*	

*There is no other pronoun (e.g. **him**, **them**):*

NOT ~~*The man I saw him was very rude.*~~

When **that**, **who** or **which** is the object of the relative clause (e.g. *The card **which** Jon sent*), we can leave it out:

*The card **Jon sent** was nice.*
*The man **I saw** was very rude.*

5 Now look at this sentence with whose:

*Lucy is the woman **whose husband is an actor**.* (= Lucy's husband is an actor.)

We use **whose** in place of **his**, **her**, **their**, etc. We only use it with people, countries and organizations, not things. It has a possessive meaning. Here is another example:

*The man **whose dog bit me** didn't apologize.* (= The man didn't apologize. His dog bit me.)

All these relative clauses that define a person or thing are called defining relative clauses.

A Complete the sentences using the information in brackets ( ) and *who* or *which*.

♦ (I went to see a doctor. She had helped my mother.)
I went to see the doctor *who had helped* ..... my mother.

1 (A dog bit me. It belonged to Mrs Jones.)
The dog ..... belonged to Mrs Jones.

2 (A woman wrote to me. She wanted my advice.)
The woman ..... wanted my advice.

3 (A bus crashed. It was 23 years old.)
The bus ..... was 23 years old.

4 (Anna talked to a man. He had won a lot of money.)
Anna talked to the man .....

5 (Mary was wearing the red dress. She wears it for parties.)
Mary was wearing the red dress .....

6 (He's an architect. He designed the new city library.)
He's the architect .....

B Complete the sentences using the information in brackets ( ) and *that*.

♦ (Jack made a table. It's not very strong.)
The table that Jack made is not very strong.

1 (I read about a new computer. I had seen it on TV.)
I read about the new computer .....

2 (Jasmine made a cake. Nobody liked it.)
Nobody liked the cake .....

3 (Mary sent me a joke. It was very funny.)
The joke ..... was very funny.

4 (My sister wrote an article. The news is going to publish it.)
The news is going to publish the article .....

5 (I met an old lady. She was 103 years old.)
The old lady ..... was 103 years old.

6 (I saw a house. My brother wants to buy it.)
I saw the house .....

C Complete the sentences with one of the phrases in the box and *who* or *whose*.

interviewed me	has visited so many different countries
~~had saved their son~~	wives have just had babies
book won a prize last week	~~divorce was in all the papers~~
car had broken down	complain all the time

♦ The parents thanked the woman who had saved their son .....

♦ The couple whose divorce was in the newspapers ..... have got married again.

1 It is very interesting to meet somebody .....

2 The person ..... asked me some very difficult questions.

3 In my office there are two men .....

4 What's the name of that writer .....?

5 I don't like people .....

6 We helped a woman .....

Complete the sentences with *who*, *that*, or nothing (–).

♦ The match – ..... we saw was boring.

♦ Did I tell you about the people who ..... live next door?

♦ The horse that ..... won the race belongs to an Irish woman.

1 I love the ice cream ..... they sell in that shop.

2 The book ..... I'm reading is about jazz.

3 The woman ..... came to see us was selling magazines.

4 We'll go to a restaurant ..... has a children's menu.

5 The factory ..... closed last week had been there for 70 years.

6 Have you read about the schoolgirl ..... started her own business and is now a millionaire?

7 Ethel says that the house ..... Tom has just bought has a beautiful garden.

108 Relative clauses (2)

1 In informal English, in defining relative clauses, when **who**, **that** or **which** is the object of the verb, it can be omitted:

The name of the woman I interviewed was Mrs Norris.

The car they bought was quite expensive.

Notice that there is no pronoun in the relative clause:

The name of the woman I interviewed ~~her~~ was Mrs Norris.

The car they bought ~~it~~ was quite expensive.

2 When the verb has a preposition, in formal English the preposition goes with **whom** or **which**:

*That is the young man **to whom** I spoke.*

*The job **for which** she's applied is in Paris.*

Informally, we can omit the relative word and then the preposition goes at the end of the relative clause:

*That is the young man I spoke **to**.*

*The job she's applied **for** is in Paris.*

3 Informally, we often omit the relative word **when** after **day**, **year**, etc.:

That was the year I finished university.

We often omit the relative word **where** after **place**, **somewhere**, etc.:

*Do you know a **place/somewhere** we can get a good sandwich?*

We often omit the relative word **why** after **reason**:

*The real **reason** she came was to speak to me.*

We often omit a relative expression after **way**:

*That's the **way** they make beer in Germany.*

A Cross out the words in the sentences that are not possible or not necessary. If there are no such words, mark the sentence with a tick (✓).

- The first book ~~which~~ she wrote ~~it~~ was *Lost Steps*. .....
- This is the boy who broke the window. ✓
1. Do you know the woman that my father's talking to? .....
2. They're going to close the factories that they make too much smoke. .....
3. People who live in flats shouldn't have dogs. .....
4. An animal that comes out at night must have good eyes. .....
5. The boat that my cousins sailed in it was hit by a bomb. .....
6. An amphibian is an animal which can live on land or in water. .....
7. People who are from Manchester are called Mancunians. .....

B In the following, if a sentence is incomplete, indicate where a word is necessary and write the word at the end. If the sentence is correct, mark it with a tick (✓).

- Is there a shop near here ~~/~~ sells stamps? that .....
- Mrs Thomas is the teacher my sister likes best. ✓ .....
1. The referee is the person takes the decisions. .....
2. The bus they were waiting for never came. .....
3. The old lady we saw was wearing a pink dress. .....
4. Is this the train goes to Nottingham? .....
5. There's a place near here you can get a good hamburger. .....
6. It took a long time to find the doctor we wanted to see. .....
7. Do you know anybody plays the piano really well? .....

C Combine the two sentences into one. Put in *who, that, which* or *where* only if it is necessary.

♦ I lent you a book. Have you read it?
Have you read the book I lent you ?

♦ My mother works in a factory. It makes parts for cars.
The factory where my mother works makes parts for cars.

1 Sian's got a new mobile. It takes brilliant photos.
Sian's got a new mobile .

2 They lived in a block of flats. It was struck by lightning.
The block of flats was struck by lightning.

3 The hotel had a magician. He was very clever.
The hotel had a magician .

4 The porters are paid a salary. They can't live on it.
The porters can't live on the salary .

5 Nobody else wanted the food. My father ate it.
My father ate the food .

6 We ran out of petrol in a little village. It didn't have a petrol station.
The village didn't have a petrol station.

D Freda and Jacob are packing to go on holiday. Complete their conversation with the expressions from the box and include *that* if it is necessary.

you can take onto the plane	go with my green dress	~~has a lock~~
have just been mended	covers all the Mediterranean islands	a bit heavy
I can walk all day in	we bought in that second-hand bookshop	I knitted myself

Jacob: We'd better take two cases. The one ♦ that has a lock and that smaller one .

Freda: Which camera do you want to take? The handy one or the big one ?

Jacob: Let's take the smaller one. How about the travel guide? There's that big one and that pocket-sized one – the one just about Corsica .

Freda: Perhaps the small one will be enough.

Jacob: I think I'll take my shoes . How many pairs of shoes are you taking?

Freda: Well, we'll need some comfortable ones and perhaps for the evenings I'll take the new green ones, the ones .

Jacob: It might be cool in the evenings. I suppose you're taking a sweater.

Freda: Yes, the white one. You know, the one . Anyway, let's have a break. I feel like a drink.

109 Relative clauses (3)

1 Look at these two sentences:



London has nearly 9 million inhabitants.

*London, **which is the capital of Britain**, has nearly 9 million inhabitants.*

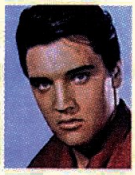
The clause **which is the capital of Britain** gives us more information about London, but we do not need this information to define **London**. We can understand the first sentence without this extra information. **Which is the capital of Britain** is a non-defining relative clause. It has commas (,) to separate it from the rest of the sentence.

2 For things or animals, we use **which** (NOT ~~that~~) in non-defining relative clauses:

*Jacob sold his computer, **which he no longer needed**, to his cousin.* (NOT ... ~~*that he no longer needed*~~ ...)

*In the summer we stay in my uncle's house, **which is near the sea**.*

3 For people, we use **who** (BUT NOT ~~that~~) in non-defining relative clauses. We use **who** when it is the subject of the relative clause:



SUBJECT

*Elvis Presley, **who died in 1977**, earned millions of dollars.*
(**Presley** died in 1977.)

We use **who** (or sometimes **whom**) when it is the object of the relative clause:

OBJECT

*My boss, **who** (OR **whom**) **I last saw before Christmas**, is very ill.* (I last saw **my boss** before Christmas.)

4 We use **whose** to mean **his**, **her**, or **their**:



*Marilyn Monroe, **whose real name was Norma Jean**, was born in Los Angeles.*
(**Her** real name was Norma Jean.)

5 We can also use **which** (BUT NOT ~~that~~) to refer to a whole fact:

Anna did not want to marry Tom, ***which surprised everybody.***

Here, **which** refers to the fact that Anna did not want to marry Tom.

A Make one sentence from the two that are given. Use *who* or *which*.

♦ Mont Blanc is between France and Italy. It is the highest mountain in the Alps.
Mont Blanc, which is between France and Italy, is the highest mountain in the Alps.

♦ Alfred Hitchcock was born in Britain. He worked for many years in Hollywood.
Alfred Hitchcock, who was born in Britain, worked for many years in Hollywood.

1 The sun is really a star. It is 93 million miles from the earth.

2 John F. Kennedy died in 1963. He was a very famous American President.

3 Charlie Chaplin was from a poor family. He became a very rich man.

4 The 2016 Olympics were held in Rio de Janeiro. It was the capital of Brazil until 1960.

5 We went to see the Crown Jewels. They are kept in the Tower of London.

B From the notes, make one sentence. Use *who*, *whose* or *which* with the words in brackets ( ).

♦ Greta Garbo. (She was born in Sweden.) She moved to America in 1925.
Greta Garbo, who was born in Sweden, moved to America in 1925.

♦ Darwin. (His ideas changed our view of the world.) He travelled a lot when he was young.
Greta Garbo, who was born in Sweden, moved to America in 1925.

1 Football. (It first started in Britain.) It is now popular worldwide.
Football, ...

2 Margaret Thatcher. (She was the Prime Minister of Britain for 11 years.) She studied science at university.
.....

3 Michelangelo. (He lived until he was 90.) He is one of Italy's greatest artists.
.....

4 Barack Obama. (His wife is a brilliant lawyer and role model.) He became President of the USA in 2009.
.....

5 The Nile. (It runs through several countries.) It is the longest river in Africa.
.....

6 Madonna. (Her parents were born in Italy.) She is a famous American singer.
.....

7 Gandhi. (He was born in 1869). He was assassinated in 1948.
.....

8 Elephants. (They are found in Africa and India). They are the largest land animals.
.....

9 The Beatles. (Their music is still popular.) They were probably the most famous pop group in the world.
.....

10 Brands Hatch. (It is not far from London.) It is famous for its motor races.
.....

C Complete this text about Lewis Carroll with *who*, *which* or *whose*.

Alice in Wonderland, ♦ which ..... is one of the most popular children's books in the world, was written by Lewis Carroll, [1] ..... real name was Charles Dodgson. Carroll, [2] ..... had a natural talent as a story-teller, loved to entertain children, including Alice Liddell, [3] ..... father was a colleague of Carroll's at Oxford University. One day Carroll took Alice and her sisters for a trip on the River Thames, [4] ..... flows through Oxford. After the trip, Carroll wrote in his diary that he had told the children a wonderful story, [5] ..... he had promised to write down for them. He wrote the story, illustrated it with his own drawings, and gave it to the children. By chance, it was seen by Henry Kingsley, [6] ..... was a famous novelist, and he persuaded Dodgson to publish it.

Test K Building sentences

A Carlo is working on the busy reception desk of a large hotel in Bristol. Complete the dialogue with the words from the box.

either in case nor both so (x2) and ~~Neither~~ because or

Carlo: Can I help you, sir?

First man: I hope so. ♦Neither ..... the shower [1] ..... the bath works in my room.

Carlo: I'm sorry, sir. We'll have them repaired this afternoon.

***

First woman: I've got an early flight, [2] ..... I need an alarm call at five o'clock in the morning.

Carlo: No problem, Madam. I'll arrange that for you.

***

Second man: Can I borrow an umbrella [3] ..... it rains? I don't want to get my suit wet.

Carlo: Of course you can, sir. Here you are.

***

Second woman: I'm unhappy [4] ..... my room doesn't have a view. I'd like to see [5] ..... the park [6] ..... the river.

Carlo: I'll see what I can do, Madam.

***

Third man: Can you book me a taxi [7] ..... that I can get to the airport by ten o'clock tonight?

Carlo: Certainly sir. I'll book it for half past nine.

***

Third woman: [8] ..... the bed [9] ..... the bath are too small for my husband and me.

Carlo: I'm sorry, Madam, but that's all we have at the moment.

B This is the first of two articles from a holiday magazine. Cross out the wrong words.

Beach, City or Lake?

♦Although/Since most British holidaymakers traditionally go to the seaside for their holidays, lakes and mountains are also popular places [1]as/for people to relax and enjoy themselves. [2]While/However, a lake holiday usually costs more than a beach holiday because the local hotels and restaurants are more expensive.

[3]Since/Although most people think very carefully about prices, the beach is still the top location [4]for/as a one-week or two-week holiday. [5]While/However you may not think of a city as a place for relaxing, many people enjoy a short break or a long weekend in a nearby town.

[6]Although/In spite of the noise and the traffic, tourists love going to big cities and seeing the art galleries, museums, shops and nightlife. [7]However/Although they are expensive, big cities all over the world welcome millions of visitors every year.

C **Joe and Beth have been invited to a neighbour's wedding. Cross out the underlined words if they are not necessary.**

Joe: What would you like to drink?

Beth: Something ♦ that I haven't tried before, I think. Joe, can you see the man ♦ who is drinking orange juice?

Joe: Is he the man [1] who repaired our roof in the summer?

Beth: I think so. The day [2] when he came to our house was your birthday, wasn't it?

Joe: That's right. But the work [3] that he did wasn't very good, was it?

Beth: No, it wasn't. Do you know the woman [4] who is eating a piece of cake by the window?

Joe: Yes. I'm sure she's the woman [5] whose dog bit my leg a month ago.

Beth: Oh dear. Is there anyone here [6] that you want to talk to?

Joe: I'd like to find the man [7] that plays music in his garden at six in the morning!

Beth: Joe! Try to be friendly. The new neighbour [8] that I met in the street yesterday was really nice.

Joe: Yes, but did you think about the reason [9] why she was nice? She wanted to borrow two of our chairs.

D **This is the second holiday article. Complete the article with the words from the box.**

that has that thousands which means you see which has that visit ~~which has~~

Beautiful Ireland

Ireland, which has ..... a population of less than four million people, is a country with some of the world's most beautiful mountains and valleys. The first things [1] ..... as you drive south from Dublin are the green grass and the hills of Wicklow. Further south, on the way to County Wexford, there are many small hotels, [2] ..... you can find somewhere to stay without booking in advance. The place [3] ..... of tourists visit every year, however, is the west coast. This is the coast [4] ..... fantastic views of the Atlantic Ocean, and pretty seaside towns. Galway, for example, [5] ..... a wonderful bay, is well worth a visit. Or two visits! It is a fact that tourists [6] ..... Ireland always come back soon for a second or third holiday!

E **Complete the announcement on a train from London to Lyon with words from the box.**

case but ~~Although~~ nor who which however neither due

'♦ Although ..... we will arrive late in Paris, we still expect to reach Lyon by 19.00 this evening. Passengers [1] ..... would like tea, coffee or cold drinks should visit the café in coach D. Please remember, [2] ....., that the café will close in 20 minutes [3] ..... to a problem with the refrigerator. Remember also to keep your ticket with you at all times in [4] ..... you pass the Ticket Inspector as he walks through the train. We are sorry to say that [5] Coach F [6] ..... Coach K has air conditioning at the moment, [7] ..... if you are in one of these coaches we would like to offer you a free bottle of water. Finally, please remember that Coach B, [8] ..... is at the front of the train, is a quiet coach – the use of mobile phones is not allowed. Thank you. Enjoy your trip!'

Appendix 1 Nouns

1 Plural nouns

1 We usually add **-s** to a noun to form the plural:

a book	→	*some books*
one kilo	→	*ten kilos*
shop	→	*shops*
tyre	→	*tyres*

2 After **-s**, **-ss**, **-sh**, **-ch** and **-x** we add **-es**:

bus	→	*buses*
dress	→	*dresses*
glass	→	*glasses*
dish	→	*dishes*
wish	→	*wishes*
beach	→	*beaches*
watch	→	*watches*
box	→	*boxes*

3 When a noun ends in a consonant* + **-y**, the **y** changes to **-ies**:

city	→	*cities*
family	→	*families*
lorry	→	*lorries*
story	→	*stories*

We do not change **y** after a vowel*:

day	→	*days*
journey	→	*journeys*

4 Nouns ending in **-f** or **-fe** have the plural **-ves**:

leaf	→	*leaves*
shelf	→	*shelves*
life	→	*lives*
thief	→	*thieves*

5 A few nouns ending in **-o** have **-es**:

potato	→	*potatoes*
tomato	→	*tomatoes*
hero	→	*heroes*

But most have **-s**:

kilos *photos* *studios* *pianos* *zoos*

6 Some nouns have irregular plurals:

child	→	*children*
fish	→	*fish*
foot	→	*feet*
man	→	*men*
mouse	→	*mice*
person	→	*people*
sheep	→	*sheep*
tooth	→	*teeth*
woman	→	*women*

2 Uncountable nouns

1 Here is a list of common uncountable nouns:

advice	*ice*	*petrol*
bread	*information*	*rain*
butter	*luggage*	*snow*
cheese	*marmalade*	*sugar*
coffee	*meat*	*tea*
cotton	*milk*	*toast*
glass	*money*	*water*
heat	*news*	*work*
homework	*noise*	

2 Uncountable nouns do not have a plural form:

petrol (NOT ~~*petrols*~~) *bread* (NOT ~~*breads*~~)

3 We do not use ~~a~~/~~an~~ with uncountable nouns, but we can use **some**/**any**, **the**, **much** (NOT ~~many~~), **such** and **my**/**your**/**his**, etc.:

*I always have **toast** and **marmalade** for breakfast.*
*I'd like **some tea**, please.*
*Look at **the snow** outside.*
*How **much luggage** have you got?*
*We've had **such** wonderful **news**.*

4 Some nouns can be countable or uncountable:

*I heard a **noise** from downstairs. (countable)*
*I can't sleep. The neighbours are making **so much noise**. (uncountable)*

* **Consonants:** *b c d f g h j k l m n p q r s t v w x y z*
Vowels: *a e i o u*
Syllables: |*hit*| = 1 syllable |*vi*|*sit*| = 2 syllables |*re*|*mem*|*ber*| = 3 syllables

Appendix 2 Regular verbs

1 Present Simple

1 Add an **-s** to make the **he/she/it** form of most Present Simple verbs:

I/you/we/they	he/she/it
leave	*leaves*
make	*makes*
say	*says*
work	*works*

2 After **-ss**, **-sh**, **-ch**, **-o** or **-x** (e.g. ***finish***, ***go***), we add **-es**:

I/you/we/they	he/she/it
catch	*catches*
finish	*finishes*
pass	*passes*
teach	*teaches*
do	*does*
go	*goes*
mix	*mixes*

3 When a verb ends in a consonant* + **-y**, the **y** changes to **-ies**:

I/you/we/they	he/she/it
fly	*flies*
try	*tries*
carry	*carries*
study	*studies*

2 The -ing form

1 For most verbs we add **-ing**:

ask → ***asking*** *go* → ***going***

2 For verbs ending with a consonant + **-e**, we normally leave out **e** when we add **-ing**:

hope → ***hoping*** *take* → ***taking***
live → ***living***

But we keep a double **e** before **-ing**:

see → ***seeing*** *agree* → ***agreeing***

3 When a verb ends in **-ie**, it changes to **y** when we add **-ing**:

die → ***dying*** *lie* → ***lying***

But **y** does not change:

hurry → ***hurrying***

4 When a word ends with one vowel* and one consonant (e.g. ***run***, ***swim***, ***jog***), we double the final consonant:

get → ***getting*** *run* → ***running***
jog → ***jogging*** *swim* → ***swimming***

But note that we do not double the consonant:

- when it is **y**, **w** or **x** (e.g. ***stay***)

buy → ***buying*** *wax* → ***waxing***
draw → ***drawing*** *stay* → ***staying***

- when the final syllable* is not stressed

listen → ***listening*** *wonder* → ***wondering***
visit → ***visiting***

Note however that in British English **l** is usually doubled, even if the syllable is unstressed (e.g. ***travel***):

cancel → ***cancelling*** *travel* → ***travelling***

3 The past tense and past participles

1 Most verbs have **-ed** in the past tense; most past participles also end in **-ed**:

INFINITIVE	PAST TENSE	PAST/PASSIVE PARTICIPLE
happen	*happened*	*happened*
work	*worked*	*worked*

2 If the verb ends in **-e**, we add **-d**:

live → ***lived*** *phone* → ***phoned***

3 When a verb ends in a consonant + **-y**, the **y** changes to **-ied**:

study → ***studied*** *try* → ***tried***

4 When a word ends with one vowel and one consonant (e.g. ***stop***), we double the final consonant:

grab → ***grabbed*** *stop* → ***stopped***
plan → ***planned***

But note that we do not double the consonant:

- when it is **y**, **w** or **x** (e.g. ***enjoy***)

allow → ***allowed*** *enjoy* → ***enjoyed***

- when the final syllable is not stressed

open → ***opened*** *discover* → ***discovered***
listen → ***listened***

Note however that in British English **l** is usually doubled, even if the syllable is unstressed (e.g. ***travel***):

cancel → ***cancelled*** *travel* → ***travelled***

irlanguage
مرجع زبان ایرانیان

Appendix 3 Irregular verbs

INFINITIVE	PAST TENSE	PAST/PASSIVE PARTICIPLE
be	was/were	been
beat	beat	beaten
become	became	become
begin	began	begun
blow	blew	blown
break	broke	broken
bring	brought	brought
build	built	built
burn	burnt	burnt
buy	bought	bought
catch	caught	caught
choose	chose	chosen
come	came	come
cost	cost	cost
cut	cut	cut
do	did	done
draw	drew	drawn
drink	drank	drunk
drive	drove	driven
eat	ate	eaten
fall	fell	fallen
feel	felt	felt
find	found	found
fly	flew	flown
forget	forgot	forgotten
get	got	got
give	gave	given
go	went	gone/been
grow	grew	grown
have	had	had
hear	heard	heard
hide	hid	hidden
hit	hit	hit
hold	held	held
hurt	hurt	hurt
keep	kept	kept
know	knew	known

INFINITIVE	PAST TENSE	PAST/PASSIVE PARTICIPLE
learn	learnt/learned	learnt/learned
leave	left	left
lend	lent	lent
let	let	let
lose	lost	lost
make	made	made
mean	meant	meant
meet	met	met
pay	paid	paid
put	put	put
read	read	read
ring	rang	rung
run	ran	run
say	said	said
see	saw	seen
sell	sold	sold
send	sent	sent
show	showed	shown
shut	shut	shut
sing	sang	sung
sit	sat	sat
sleep	slept	slept
speak	spoke	spoken
spend	spent	spent
stand	stood	stood
steal	stole	stolen
sweep	swept	swept
swim	swam	swum
take	took	taken
teach	taught	taught
tell	told	told
think	thought	thought
throw	threw	thrown
understand	understood	understood
wake	woke	woken
wear	wore	worn
win	won	won
write	wrote	written

Appendix 4 Adjectives and adverbs

1 Comparatives and superlatives

1 We form the comparative and superlative of short adjectives (adjectives with one syllable*) with **-er** and **-est**:

cheap	→	*cheaper, the cheapest*
long	→	*longer, the longest*
warm	→	*warmer, the warmest*

2 If the adjective ends in **-e**, we add **-r** and **-st**:

late	→	*later, the latest*
nice	→	*nicer, the nicest*

3 When a one-syllable adjective ends with one vowel* and one consonant* (e.g. ***big***), we double the final consonant:

big	→	*bigger, the biggest*
hot	→	*hotter, the hottest*
wet	→	*wetter, the wettest*

Note that we do not double **w**:

few	→	*fewer, the fewest*

4 We put **more**/**the most** before adjectives of two or more syllables:

beautiful	→	***more** beautiful,* ***the most** beautiful*
expensive	→	***more** expensive,* ***the most** expensive*
polluted	→	***more** polluted,* ***the most** polluted*

5 When an adjective ends in a consonant + **-y** (e.g. ***happy***), the **y** changes to **-ier** or **-iest**:

dirty	→	*dirtier, the dirtiest*
easy	→	*easier, the easiest*
happy	→	*happier, the happiest*
lucky	→	*luckier, the luckiest*

6 Some adjectives have irregular comparative and superlative forms:

good	→	***better, the best***
bad	→	***worse, the worst***
far	→	***farther, the farthest*** OR ***further, the furthest***
little	→	***less, the least***

7 Be careful to use **fewer** with plural nouns (e.g. ***shops***), and **less** with uncountable nouns (e.g. ***money***):

*There are **fewer shops** in the centre of town than there used to be.*

*John earns **less money** than Mary.*

2 Adverbs

1 We form most adverbs by adding **-ly** to an adjective:

polite	→	*politely*
quick	→	*quickly*
slow	→	*slowly*

2 When an adjective ends in a consonant + **-y**, the **y** changes to **-ily**:

easy	→	*easily*
happy	→	*happily*
lucky	→	*luckily*

3 When an adjective ends in a consonant + **-le**, the **e** changes to **-y**:

probable	→	*probably*
remarkable	→	*remarkably*

4 Some adverbs are irregular:

good	→	***well***
fast	→	***fast***
hard	→	***hard***
late	→	***late***

* **Consonants:** *b c d f g h j k l m n p q r s t v w x y z*
Vowels: *a e i o u*
Syllables: |*hit*| = 1 syllable |*vi*|*sit*| = 2 syllables |*re*|*mem*|*ber*| = 3 syllables

Key to the exercises

Unit 1

A
1 is
2 is not
3 is
4 am
5 is
6 are not
7 are
8 is

B
1 isn't
2 's
3 're
4 aren't
5 isn't
6 's
7 're
8 aren't
9 aren't
10 'm

C
1 isn't, It's
2 is, He's
3 She's
4 It's, We
5 are

D
1 names: I'm Bjorn and this is Liv.
nationality: We're from Sweden.
jobs: I'm a doctor and Liv is a film star.
2 names: I'm Maria and this is Pedro.
nationality: We're from Mexico.
jobs: I'm a teacher and Pedro is a pop star.
3 names: I'm James and this is Mary.
nationality: We're from Australia.
jobs: I'm a bank manager and Mary is an artist.
4 names: I'm Tomoko and this is Akira.
nationality: We're from Japan.
jobs: I'm a dentist and Akira is a photographer.
5 names: I'm Rajiv and this is Vikram.
nationality: We're from India.
jobs: I'm a scientist and Vikram is a farmer.

Unit 2

A
1 's/is cold.
2 're/are happy.
3 He's/He is afraid.
4 She's/She is bored.
5 He's/He is hungry.
6 They're/They are sad.
7 They're/They are tired.

B
1 There's/There is
2 There are
3 There's/There is
4 There are
5 There's/There is
6 There isn't/There is not
7 There are
8 There aren't/are not

C
1 Are you a teacher?
2 Are they bored?
3 Is he afraid?
4 Is she tired?
5 How are you?
6 Is it cold today?
7 Is she Spanish?
8 Are they from London?

D
1 Are
2 'm/am
3 'm/am
4 Are
5 Is
6 's/is

E
1 Are you hungry?
2 Is she your sister?
3 Am I late?
4 Are they from America?
5 Is he a tennis player?
6 Are you happy?
7 Is she at home?
8 Is he 20?

Unit 3

A
1 watch ✓
2 goes
3 finishes
4 play ✓
5 go ✓
6 speaks
7 does
8 start ✓

B
1 drink
2 studies
3 flies
4 writes
5 live
6 finishes
7 sell
8 start ✓

C
1 She doesn't/does not work in a bank.
2 I don't/do not play golf.
3 Paul doesn't/does not listen to music.
4 We don't/do not speak French.
5 You don't/do not listen to me!
6 My car doesn't/does not work.
7 I don't/do not drink tea.
8 Michelle doesn't/does not eat meat.
9 I don't/do not understand you.

D
1 eat
2 brush
3 go
4 arrive
5 drink (or have)
6 start
7 work
8 like
9 stop
10 have (or drink)
11 leave
12 watch

E
1 doesn't/does not work, works
2 lives in a flat. doesn't/does not live in a house.
3 She speaks French. She doesn't/does not speak Italian.
4 She doesn't/does not like new films. She likes old films.

Unit 4

A
1 feel
2 don't/do not understand
3 think
4 don't/do not like
5 don't/do not have
6 want
7 like

B
1 He likes coffee.
2 He doesn't like films.
3 He loves his job.
4 He hates fishing.
5 He loves holidays.
6 He doesn't like golf.

C
1 Do you speak any foreign languages?
2 Do you watch TV?
3 Does John listen to music
4 Does John like dogs?
5 Do you like films?
6 Does John drink coffee?
7 Do you drive a car?
8 Does John play a musical instrument?
9 Do you like pop music?
10 Do you go to the theatre?
11 Do you read books?
12 Does John go to the gym?

D
1 Does ... have a swimming pool?
2 Do all the banks change tourists' money into pounds?
3 Does the number 38 bus stop at the railway station? (OR Does the number 38 bus start here?)
4 Do the restaurants serve typical English food?
5 Does the concert finish before 11 p.m./o'clock?
6 Does the sightseeing tour start here? (OR Does the sightseeing tour stop at the railway station?)
7 Does the museum sell souvenirs?

irlanguage
مرجع زبان ایرانیان

Unit 5

A
1 ✗ They aren't/They're not/They are not working.
✓ They're/They are sitting in the garden.
2 ✗ I'm not/I am not studying music.
✓ I'm/I am learning Japanese.
3 ✓ He's/He is playing tennis.
✗ He isn't/He's not/He is not winning.
4 ✓ We're/We are spending a day at the seaside.
✓ The sun isn't/is not shining.

B
1 is shining
2 are sitting
3 am drinking
4 are not swimming
5 are watching
6 are travelling
7 is reading
8 am writing

C
1 g am going
2 a is taking
3 b is working
4 h is walking
5 e are eating
6 c is staying
7 f is studying

Unit 6

A
1 Is she having lunch?
2 Are they playing football?
3 Is the cat sleeping?
4 Is the sun shining?
5 Are you coming to the cinema?
6 Are they listening?
7 Is she eating at the moment?
8 Is it raining hard?
9 Am I getting better at tennis?
10 Are we winning the match?

B
1 Are you studying English at the moment?
~ Yes, I'm/I am working hard.
2 Are they listening to the radio?
~ No, they're/they are playing music.
3 Is Peter washing now?
~ Yes, he's/he is having a bath.
4 Are they living in Madrid at the moment?
~ Yes, they're/they are learning Spanish.
5 Is David singing in a band this year?
~ No, he's/he is working in a restaurant.

C
1 They're enjoying the film. ✓
2 We~~'re loving~~ ice cream. ✗
3 She~~'s believing~~ he's right. ✗
4 John's thinking about my idea. ✓
5 He's having lunch at the moment. ✓
6 She's eating a banana. ✓
7 He thinks it's a good idea. ✓
8 'Huge' ~~is meaning~~ 'very big'. ✗
9 Mick ~~is knowing~~ Jasmine. ✗
10 She~~'s hating~~ classical music. ✗

D
1 I'm/I am shopping
2 I'm/I am looking
3 I'm/I am playing
4 She's/She is working
5 's she/is she doing
6 She's/She is singing
7 are they doing
8 They're/They are studying
9 We're/We are painting
10 's/is helping

Unit 7

A
1 works, 's/is doing
2 washes
3 tries, plays
4 're/are sitting
5 Do you listen
6 'm/am writing
7 do they drive
8 doesn't/does not get
9 rains, isn't/'s not/is not raining
10 'm/am baking, are you smiling, Am I doing

B
1 ~~are getting up~~ get up
2 have ✓
3 leave ✓
4 ~~am finishing~~ finish
5 arrive ✓
6 ~~work~~ 'm/am working
7 ~~eat~~ 'm/am eating
8 ~~drinks~~ is/'s drinking
9 are messaging ✓
10 ~~am playing~~ play
11 go ✓
12 ~~am watching~~ watch
13 ~~'m not understanding~~ don't understand
14 ~~Are you liking~~ Do you like

C
1 You aren't/You're not/You are not eating very much at the moment. Are you ill?
2 She knows three words in Italian!
3 I'm/I am taking the bus to work this week, but usually I walk.
4 I'm/I am studying Japanese this year. It's very difficult.
5 Are you watching the television at the moment?
6 I don't/do not remember the name of the hotel.
7 She speaks three languages.
8 The sun's/The sun is shining. It's a beautiful day!

Unit 8

A
1 Take
2 Have
3 Turn left
4 Help me!
5 Don't forget
6 Stop the car!
7 Come
8 Open
9 Pass
10 Don't listen
11 Don't be late!
12 Come in
13 Catch

B
1 forget
2 turn
3 Be
4 Bring
5 wait
6 Open
7 make
8 Have

C
1 Look out!
2 Come in.
3 Don't touch it!
4 Have an orange juice.
5 Don't forget your umbrella.
6 Turn right.
7 Listen to me!
8 Pass the milk, please.

Unit 9

A
1 was
2 was
3 was
4 was
5 were
6 was
7 was
8 were
9 were
10 were

B
1 Was your room comfortable?
2 Was the weather nice?
3 Were the streets full of people?
4 Were the shops expensive?
5 Was the city exciting at night?
6 Were the museums interesting?
7 Were the people friendly?
6 Was your flight OK?

C
1 weren't French, they were Italian.
2 wasn't red, it was green.
3 weren't expensive, they were cheap.
4 wasn't old, it was new.
5 weren't good, they were bad.

D 1 wasn't
2 Were
3 was
4 were
5 weren't
6 were
7 was
8 Were
9 were

Unit 10

A

drank ✓	drove ✓	spent ✓	~~stoped~~
gave ✓	stopped ✓	~~sended~~	~~comed~~
met ✓	~~drinked~~	found ✓	cried ✓
won ✓	wrote ✓	sent ✓	swam ✓
~~leaved~~	asked ✓	bought ✓	~~finded~~
played ✓	~~meeted~~	ate ✓	~~buyed~~
~~gived~~	passed ✓	went ✓	~~winned~~
made ✓	~~cryed~~	cooked ✓	~~eated~~
left ✓	~~swimmed~~	flew ✓	brought ✓
followed ✓	~~writed~~	took ✓	crossed ✓

B 1 took
2 walked, played
3 said, didn't/did not hear
4 rang, opened
5 downloaded, watched
6 Did you understand, tried, spoke
7 Did you buy, bought
8 Did you enjoy, didn't/did not rain, listened

C 1 When did you finish your exams?
2 I waited for an hour, but he didn't/did not phone.
3 Did you watch the news on TV last night?
4 Mark stopped playing tennis, and he started playing golf instead.
5 He asked me a question, but I didn't/did not know the answer.
6 I lived there for a few years, but I didn't/did not like the place.

D 1 took
2 Did you go
3 came
4 did you visit?
5 went
6 had
7 loved
8 did you like
9 enjoyed
10 took
11 did you arrive

Unit 11

A 1 wasn't/was not listening
2 was talking
3 were waiting
4 was living
5 was coming
6 were winning
7 were sitting
8 were you staying
9 wasn't/was not driving
10 wasn't/was not raining
11 were you doing

B 1 was eating
2 were playing
3 was watching
4 was sitting
5 was writing
6 was brushing
7 was listening
8 was painting

C 1 was living
2 was studying
3 was doing
4 left, was working
5 met, was working
6 was working, met
7 was running
8 was running, married

Unit 12

A 1 The storm started while they were driving home.
2 I saw an accident while I was waiting for the bus.
3 Mary went to several concerts while she was staying in London.
4 My father was cooking the dinner when he burnt his fingers.
5 The soldiers were preparing to leave when the bomb exploded.

B 1 made, was making, arrived, helped
2 designed, started, was working, died
3 escaped, were taking, caught, locked
4 were losing, won
5 sang, played, recorded, was preparing, shot
6 were coming, were hurrying, was standing, grabbed

C 1 did you do
2 you were reading
3 rang
4 were you doing
5 was drinking
6 drank
7 went
8 did you put
9 was raining

Unit 13

A 1 We've finished our work.
2 They've bought a new house.
3 They haven't phoned the doctor.
4 They've gone to the cinema.
5 You've eaten four bananas!
6 You haven't taken any photographs.
7 Have you been to Canada?
8 Have they cooked our breakfast?
9 Has Jasmine made any mistakes?
10 Have we visited all the museums?

B 1 done
2 travelled
3 visited
4 driven
5 been
6 worked
7 swum
8 eaten
9 sung
10 made
11 met
12 taken

C 1 ✓
2 Have you ever flown in a helicopter?
3 ✓
4 Have you ever spoken to a prince or princess?
5 ✓

D 1 Yes, I have. / No, I haven't.
2 Yes, I have. / No, I haven't.
3 Yes, I have. / No, I haven't.
4 Yes, I have. / No, I haven't.
5 Yes, I have. / No, I haven't.
6 Yes, I have. / No, I haven't.
7 Yes, I have. / No, I haven't.

Unit 14

A 1 has lived
2 has visited
3 has been
4 has written
5 has climbed

B 1 haven't/have not read
2 've/have lost
3 's/has bought
4 've/have booked
5 've/have made
6 hasn't/has not happened
7 Have you replied

C 1 Yes, in fact I've/I have worked abroad twice.
2 I've/I have worked in Ireland and in Brazil.
3 What about you? Have you ever had a job abroad?
4 No, I've/I have never wanted to leave my home town.
5 I've/I have lived here for 20 years, and I've/I have never thought of working abroad.
6 Really? Well I have applied for another job abroad.

D 1 I've/I have known her for more than ten years.
2 I haven't/have not eaten anything since lunchtime.
3 Have you lived in this town for a long time?
4 Charlotte has been a good friend since we were at school together.
5 Have you seen Jack since the party last week?

Unit 15

A
1 I've/I have just come
2 I've/I have just sold
3 She's/She has just finished
4 I've/I have just had
5 they've/they have just moved
6 I've/I have just bought
8 I've/I have just had

B
1 Have you decided which one to buy yet?
2 I've/I have already explained this to you three times.
3 Their baby son's/son has already started talking.
4 Have you phoned Jasmine yet?
5 The game hasn't/has not finished yet.
6 I've/I have already had lunch.
7 He's/He has already spent all his money.

C
1 Have you visited the Art Gallery yet?
2 I haven't/I have not done that yet
3 Have you seen a play yet?
4 I've/I have just booked a ticket
5 I've/I have already seen that play.
6 I've/I have just heard
7 They've/They have just made
8 They haven't/They have not sold all the tickets yet.

Unit 16

A
1 I went
2 Did you like
3 I enjoyed
4 did you do
5 I visited
6 Have you been
7 I've booked

B
1 haven't/have not seen
2 went
3 Did you enjoy
4 was
5 've/have never heard
6 've/have been
7 did you do
8 stayed
9 needed
10 Have you ever won
11 won
12 Did you meet
13 've/have been

C
1 started
2 built
3 went
4 pulled
5 have opened
6 opened
7 went
8 began
9 have built

Unit 17

A
1 it's/it has been raining
2 We've/We have been playing
3 Emilia's/Emilia has been learning
4 I've/I have been reading
5 We've/We have been watching
6 Have the neighbours been making
7 I've/I have been saving
8 Have you been listening

B
1 for
2 for
3 since (or for with a different sense)
4 for
5 since
6 since
7 for
8 for

C
1 have been making a cake.
2 has been wrapping presents.
3 has been decorating the tree.
4 has been shopping for food.
5 has been writing cards.

D
1 It's/It has been raining since three o'clock.
2 He's/He has been playing chess since he was ten years old.
3 I've/I have been working since eight o'clock.
4 Helen's/Helen has been looking for another job for two months.
5 We've/We have been waiting (here) for two hours.

Unit 18

A
1 We've/We have sold much more than we expected.
2 How much money have you spent this week?
3 How many people has Jasmine invited to her party?
4 It's/It has been raining for hours.
5 They've/They have been drilling holes in the wall all morning.
6 How long have you been sitting here?

B
1 've/have been doing the washing-up.
2 's/has peeled (or 's/has been peeling)
3 've/have been cutting the grass.
4 've/have been defrosting the freezer.
5 's/has swept
6 've/have been peeling the onions
7 's/has cleaned them.
8 's/has defrosted it.

C
1 been standing
2 been queuing
3 had
4 broken
5 left
6 been sitting
7 noticed

Unit 19

A
1 had never ridden a horse
2 had already run in five marathons
3 had never written a poem
4 had never appeared on TV
5 had already played tennis at Wimbledon four times
6 had already written two novels

B
1 When the firefighters arrived, we had already put the fire out.
2 When the manager came back, James had already finished the work.
3 When Raphael called, I had already gone to bed.
4 When their children came home, Alice and Jack had already had lunch.
5 When his wife got home from work, Owen had already prepared the supper.
6 The thieves had already spent the money when the police caught them.

C
1 had just gone out.
2 had been to Cambridge.
3 had made some sandwiches.
4 had met her in Amsterdam.
5 had ever been to Japan.

Unit 20

A
1 used to eat, he eats
2 used to drink, she drinks
3 eats, she used to eat
4 eats, she used to eat
5 Did Robert use to eat
6 Did Mary use to eat
7 Did Grace use to drink
8 didn't use to eat
9 didn't use to eat
10 didn't use to drink

B 1 ✓
2 ✓
3 ✓
4 ~~Did Grace used to go to the concert last night?~~
5 ✓
6 ~~John use to spend a lot of money on that new jacket he bought last week.~~
7 ~~Kate didn't use to come to school yesterday because she was sick.~~
8 ✓
9 ✓
10 ✓

C 1 Dan used to play the violin, but now he plays the guitar.
2 Anna used to be best friends with Annie, but now she's/she is best friends with Cathy.
3 Lucy used to have dancing lessons, but now she has riding lessons.
4 I used to buy CDs, but now I download all my music.
5 John and Abigail used to live in London, but now they live in Cardiff.
6 David used to drive a Fiesta, but now he drives a Jaguar.

Unit 21

A 1 'm going to travel
2 'm not going to work
3 'm going to marry
4 're going to have
5 're going to become
6 're going to win
7 'm going to play
8 's not/isn't going to cook
9 're going to eat

B 1 She's going to buy a new car tomorrow.
2 They're going to work hard this year.
3 It's going to rain this afternoon.
4 Paul's not/Paul isn't going to drive to Scotland.
5 We're not/We aren't going to finish it today.
6 She's not/She isn't going to buy a new house.
7 Are they going to win the match?
8 Is Mary going to leave her job?
9 Are you going to take the exam in June?

C 1 Are you going to play golf every day?
2 Are you going to take an umbrella?
3 Are you going to swim in the sea?
4 Are you going to eat fish and chips?
5 Are you going to stay in a luxury hotel?
6 Are you going to go to a club?

D 1 They're going to watch a film.
2 She's going to have a swim.
3 He's going to play the piano.
4 They're going to eat a pizza.
5 He's not going/He isn't going to win the race.
6 It's going to rain.
7 They're not going/They aren't going to play tennis.

Unit 22

A 1 'll be, 'll take
2 'll be
3 won't win, 'll make
4 Will ... finish, won't have

B 1 I'll open a window.
2 I'll give you some money.
3 I'll make you a sandwich.
4 I'll give you the name of a language school.
5 I'll help you to look for it.
6 I'll phone for a taxi.
7 I'll ask her to phone you tonight.
8 I'll go with you/I'll help you (to) look for it.

C 1 Shall I
2 Shall we
3 Shall I
4 Shall we
5 Shall I
6 Shall we

Unit 23

A 1 are you going to eat, I'll cook
2 I'm going to buy, are you going to get, I'm going to look, I'll come
3 I'm going to leave, I'll see
4 I'm going to phone
5 I'm going to travel

B 1 a You look hot, I'll open a window.
2 e Thursday is no good for me, I'm afraid. I'm going to meet the new manager of our Tokyo office.
3 b Next year, we're going to enter the Japanese market.
4 c Thanks, I'll have an orange juice.
5 d Have a rest, I'll do the photocopying.

C 1 Nothing much, but I'm going to start a new job soon.
2 Thanks, I'll have a sandwich.
3 I'm going to do some shopping tomorrow and I'm going to (or I'll/will) go for a swim on Sunday.
4 She's going to sing, I'm afraid.
5 No, but I'm sure you'll enjoy it.
6 David is going to (or 'll/will) give me a lift.

Unit 24

A 1 I'm eating in a new restaurant tonight.
2 I'm going to a concert next Tuesday.
3 I'm going to the doctor tomorrow.
4 I'm flying to Florida in August.
5 I'm seeing Mary this weekend.

B 1 He is climbing Mount Everest in March.
2 He is driving across the Sahara in May.
3 He is sailing across the Pacific in July.
4 He is flying over the Amazon in September.
5 He is walking across the Antarctic in November.

C 1 are coming, Are you having, We're playing
2 I'm flying, Are you seeing, we're meeting
3 are driving, Are you staying, We're visiting
4 I'm starting, I'm selling

Unit 25

A 1 until
2 when
3 When
4 after/when
5 until
6 until
7 when
8 As soon as/When
9 until
10 When
11 before
12 as soon as
13 before

B 1 'll wait, arrive
2 'll see, go
3 'll phone, know
4 'll do, have
5 'll enjoy, get
6 'll tell, see
7 'll wait, comes
8 'll book, go
9 'll do, get
10 'll phone, arrive

C 1 'll/will pay
2 'll/will ask
3 has landed
4 have checked
5 'll/will read
6 have read
7 'll/will feel
8 have finished
9 'll/will be
10 have had

Unit 26

A 1 We'll ✓
2 I'm going to
3 I'm going to
4 he'll ✓
5 I'll
6 I'm going to
7 I'll ✓
8 He'll ✓
9 I'll ✓
10 You won't ✓

B 1 I'll/I will buy the tickets before I go to work.
2 As soon as Henry arrives, we'll/we will have something to eat.
3 The play will start after the music stops.
4 He won't/will not stop until he finishes the job.
5 When John gets here, we'll/we will go to the beach.

C 1 's/is going to do, 's/is cooking
2 's/is taking
3 's/is going to tidy
4 's/is going to buy, 's/she is playing
5 's/is going to paint
6 's/is going to wash, 's/is meeting

Unit 27

A

NOUN	Spain	Mary	bag	house
VERB	lives	met	swims	
AUXILIARY	are	have	must	
ADJECTIVE	wonderful	large	big	
ADVERB	quickly	slowly	well	
PRONOUN	you	she		
PREPOSITION	to	on		

B 1 find, on
2 I, beautiful
3 badly, match
4 You, must
5 pass, easily
6 carefully, in
7 Saturday, Do
8 sick, at

C Josephine got a job in New York in June. She went there with her husband, Mike. They are living in an apartment on Madison Avenue. Yesterday, they wanted to look at the sights. They saw the Statue of Liberty and walked through Manhattan. Last Monday, Josephine started her new job. Josephine and Mike want to live the rest of their lives in America.

D 1 d
2 a
3 a
4 h
5 d
6 f
7 d
8 d

Unit 28

A She didn't come. He is rich. They like sport.
We are studying. She is a teacher.
The bus hasn't arrived. They've gone.
I didn't like the programme.
They sent me a postcard. Paul and Joe have left.

B 1 They won the match.
2 He is eating a pizza.
3 Anna loves films.
4 I saw three cats.
5 We played tennis.
6 Steve wants a new house.
7 I forgot my passport.
8 She is taking a photo.
9 He drank an orange juice.
10 They like golf.
11 Joe visited Mexico.
12 We lost our money.

C 1 ✓
2 Michael has not come.
3 ✓
4 Anna does not eat eggs.
5 ✓

D 1 They sent us an invitation.
2 Michelle gave Mike a present.
3 I made her a sandwich.
4 Tom bought Ellie a new phone.
5 My uncle gave me a job.
6 She left you a message.
7 Mary is sending them some flowers.
8 She brings him a coffee every day.

irlanguage
مرجع زبان ایرانیان

E 1 They gave him a new car.
2 I was thirsty this morning.
3 My friends didn't arrive last night.
4 She lost her bag.
5 David is an actor.
6 I sent her a photograph.
7 We stayed in Turkey for a week.
8 Paul met his wife in Scotland.
9 We didn't win the match yesterday.
10 I wrote her a letter.
11 The film was wonderful.
12 They left today.
13 She brought me a cake.
14 They ate their dinner at seven o'clock.

Unit 29

A 1 Is she thirsty?
2 Can he swim well?
3 Were they tired after the match?
4 Will she return to Mexico?
5 May I leave now?
6 Have they all left?
7 Shall we wait a little longer?

B 1 Do they work in London?
2 Does she visit her uncle?
3 Did we begin the course in March?
4 Does her car go very fast?
5 Did you buy a new table?

C 1 Do you like French music?
2 Are you staying in the centre?
3 Did you come by plane?
4 Have you got a flat?
5 Are you working in Paris?
6 Have you visited the museums?
7 Did you find your flat easily?
8 Do you like French food?

D 1 Do the teachers give homework?
2 Are the classes small?
3 Does the school organize trips?
4 Will I get a certificate at the end of the course?
5 Shall I reserve a place now?
6 Can I pay by credit card?

E 1 Was the airport busy?
2 Was the sea warm?
3 Were the restaurants expensive?
4 Did you learn any Greek?
5 Did Mary like the beaches?
6 Was the hotel comfortable?

Unit 30

A 1 When do you get up?
2 Where does she come from?
3 When are they leaving?
4 Why is he waiting?
5 How are you?
6 How did you get to Scotland?
7 Where is the town centre?
8 Why does Paul drive so fast?
9 When does the film start?
10 How will you travel?
11 Why is she running?
12 Where did you buy that picture?

B 1 When
2 Why
3 How
4 Why
5 When
6 Where
7 How
8 Where
9 Why

C 1 Where did you meet Joanna?
2 How did you get home?
3 Why are you looking for a new job?
4 Where is the nearest hospital?
5 How do you get to Park Street?
6 When are they going to see the film?
7 Why did she leave the party at ten o'clock?
8 Where is he studying English?

D 1 ✓ 3 did 5 was 7 ✓
2 are 4 ✓ 6 does

Unit 31

A 1 Who 4 Which 7 Which 9 What
2 Which 5 Who 8 Who 10 Who
3 What 6 What

B 1 did 4 do 7 Who 10 Who
2 is 5 Which 8 are 11 is
3 were 6 are 9 What 12 is

C 1 did she buy?
2 book do they use?
3 did you see in Paris?
4 did you meet at the airport?
5 train are you catching?
6 will you visit in Paris?

D *Possible answers:*
1 What does Jack drink in the morning?
2 What are you doing/going to do tomorrow?
3 What are they doing/playing?
4 Which book do you prefer?
5 Who does she like?
6 Which car did he buy?

Unit 32

A 1 How often does he go to the gym?
2 How much does a single room cost?
3 How old were you when you went to live in Australia?
4 How many exams are you going to take?
5 How long will the course last?
6 How far is it from here to the nearest bus stop?

B 1 How many languages do/can you speak?
2 How far is it from here to the airport?
3 How much did the meal cost?
4 How long did you stay there?
5 How often do you brush your teeth?
6 How much cheese did you buy?

C 1 from, to 3 much 5 years old
2 every 4 from, to 6 many

D *Possible answers:*
1 How often do you go there?
2 How long do the lessons last?
3 How often do you study at home?
4 How many people are there in your class?
5 How old are they?
6 How far is it from your home?
7 How much does it cost?

Unit 33

A 1 What's/What is Peter like?
2 What are Anna's parents like?
3 What does Tom look like? (or What's/What is Tom like?)
4 What does Eva look like? (or What's/What is Eva like?)
5 What are Rob and Tom like?
6 What does Lucy look like? (or What's/What is Lucy like?)

B 1 What does a double bass sound like?
2 What do kiwis smell like?
3 What do kiwis taste like?
4 What does a double bass look like?
5 What do kiwis feel like?

C 1 Who does your sister like?
2 What are Paul's brothers like?
3 What does Jasmine like for breakfast?
4 Who are you like?
5 What's/What is Mary's husband like?

D 1 What's/What is John's flat like?
2 How was your boss yesterday?
3 What's/What is a squash racket like? (or What does a squash racket look like?)
4 How's/How is your sister?
5 What's/What is Portugal like?

Unit 34

A 1 Who wants some more coffee?
2 What happened at the end of the story?
3 Who is going to pay the bill?
4 What did he have for breakfast?
5 What did their email say?
6 Who knows the answer to my question?
7 What did they see?
8 Who is she phoning?

B 1 Who went on the trip?
2 What's happening in this film?
3 Who are you going to call?
4 What did you watch on TV last night?
5 Who sent these flowers?
6 What did you buy in that shop?
7 What has made Tom so happy?

C 1 What happened?
2 Who took his driving test?
3 What did Robert fail?
4 What did Robert say to Raphael?
5 Who met for coffee?

D 1 won the Nobel Prize
2 did Marconi and Braun invent
3 climbed Everest
4 did Prince Harry marry
5 destroyed Hiroshima
6 did Churchill smoke

Unit 35

A 1 Whose pens are those? They're mine.
2 Whose umbrella is that? It's Paul's.
3 Whose house is that? It's Steven King's.
4 Whose clothes are those? They're his.
5 Whose rings are those? They're Carla's.
6 Whose bike is that? It's Christine's.
7 Whose painting is that? It's John's.
8 Whose bag is that? It's hers.
9 Whose apple is that? It's Michelle's.
10 Whose motorbike is that? It's my grandfather's.
11 Whose taxi is that? It's ours.
12 Whose jackets are those? They're the tennis players'.

B
1 These are Peter's keys.
2 This is the boys' football.
3 This is my teacher's house.
4 These are my sisters' bikes.
5 This is the children's room.
6 This is the manager's chair.
7 These are Mark's suitcases.
8 These are the women's bags.
9 This is Jasmine's laptop.

C
1 greengrocer's
2 chemist's
3 butcher's
4 fishmonger's
5 newsagent's
6 travel agent's
7 hairdresser's

D
1 Who's
2 Whose
3 Who's
4 Who's
5 Whose
6 Whose
7 Whose
8 Who's

Unit 36

A
1 don't you
2 isn't it
3 does it
4 don't they
5 have you
6 aren't you

B
1 can't I
2 will it
3 was he
4 did I
5 will it
6 wasn't it
7 can you
8 didn't they

C
1 isn't it
2 haven't you
3 can you
4 don't they
5 won't I

D
1 speak French (very well), can't you?
2 heard this story, have you?
3 to Frank's party, didn't you?
4 very far from here, is it?
5 be angry, will she?
6 going to leave now, are you?
7 be at home tonight, won't you?

Unit 37

A
1 Yes, I will. ~~see Edward tomorrow.~~
2 No, I haven't. ~~finished my breakfast.~~
3 Yes, I do. ~~drive to work.~~
4 No, she didn't. ~~come yesterday.~~
5 Yes, I was. ~~tired after the game.~~
6 No, she can't. ~~sing very well.~~
7 Yes, he did. ~~have a holiday.~~
8 Yes, she is. ~~studying French.~~
9 No, I don't. ~~play golf.~~
10 Yes, I did. ~~buy a new table.~~
11 No, I'm not. ~~thirsty.~~
12 Yes, she has. ~~been there before.~~

B
1 No, he doesn't.
2 Yes, I do.
3 No, they aren't.
4 Yes, she did.
5 No, she wasn't.
6 Yes, I will.
7 No, I can't.
8 Yes, he has.

C
1 he does, he doesn't.
2 he can, he can't.
3 they will, they won't.
4 I do, I don't.
5 they are, they aren't.
6 I did, I didn't.
7 it is, it isn't.
8 they were, they weren't.

D
1 Yes, it does. ~ No, it doesn't.
2 Yes, it is. ~ No, it isn't.
3 Yes, they will. ~ No, they won't.
4 Yes, they are. ~ No, they aren't.
5 Yes, they can. ~ No, they can't.
6 Yes, they do. ~ No, they don't.

Unit 38

A
1 Neither
2 Neither
3 So
4 Neither
5 too
6 So
7 so
8 neither
9 too
10 either
11 so
12 neither

B
1 So are we.
2 Neither does mine.
3 Neither have I.
4 So was mine.
5 So has Frank.
6 Neither did George.
7 Neither can I.
8 Neither am I.
9 So did John.
10 So have I.
11 So are we.
12 So is mine.

C
1 neither does
2 doesn't either
3 so does
4 does too
5 neither can
6 can't either
7 can too
8 neither can
9 so has
10 so does
11 does too
12 so does
13 neither does

Unit 39

A
1 couldn't play
2 can't cook
3 can't give
4 couldn't see
5 can do
6 can play
7 can't find
8 couldn't understand
9 couldn't go, couldn't afford
10 couldn't do
11 can't talk

B
1 can't see anything without her glasses.
2 was so tired after the race that she couldn't stand up.
3 Robert could beat his younger brother at chess.
4 can see the whole of the city.

C
1 managed to/were able to
2 managed to/were able to
3 managed to/was able to
4 managed to/were able to
5 managed to/was able to
6 managed to/were able to

D
1 could type 15 words per minute, he can type 30 words per minute
2 could speak only a little French, she can speak French quite well
3 can cook quite well, she'll be able to work as a chef
4 could only play the piano, he can play the piano and the violin, he'll be able to be a professional musician
5 could only ride a bike, she can drive a car, she'll be able to drive a racing car

Unit 40

A
1 May I have a glass of orange juice, please? OR Please may I have a glass of orange juice?
2 Can we listen to their new song?
3 Can I use your mobile, please?
4 May I borrow your camera tomorrow?
5 Could you pass the menu, please?

B
1 Can I borrow your pen?
2 Can I turn on the TV, please?
3 May I close the window?
4 May I use your printer, please?

C
1 Could you carry one of these cases?
2 Could you tell me the way to Buckingham Palace, please?
3 Can you tell me the time?
4 Can you make me a sandwich, please?

D
1 could
2 Can't, MAY
3 Could, can't
4 Could, can, can't

Unit 41

A 1 must not take
2 You must pay
3 You must vacate
4 You must not smoke
5 You must return

B 1 You mustn't take
2 You mustn't make
3 You mustn't write
4 You must arrive
5 You must bring

C 1 I mustn't work late at night.
2 I must run every morning.
3 I mustn't sleep in the afternoon.
4 I mustn't watch TV all day.
5 I must visit my grandmother.
6 I must study after school.

D 1 mustn't/must not tell lies
2 mustn't/must not open the door
3 must come for dinner with us
4 must show identity cards
5 mustn't/must not eat
6 must follow the instructions

Unit 42

A 1 don't have to be polite
2 have to be polite
3 have to work
4 don't have to work
5 have to wear
6 don't have to wear

B 1 I didn't have to work
2 Do I have to do OR Have I got to do
3 I had to run
4 I had to go
5 Did you have to show
6 Do/Will I have to pay OR Have I got to pay
7 do you have to have OR have you got to have
8 You don't/won't have to decide OR You haven't got to decide
9 I had to wait
10 Do you have to work, I had to work

C 1 You have to fill in an application form. OR You've got to fill in an application form.
2 Do I have to give you a photograph? OR Have I got to give you a photograph?
3 No, you don't have to give me anything, except the money for the card! OR No, you haven't got to give me anything, etc.
4 We had to do some English tests.
5 How many questions did you have to answer?
6 We had to answer about 40 grammar questions.
7 I had to think about them very carefully.
8 Did you have to write a composition?
9 No, but we have to do one next week. OR No, but we have got to do one next week.

Unit 43

A 1 have to, don't have to
2 don't have to, mustn't
3 mustn't, don't have to
4 have to, have to

B 1 don't have to
2 mustn't
3 don't have to
4 mustn't
5 mustn't
6 don't have to
7 mustn't
8 don't have to
9 don't have to
10 mustn't

C 1 has
2 Does she
3 have to
4 she has
5 must
6 does she
7 mustn't

Unit 44

A 1 must like
2 can't come
3 can't belong
4 can't live
5 must have
6 must remember
7 can't want
8 must spend

B 1 can't be, could be
2 can't be, could be
3 can't be, could be
4 can't be, could be
5 could be, can't be
6 must be

C 1 might go to Portugal
2 must cost a lot of money
3 may come this weekend
4 can't take much interest
5 must work long hours
6 might be at the gym, might also be at the shops

Unit 45

A 1 You shouldn't park
2 should I cook
3 You should wear
4 You shouldn't smoke
5 We should arrive
6 Should I pay
7 I should apply
8 I should write
9 I shouldn't eat
10 We should complain
11 I should buy

B 1 You should cut
2 You should use
3 You shouldn't put
4 You should wait
5 You should heat
6 You should cut

C 1 Which website should I use?
2 I think you should go on the 'What Bike?' website.
3 What do you think I should do before I buy a bike?
4 I don't think you should decide too quickly.
5 You should check the condition of the bike.
6 You should ask somebody who knows about bikes to look at the bike for you.
7 You shouldn't buy one simply because it looks nice!
8 You should be very careful.

Unit 46

A 1 shouldn't move the person yourself, should call an ambulance
2 should give you a new cup
3 shouldn't let him eat so much, should make him do lots of sport
4 shouldn't touch anything, should leave everything where it is
5 shouldn't drive home in her car, should ask someone to take her
6 shouldn't borrow money

B 1 they'd/they had better clear everything away
2 we'd/we had better take our umbrellas.
3 I'd/I had better go to bed early too.

C 1 ought to
2 shouldn't/should not
3 'd/had better not
4 ought not to
5 'd/had better

Unit 47

A 1 Does Jacob need a ladder, he does
2 Do we need to go to the shops, we don't
3 Does John need to leave before lunch, he doesn't
4 Do they need to check the train times, they do

B 1 We don't need a lot of red paper.
2 Mark needn't get everything ready today.
3 Mary needn't leave at six o'clock.
4 Anna doesn't need a new bag.

C
1 For maths exams, students need to bring pens and pencils.
2 For football competitions, students needn't bring football shirts.
3 For drawing exams, students needn't bring paper.
4 For art exams, students need to bring brushes.
5 For tennis competitions, students needn't bring balls.
6 For football competitions, students need to bring shorts and boots.
7 For maths exams, students needn't bring rubbers.
8 For drawing exams, students need to bring rulers and pencils.

D
1 didn't need to pay OR needn't have paid
2 didn't need to phone
3 needn't have bought
4 didn't need to work OR needn't have worked
5 didn't need to take

Unit 48

A
1 didn't/did not have to, had to
2 did you have to, had to
3 Did you have to, had to
4 did you have to, had to, didn't/did not have to
5 Did they have to, didn't/did not have to, had to

B
1 should have bought
2 shouldn't have gone
3 shouldn't have eaten
4 should have locked
5 shouldn't have borrowed

C
1 Matt had to work on Sunday.
2 Jasmine didn't have to work on Sunday.
3 Lewis should have worked on Sunday
4 Mary didn't have to work on Saturday.
5 Noah should have worked on Saturday
6 Daniel had to work on Saturday.
7 Jasmine should have worked on Saturday
8 Lewis didn't have to work on Saturday.

Unit 49

A

1 an	3 a	5 an	7 an
2 a	4 an	6 a	8 a

B
1 a Japanese city.
2 an English airport.
3 an Indian river.
4 a university town.
5 a German car.
6 a European country.

C

1 a	6 an	11 a	16 an
2 a	7 a	12 a	17 the
3 a	8 the	13 a	18 the
4 the	9 the	14 The	
5 a	10 the	15 the	

D

1 ✓	3 a	5 ✓, a	7 the
2 the, the	4 a	6 a	

Unit 50

A

1 a, –	3 a, the	5 an, the	7 –, an, the
2 –, –	4 –, a	6 a, a	8 a, –

B

1 –, the	4 –	7 –	10 the, the
2 the	5 –, –	8 –	11 the, the, the
3 a, the	6 a, the	9 –, the	12 –

C

1 an	4 the	7 –	10 a
2 a	5 a	8 a	11 the
3 –	6 a	9 the	12 –

D

1 a	4 the	7 a
2 the	5 the	8 the
3 a	6 a	9 the

Unit 51

A

1 people	5 cars	9 children
2 bananas	6 knives	10 buses
3 mice	7 sheep	11 feet
4 watches	8 chairs	

B

knives ✓	~~tooths~~	matches ✓	~~wishs~~
~~matchs~~	~~citys~~	cities ✓	men ✓
countries ✓	potatoes ✓	teeth ✓	~~familys~~
wishes ✓	~~tomatos~~	~~mouses~~	~~wifes~~
wives ✓	~~potatos~~	~~countrys~~	tomatoes ✓
~~mans~~	mice ✓	~~knifes~~	families ✓

C
1 Would you like one?
2 But the strawberry ones are nicer.
3 I like the one with the red door.
4 This time I want a green one.
5 There isn't an easy one.
6 Do you mean the ones (that) we took in Turkey?

D

1 ones	4 one	7 one	10 one
2 ones	5 one	8 one	11 ones
3 one	6 one	9 ones	12 one

Unit 52

A

1 this	4 This	7 that	10 That
2 These	5 These	8 That	
3 These	6 those	9 Those	

B (In any order)
1 How much are those pineapples?
2 How much are these pears?
3 How much are those lemons?
4 How much are these cabbages?
5 How much are those bananas?
6 How much are these potatoes?
7 How much are those tomatoes?
8 How much are these melons?

C

1 these	4 those	7 that	10 this
2 These	5 that	8 that	
3 this	6 those	9 that	

Unit 53

A

house	cat	cheese	car
coat	snow	lemon	advice
clock	table	tea	ball
museum	apple	painting	petrol
news	cigar	teacher	film
rain	holiday	office	bed
pen	sugar	homework	watch
tennis	doctor	cinema	luggage
chair	banana	information	cup
coffee	shoe	shirt	money
exam	hour	city	park
toast	sock	nose	water
school	bread	book	jumper
cloud	milk	bike	television

B

1 slice	4 piece	7 spoonfuls	10 kilo
2 pieces	5 glass	8 litres	
3 bottle	6 pieces	9 piece	

C

1 ✗	5 ✓	9 ✗	13 ✗	17 ✗
2 ✗	6 ✓	10 ✓	14 ✗	18 ✗
3 ✓	7 ✗	11 ✓	15 ✓	19 ✓
4 ✓	8 ✗	12 ✓	16 ✓	20 ✓

D

1 slice, some	5 two	9 cup, slice
2 pieces	6 some, the	10 two, the
3 cup	7 a, the	
4 bottle, some	8 cartons, the	

Unit 54

A
1 There aren't any shops open today.
2 Can I have some cheese, please?
3 Are there any museums in Cambridge?
4 You can take any train from platform 9.
5 Do you speak any Spanish?
6 We've brought no money with us.

B
1 She didn't/did not give me any advice.
2 There aren't/are not any good films at the cinema this week.
3 There isn't/is not any cake in the cupboard.
4 Beth didn't/did not have any heavy luggage to take to the airport.
5 There aren't/are not any letters for you today.
6 We didn't/did not see any snow on the mountains this morning.

C

1 some	6 some	11 a	16 any
2 no	7 some	12 no	17 a
3 some	8 any	13 a	18 a
4 some	9 a	14 any	
5 a/some	10 a	15 some	

Unit 55

A
1 They are arriving today. I'm meeting them at the station.
2 I'm looking for Mary. Have you seen her? She isn't at home.
3 We saw a film called *The Tiger* yesterday. Have you seen it?
4 Come to the swimming pool with us. We are leaving now.
5 They are meeting him today. Paul is having lunch with them.
6 There's Jack! He's got a heavy suitcase. Shall we help him?

B

1 I, her, she, me	5 It, them, they, it
2 She, it, it, her	6 You, us, we, you
3 We, you, you, us	7 I, you, you, me
4 They, him, he, them	

C

1 I	5 He	9 them	13 they
2 I	6 it	10 it	14 us
3 They	7 him	11 It	15 we
4 She	8 me	12 me	16 them

Unit 56

A

1 There is, it is	3 There are, they are
2 There are, they are	4 There is, it is

B
1 There were five of us.
2 There were six of them.
3 There were 12 of us.

C
1 It rains a lot in April.
2 There's fog on the motorway this morning.
3 It's very cloudy in the mountains.
4 There's a lot of wind on the west coast.

D

1 there was	4 there have been
2 there will be	5 There may be
3 there used to be	

E
1 takes about five minutes to cook
2 does it take to make, It takes a few minutes
3 takes about three hours to bake
4 does it take to cook a, It takes about two hours
5 takes about an hour to make

Unit 57

A

1 your, yours	6 her, hers
2 her, hers	7 our, ours
3 their, theirs	8 my, mine
4 his, his	9 his, his
5 my, mine	

B

1 hers	4 ours	7 their	10 my
2 mine	5 hers	8 yours	11 your
3 their	6 our	9 his	

C

1 mine	6 ✓
2 a friend of mine	7 ✓
3 children's	8 ✓
4 It's	9 its
5 writer's	10 ✓

D

1 mine	3 theirs	5 hers	7 his
2 his	4 ours	6 yours	

Unit 58

A

1 himself	3 ourselves	5 himself
2 myself	4 themselves	6 himself

B
1 enjoyed ourselves very much
2 burnt myself
3 He taught himself
4 I think I'm going to buy/I'll buy myself
5 She made herself a sandwich

C

1 myself	3 themselves	5 himself
2 herself	4 ourselves	

D
1 You'll have to send it yourself.
2 we carried all our luggage ourselves.
3 Did you take it yourself?
4 she (had) made herself.
5 I chose it myself.
6 I invented the recipe myself.

E

1 each other	4 ourselves
2 each other	5 each other
3 yourself/yourselves	6 each other

Unit 59

A
1 She offered James a sweet.
2 He showed Mary his holiday photographs.
3 Have you sent them an invitation?
4 Did you buy her a birthday present?
5 I gave a friend some of my books.
6 When you go to the pharmacy, could you get me some tissues?

B
1 a sweet to James.
2 his holiday photographs to Mary.
3 an invitation to them?
4 a birthday present for her?
5 some of my books to a friend.
6 some tissues for me?

C
1 They sent us an invitation.
2 Michelle gave a present to Mike.
3 I made her a sandwich.
4 Tom bought a new phone for Ellie.
5 My uncle sold me his camera.
6 She left a message for you.
7 Mary sent them some flowers.
8 Did you take the money to the bank?

D 1 The waiter fetched them some wine.
The waiter fetched some wine for them.
2 The waiter showed her the bottle.
The waiter showed the bottle to Lucy.
3 The chef cooked them a special meal.
The chef cooked a special meal for them.
4 The waiter gave Tim the bill.
The waiter gave the bill to Tim.
5 Lucy lent Tim some money, because he didn't have enough to pay the bill.
Lucy lent some money to Tim, because he didn't have enough to pay the bill.

Unit 60

A 1 ✗ ~~(many information)~~
2 ✓
3 ✗ ~~(How much people)~~
4 ✓
5 ✗ ~~(Is there many news)~~
6 ✓
7 ✗ ~~(many luggage)~~
8 ✓

B 1 much
2 many
3 many
4 much
5 much
6 many
7 much
8 many
9 many
10 much
11 many
12 many
13 much
14 many
15 much
16 much
17 much
18 many
19 much
20 many
21 many

C 1 much, many
2 How much, much, more
3 much, many
4 How much, many, more
5 much, many
6 How much, How many, much
7 How many, much

D 1 many
2 more
3 much
4 many
5 more
6 much
7 more
8 many
9 more

Unit 61

A 1 No, I ate a lot of/lots of cake in town.
2 Yes, please. I have a lot of/lots of luggage.
3 Yes, I met a lot of/lots of interesting people.
4 Yes, I have a lot of/lots of money at the moment.
5 No, he isn't. He has a lot of/lots of things to do.
6 Yes, she gave me a lot of/lots of good advice.

B 1 a lot of cheese
2 a little milk
3 a few apples
4 a lot of cars
5 a little bread
6 a few books
7 a little money

C 1 Would you like a few biscuits?
2 Shall I make you a few sandwiches?
3 Would you like a little cheese?
4 Can I bring you a little cake?
5 Would you like a little milk in your coffee?
6 Would you like a little more sugar in your coffee?

D 1 travel
2 ✓
3 a few
4 is
5 ✓
6 a little
7 ✓
8 a few

Unit 62

A 1 Somebody
2 somewhere
3 anyone
4 everything
5 something
6 nothing
7 everywhere
8 somebody
9 Everyone, nobody

B 1 knew
2 haven't seen
3 didn't eat
4 has happened
5 is
6 didn't say

C 1 anything interesting
2 anywhere else
3 anywhere cheap
4 somewhere else
5 something hot

D 1 somebody (OR someone)
2 somebody (OR someone)
3 everywhere
4 something
5 everything
6 anybody (OR anyone)
7 nowhere
8 anything
9 something
10 something

Unit 63

A 1 ✓
2 Each assignment on the course has to
3 ✓
4 every car park was full.
5 ✓
6 each of them lasts

B 1 other
2 others
3 other
4 another
5 another

C 1 Another
2 other
3 other
4 another
5 Other
6 others
7 another

D 1 the other
2 other, other
3 the others
4 One, the other
5 another

Unit 64

A 1 all of the
2 none of
3 some of the
4 some of
5 some of
6 none of
7 none of the
8 all of the

B 1 all the
2 All the (OR Some of the)
3 Some
4 None of the
5 all
6 None of the
7 all
8 All
9 None of the
10 All the
11 Some
12 some of the

C 1 Most professional footballers are well off and some of them are very rich.
2 Most of the sea is very salty and none of it is fresh water.
3 Some pop music is very pleasant but some of it is terrible.
4 Most Indian food is spicy and some of it is very spicy.
5 All of my relatives are slim and none of them is/are very tall.
6 Most of my friends are students but none of them is/are very clever.
7 Most of Nepal is mountainous and none of it is flat.
8 Most of the Earth is inhabited but some of it is desert.

Unit 65

A My favourite picture is one of a large, square room by a Dutch artist. An elegant man sits on a wooden bench in a corner. He has a small, black dog at his feet. The dog looks sleepy. Through the open window you can see bright sunshine. When I look at this picture I feel warm and happy.

B 1 long
2 tall
3 old
4 free
5 careful
6 busy
7 valuable
8 good
9 late

C
1 sounds
2 smell
3 looked
4 feel
5 look
6 sounds

D
1 green cotton, ✓
2 modern Spanish
3 ✓, large black
4 young Polish
5 new Japanese
6 ✓

E
1 A Volkswagen, German
2 Vincent van Gogh, Dutch
3 Sherlock Holmes, English
4 Audrey Tautou, French
5 Pizza, Italian
6 Alfred Nobel, Swedish
7 Chang, Chinese
8 Salamanca, Spanish

Unit 66

A
1 excited
2 surprised
3 interesting
4 tiring
5 surprised
6 bored
7 exciting
8 boring

B
1 amusing
2 boring
3 interested
4 confusing
5 bored
6 amused
7 confused
8 surprising
9 surprised

C
1 entertaining
2 interesting
3 confusing
4 frightened
5 bored
6 boring
7 surprising
8 convincing
9 disappointed
10 convinced
11 relaxed
12 surprised

Unit 67

A
1 ~~fourty-nine~~ forty-nine ✓
2 six hundred ✓ ~~six hundreds~~
3 fourth ✓ ~~forth~~
4 ~~twelvth~~ twelfth ✓
5 two thousand dollars ✓ ~~two thousands dollars~~
6 ~~twenty-three~~ twenty-third ✓
7 ~~eighty-seven~~ seventy-eight ✓
8 ~~eightth~~ eighth ✓
9 seventeen ✓ ~~seventeenth~~
10 ~~fiveth~~ fifth ✓
11 seven million ✓ ~~seven millions~~
12 ninth ✓ ~~nineth~~
13 ~~thirteenth~~ thirtieth ✓
14 three hundred and ninety-five ✓ ~~three hundred ninety-five~~

B
1 four hundred and sixty-two
2 twentieth
3 first
4 twelfth
5 nine million
6 three hundred and ten
7 eighth
8 one hundred and eleven
9 fourteen
10 second
11 five thousand
12 sixty-eight
13 thirty-fourth
14 one hundred and fifty
15 third
16 twenty-fifth
17 nineteenth

C
1 twenty-three on the second floor.
2 lives in flat eleven on the first floor.
3 lives in flat thirty-seven on the third floor.
4 lives in flat fifty-four on the fifth floor.
5 lives in flat seventy-two on the seventh floor.
6 lives in flat twenty-five on the second floor.
7 lives in flat fifty-nine on the fifth floor.
8 lives in flat sixty-one on the sixth floor.

D
1 two thousand and one.
2 the sixteenth of June, two thousand and eight.
3 the twenty-ninth of September.
4 two thousand and twelve
5 the tenth of January, two thousand and thirteen
6 the ninth of March.
7 two thousand and fifteen.

Unit 68

A
1 as quickly as
2 as angry as
3 as expensive as
4 as big as
5 as good as
6 as hard as

B
1 as fast as
2 as tall as
3 as long as
4 as clean as
5 as fresh as
6 as full as
7 as strong as
8 as wide as
9 as big as

C
1 as much (money) as
2 as many countries as
3 as many jobs as
4 as much luggage as
5 as many questions as
6 as much (money) as

Unit 69

A
1 too dark
2 enough information
3 too late
4 enough food
5 too nervous
6 too fast
7 good enough
8 enough clothes
9 well enough
10 strong enough
11 too cold
12 enough stamps

B
1 enough time
2 too many questions
3 warm enough
4 too much salt
5 enough questions
6 too many people
7 comfortable enough
8 too much noise
9 enough players
10 enough bread
11 too many mistakes

C
1 I'm too tired to do any more work.
2 Julia isn't good enough to pass the exam.
3 Clive is too short to play basketball. (OR Clive isn't tall enough to play basketball.)
4 His girlfriend was too ill to go to the party. (OR His girlfriend wasn't well enough to go to the party.)
5 David didn't have enough money to pay the bill.
6 Is it hot enough to go to the beach?
7 I'm too busy to see you tonight.
8 It's too early (for me) to go home.
9 Chris didn't have enough tools to repair the car.
10 I didn't have enough time to visit all the museums.

Unit 70

A
1 such
2 so
3 such
4 so
5 such
6 such
7 so
8 so

B
1 such
2 such an
3 such a
4 such
5 such a
6 such an

C
1 He's such a wonderful cook.
2 Those people are making so much noise.
3 He was/is so lucky.
4 She wears such pretty clothes.
5 They were so delicious.
6 It's such an unhealthy habit.
7 It was so easy.

D 1 so slowly that she didn't finish the exam.
2 so expensive that we didn't buy it.
3 so tired that he didn't go out.
4 so small that Peter couldn't see them.
5 so much food that I couldn't finish it.

Unit 71

A 1 bigger
2 more careful
3 more expensive
4 better
5 fatter
6 more famous
7 newer
8 more modern
9 younger
10 cheaper
11 more delicious
12 richer
13 longer
14 hungrier
15 nicer
16 happier
17 more difficult
18 older
19 more beautiful
20 friendlier
21 hotter
22 more wonderful
23 worse
24 smaller
25 sadder

B 1 Alaska is colder than Spain.
2 Steve is hungrier than Jasmine.
3 Washington is smaller than New York.
4 Mary is happier than Mike.
5 I am younger than my brother.
6 Film stars are richer than teachers.
7 Peter is friendlier than Chris.

C 1 than
2 more
3 is
4 Queen Anne, King John
5 expensive
6 slower
7 King John, Queen Anne
8 longer

Unit 72

A 1 Manchester is the friendliest city in England.
2 The Manhattan is the most expensive restaurant in New York.
3 The Nile is the longest river in Africa.
4 Granada is the most beautiful town in Spain.
5 The Mona Lisa is the most famous painting in the world.
6 Mont Blanc is the highest mountain in Europe.

B 1 the worst
2 the funniest
3 the tallest
4 the best
5 the most beautiful

C 1 The Jolly James is the shortest
2 The Red Devil is the fastest
3 The Jolly James is the slowest
4 the most expensive
5 the least expensive

D 1 It's the biggest ship I've ever seen.
2 He's the richest man I've ever met.
3 It's the most difficult exam I've ever done.
4 It's the saddest film I've ever seen.
5 She's the happiest person I've ever met.
6 It's the most modern flat I've ever seen.
7 It's the hottest country I've ever visited.
8 It's the smallest dog I've ever seen.

Unit 73

A 1 slowly
2 quickly
3 immediate
4 bad
5 badly
6 well

B 1 carefully
2 angrily
3 easily
4 fast
5 badly
6 busily
7 happily

C 1 well
2 fast
3 badly
4 hard
5 slowly

D 1 faster
2 better, harder
3 more cheaply
4 more confidently, better
5 less expensively
6 more comfortably

Unit 74

A 1 You must always lock the front door when you leave.
2 Steve and Charlotte play golf twice a month.
3 I usually eat a sandwich for lunch.
4 I sometimes go to jazz concerts at the weekend.
5 My teacher gives me a lot of homework every day.
6 We hardly ever see our Mexican friends.
7 They often go to Morocco for their holidays.
8 William and Marie go to the theatre four times a year.
9 They are rarely at home in the evening.

B 1 Liz rarely gets up early. Nathan always gets up early.
2 Liz often watches TV. Nathan sometimes watches TV.
3 Liz rarely takes a taxi. Nathan never takes a taxi.
4 Liz usually has supper at home. Nathan often has supper at home.

C 1 He practices his French every day/once a day.
2 He phones his mother three times a month.
3 He has a shower twice a day/two times a day.
4 He goes abroad once a year.
5 He visits his sister three times a year.
6 He plays tennis four times a week.

Unit 75

A 1 outside
2 out
3 nearby
4 upstairs
5 forwards
6 away
7 away
8 abroad

B 1 Turn left OR Turn right
2 straight ahead
3 Turn right OR Turn left
4 on the right

C 1 Then/Next/Secondly/After that I made a list of apartments I could afford.
2 Then/Next/Thirdly/After that I went to see some of the apartments.
3 Then/Next/After that I decided which apartment to rent.
4 Then/Next/After that I agreed with the landlord that I would rent it.
5 Then/Next/After that I signed the contract.
6 Then/Next/After that I paid the first month's rent as a deposit.
7 Then/After that/Afterwards/Finally/Lastly I moved into the apartment.

Unit 76

A 1 quite
2 quite
3 really
4 really
5 quite
6 quite
7 really
8 quite
9 really
10 quite

B 1 a pleasant, sunny day
2 a nice big smile
3 a large black coffee
4 a horrible old coat
5 a large white building
6 a big grey bird
7 a tall thin woman
8 a small blue car
9 a strange little story

C 1 a coffee pot
2 a rubbish bin
3 a tennis court
4 a road sign
5 a door handle
6 a picture frame
7 a key ring
8 a light bulb
9 a coat hanger
10 a paper cup
11 a soup bowl

Unit 77

A 1 She definitely comes from Leeds.
2 The meal is nearly ready.
3 He even lent me some money.
4 She certainly works very hard.
5 There were only two tickets left.

B 1 Tickets for the game have almost sold out.
2 They probably won't become champions.
3 He scored a penalty and he also created two goals.
4 They just didn't play well enough to win.
5 They nearly won but they were unlucky at the end.

C 1 are almost unbelievable
2 just doesn't create
3 aren't very good either
4 was only released
5 has certainly attracted
6 and she can also sing

D 1 have worked well all day.
2 swam in the sea after lunch.
3 rained heavily during the night.
4 did my homework in my room before supper.
5 played better last week.

Unit 78

A 1 in front of
2 near
3 ✓
4 ✓
5 behind
6 above
7 on
8 in

B 1 on
2 on, in
3 at
4 on
5 in, on
6 at

C 1 into, out of, into
2 onto, into, off, onto

D 1 from
2 across
3 along
4 past
5 up
6 in front of
7 down
8 through
9 under

Unit 79

A 1 at
2 in
3 on
4 at
5 in
6 at
7 in
8 on
9 at

B 1 winter
2 weekend
3 Saturday
4 two o'clock
5 2015
6 birthday

C 1 ✓, ~~in~~ on
2 ✓, ~~in~~ –
3 ~~on~~ at, ✓, ~~in~~ at
4 ~~on~~ –, ✓
5 ✓ OR for, ~~at~~ in

D 1 'm meeting Steve on Wednesday morning.
2 'm going to the bank at ten o'clock on Friday.
3 I'm going sailing at the weekend.
4 I'm starting a new job next Monday.
5 I'm visiting Egypt in December.
6 I'm selling my house on 10th January.

E 1 from June to August.
2 from ten o'clock.
3 from March.
4 from Monday to Friday.
5 from 2009 to 2012.
6 from January.

Unit 80

A 1 like
2 as
3 like
4 As
5 as
6 like

B 1 as
2 like
3 like
4 as
5 like
6 as
7 like
8 as

C 1 like
2 As
3 like
4 as if/as though
5 Like
6 like
7 As

D 1 like
2 like
3 as
4 As
5 as
6 as if/as though
7 as if/as though/like
8 as

Unit 81

A 1 with
2 in
3 in
4 with
5 in
6 with
7 with
8 in
9 in
10 with
11 with
12 in
13 with
14 in

B 1 with (l)
2 with (m)
3 with (k)
4 with (i)
5 with (d)
6 with (c)
7 with (f)
8 with (a)
9 by (h)
10 in (j)
11 with (o)
12 by (b)
13 without (n)
14 with (e)

C 1 He repaired the car by changing some of the parts.
2 She answered the question without reading it carefully.
3 He left without saying thank you.
4 She got the money by selling her car.
5 I threw the letter away without opening it.
6 We worked all day without eating anything.
7 He lost weight by going on a strict diet.
8 I went out without locking the door.

Unit 82

A 1 c
2 e
3 f
4 g
5 a
6 b

B 1 in
2 in
3 by
4 by, by, in
5 by

C 1 at once
2 For example
3 in charge
4 by mistake
5 At first
6 on holiday
7 for ever OR forever

D 1 In
2 on
3 in
4 but
5 on

Unit 83

A 1 for
2 to
3 for
4 –
5 –
6 –
7 –
8 on
9 –
10 with
11 for
12 to

B 1 for
2 –
3 about
4 –
5 for
6 about
7 with

C 1 What are they talking about?
2 How much is she asking for?
3 How many jobs has she applied for?
4 what are you listening to?

D 1 at
2 –
3 for
4 to
5 for
6 at
7 –
8 –

Unit 84

A
1 for
2 about
3 with
4 by
5 of
6 in
7 of
8 with
9 at
10 of
11 with
12 on
13 at
14 of

B
1 A: Is their daughter good at school work?
B: Yes, in fact she is brilliant at everything.
2 A: Why is Mr Bell's dog hiding?
B: Because it's afraid of fireworks.
3 A: Is Jenny fond of classical music?
B: Yes, she is very keen on Bach, for example.
4 A: Are you pleased with Peter's exam results?
B: Yes, we are very proud of him.

C
1 famous for
2 busy
3 full of
4 good at
5 used to
6 interested in
7 sick of
8 worried about
9 no good
10 worth

Unit 85

A
1 He's got/He has got a flat in the town centre.
2 Have you got a car?
3 I haven't got a brother.
4 She's got/She has got a headache.
5 Has Steve got brown hair?
6 John always has a holiday in August.
7 She has a bath every Friday.
8 Do you have a shower in the morning?
9 I always have lunch in the park.
10 They don't have a swimming pool.

B
1 she's got a flat in Edinburgh.
2 Have you got a headache?
3 She hasn't got blonde hair.
4 Do you have a holiday every year?
5 he's having a shower.
6 I haven't got a car.
7 Do you have dinner at seven o'clock?

C
1 ✓
2 I don't have lunch every day.
3 Do you have a shower every day?
4 ✓
5 ✓
6 ✓
7 I have a bath at ten o'clock and I go to bed at eleven o'clock.
8 They're having dinner at the moment.
9 ✓
10 Have a good weekend!
11 ✓

Unit 86

A
1 gets
2 get
3 do
4 made
5 did
6 got
7 gets
8 make
9 make
10 made
11 getting
12 got

B
1 had/made
2 had
3 got
4 got
5 did
6 had
7 had/made
8 done
9 did
10 made/had
11 did

C
1 do
2 made
3 got
4 had
5 made
6 have
7 do

Unit 87

A
1 brought them up
2 crossed them out
3 give it in
4 pick her up
5 put them away

B
1 look up to
2 gave out
3 put (you) up
4 going on
5 broke down

C
1 looked (it) up
2 get off
3 run out of
4 find out
5 try on
6 take off
7 put (them) on
8 set off

D
1 ~~down~~/up
2 up/~~in~~
3 in/~~up~~
4 up/~~out~~
5 down/~~out~~
6 ~~in~~/off
7 ~~up~~/off
8 out/~~up~~
9 ~~out~~/off
10 up/~~off~~
11 about/~~up~~
12 ~~out~~/up
13 in/~~on~~
14 out/~~up~~
15 ~~out~~/off
16 ~~in~~/on

Unit 88

A
1 knocked it down
2 get it off
3 rubbed it out
4 break it off

B
1 got away with
2 put up with
3 drop in
4 Hang on
5 sorted out

C
1 going on
2 dropped in/were dropping in
3 made (them) up
4 come about
5 cut down
6 let (him) out
7 stay in
8 give up
9 laid off
10 shut (the factory) down
11 face up to
12 do away with
13 paid (something) in
14 draw out
15 set up
16 carry (it) on

Unit 89

A
1 are held
2 is spoken
3 was written
4 are checked
5 was built
6 are sold
7 were produced
8 was founded

B
1 are the Olympic Games held?
2 is English spoken?
3 was 'Yesterday' written by?
4 are car speeds checked?
5 was the Channel Tunnel built?
6 are souvenirs sold?
7 were the first Volkswagen Beetles produced?
8 was *the Times* newspaper founded?

C
1 The electric light bulb was invented by Thomas Edison.
2 The office was painted last week.
3 The accident was seen by several people.
4 Where are these cars made?
5 The agreement was signed by six countries.
6 I was helped by a stranger.
7 The post isn't/is not delivered on Sundays.

D
1 produced
2 were exported
3 started
4 were tested
5 was called
6 exported
7 are sold

Unit 90

A
1 was Mary examined (by the doctor)?
2 will the food be prepared?
3 has this window been broken?

B
1 was not examined (by the doctor) this morning.
2 will not be prepared on Friday.
3 has not been broken three times.

C
1 are made
2 is being filled
3 must be finished
4 were found
5 has been stolen

D
1 has been won by the French team.
2 were being trained by a Danish specialist.
3 can be played by people of all ages.
4 was being watched by a large crowd.
5 were designed by my daughter.
6 have been marked by two different teachers.
7 is being followed by a police car.

E
1 were built
2 be finished
3 been painted
4 been taken
5 be sent
6 be made
7 were being loaded
8 be delivered

Unit 91

A
1 has her food delivered.
2 had the/his meat cut
3 has her hair cut
4 had his eyes checked.
5 will have her blood pressure checked.
6 had her car serviced.
7 are going to have the roof mended

B
1 They have their carpets cleaned there.
2 I must have the tyres on my car checked.
3 I ought to have a new key made for the front door.
4 have our flat painted.
5 I had my watch mended there last week.
6 My husband had his eyes tested there last winter.
7 have that coffee stain removed.

C
1 had his driving licence taken away by the police.
2 had her bike stolen from the garage.
3 Fiona had her glasses broken.
4 John had his clothes torn in a fight.
5 Jasmine had her flat burgled at the weekend.
6 We had our electricity cut off because we had forgotten to pay the bill.

Unit 92

A
1 to call
2 be
3 clean
4 enjoy
5 to wait
6 to invite
7 reply
8 feel
9 drive
10 to bring
11 receive

B
1 come to the meeting on Friday.
2 to meet some friends tonight.
3 to listen to what I'm telling you.
4 to lock the door when you go out.
5 go out for a meal this evening.
6 me pay for the meal.
7 to do a course in Art History.
8 to pay the bill.
9 to sit in this chair?
10 me laugh a lot.
11 phone you tomorrow.
12 be angry with you.
13 me drive her new car.

C
1 do
2 to go
3 to come
4 to leave
5 to start
6 to take
7 to reach
8 meet
9 be

Unit 93

A
1 stop running
2 don't mind listening
3 keeps losing
4 enjoys going, likes meeting
5 keep making
6 finish eating
7 doesn't enjoy driving, loves cycling

B
1 like living
2 would like to be
3 don't like getting up
4 would like to go out
5 would like to find
6 don't like watching
7 likes lying

C
1 he went dancing.
2 he went cycling.
3 he went swimming.
4 he went skiing.
5 he went sailing.

D 1 Playing 2 Driving 3 Eating

Unit 94

A
1 to go
2 playing
3 to buy
4 to take
5 repairing
6 to visit
7 talking
8 to help
9 to pay
10 to live
11 talking

B
1 gave up studying
2 enjoy doing
3 deserve to pass
4 refuses to listen
5 keep studying
6 offered to help
7 promised to study
8 want to talk
9 stop asking
10 dislike listening
11 seem to think
12 need to study
13 have to find

C
1 to buy
2 to open
3 meeting
4 to call
5 taking
6 washing
7 to finish
8 to feed
9 to invite

Unit 95

A
1 is an appliance for boiling water.
2 is an instrument for measuring temperature.
3 is an appliance for cleaning carpets.
4 is an appliance for keeping food cold.
5 is an instrument for seeing things at a distance.
6 is an instrument for measuring speed.
7 is an appliance for keeping food frozen.
8 is a tool for making holes.

B
1 A: What does Mary want the money for?
B: She wants the money for a train ticket.
2 A: What does Raphael want the flour for?
B: He wants the flour for a cake.
3 A: What did William go to the butcher's for?
B: He went to the butcher's for some sausages.
4 A: What does Helen want the polish for?
B: She wants it for her shoes.
5 A: What did Alice go to the library for?
B: She went to the library for a book on India.
6 A: What did Jasmine phone Anna for?
B: She phoned Anna for some advice.

C 1 She wants the money to buy a train ticket.
2 He wants the flour to make a cake.
3 He went to the butcher's to buy some sausages.
4 She wants the polish to clean her shoes.
5 She went to the library to borrow a book.
6 She phoned Anna to get some advice.

D 1 What did he come for?
2 A bus is for carrying passengers.
3 She went to the baker's to buy some bread / for some bread.
4 The mayor came to give the prizes.
5 The woman jumped into the river to save the child.
6 I'm training hard to get fit.
7 This is a computer program for making three-dimensional drawings.
8 Can I use your pen to sign this form?

Unit 96

A 1 Anna taught Mary to drive last year.
2 Don't worry! Tomorrow I will persuade my father to see a doctor.
3 The boss has forbidden his staff to wear jeans in the office.
4 Last Sunday, John invited Michelle to come for lunch.
5 Next year, the teacher will allow the students to use calculators in exams.

B 1 to come home early.
2 to work more quickly.
3 to do our best in the game.
4 to come/go to her party on Saturday.

C 1 she would like him to stay.
2 she did help him to finish.
3 she/he did advise him to stay in bed.
4 she does allow them to go to late-night parties.
5 she did remind him to call.

D 1 The driver let the old man travel on the bus without a ticket.
2 Jack made his younger brother wash the dishes.
3 I don't let people smoke in my house or my car!

E 1 watched Tom prepare the sandwiches.
2 felt the ground shake.
3 see Noah leave early?

Unit 97

A 1 you don't eat meat.
2 in a hot country, you don't like cold weather.
3 you have to work very hard.
4 do a lot of exercise, you stay fit and healthy.
5 mechanic, you understand engines.
6 read the news, you know what's happening in the world.

B 1 the weather's/is, we'll/will drive
2 she posts, they'll/will receive
3 Fiona will be, John arrives
4 I'll/will go, I have
5 she doesn't/does not pass, she won't get
6 You'll/will learn, you take
7 I get, I'll/will go
8 I'll/will buy, it doesn't/does not cost
9 you run, you'll/will catch
10 I'll/will go, I don't feel
11 they win, they'll/will be

C 1 I'll/will buy, I go
2 he doesn't call, I'll/will call
3 you want, I'll/will give
4 he'll/will fail, he doesn't work
5 you give me, I'll/will send

Unit 98

A 1 she'd/she would go
2 she lived
3 he didn't/did not eat
4 he'd/he would have
5 she got
6 he wouldn't/would not smoke

B 1 they discovered oil in Ireland
2 doctors found a cure for cancer
3 we stopped using plastic
4 astronauts visited Mars

C 1 I had good/better eyesight.
2 I could speak German.
3 I had a degree.
4 I was 18 years old.

D 1 were fewer cars
2 drove more slowly
3 would have more time for reading.
4 ate fewer sweets.
5 more people travelled by bus
6 had more time to cook, would eat less fast food

Unit 99

A 1 If she had spoken German very well, she'd have/she would have applied for the job.
2 If her friend hadn't/had not called, she wouldn't/would not have heard about the teaching jobs.
3 If she hadn't/had not contacted the company, they wouldn't/would not have asked her to go for an interview.
4 If the interview had gone badly, the director wouldn't/would not have offered Ellen a job.
5 If Ellen had known some Spanish, she'd have/she would have started at once.
6 If she hadn't/had not been good at languages, she wouldn't/she would not have made rapid progress.

B 1 had (not) lost, would have called
2 had (not) broken, would have gone
3 would have made, had (not) forgotten

C 1 I'd/I had told the truth.
2 wishes he hadn't borrowed some money from his mother.
3 wishes she'd/she had got up early.
4 wishes he'd/he had gone to the party.
5 wish I'd/I had sent Charlotte a birthday card.
6 Fiona wishes she'd/she had helped her sister.
7 He wishes he hadn't shouted at the children.

Unit 100

A 1 (that) she was going to a conference.
2 (that) he'd/he had lost his passport.
3 (that) they'd/they had been on holiday.
4 (that) she didn't understand.

B 1 (that) she was enjoying
2 (that) she'd/she had been
3 (that) she was
4 (that) she was staying
5 (that) they/her friends had
6 (that) she was leaving
7 (that) she couldn't speak
8 (that) she was going to have
9 (that) she'd/she would teach

C 1 told 4 told 7 said 9 told
2 said 5 told 8 said 10 told, told
3 told 6 told

Unit 101

A 1 Jasmine to do the homework soon.
2 Anna to buy a map.
3 Mrs Clark to see a doctor.
4 William to keep all the windows closed.
5 Paul to go home.

B 1 I reminded John to call Ellie.
2 The teacher told the children to wash their hands.
3 Paul asked Mary to lend him her bicycle pump.
4 She warned the children to stay away from the water.
5 The police officer advised Mark to see a lawyer.

C 1 Yes, and I told him not to be late.
2 Yes, and she warned her not to go outside the house.
3 Yes, and I told him not to forget the bacon.
4 Yes, and he told them not to go near the windows.
5 Yes, and she particularly warned me not to eat nuts.

D 1 warned them not to touch
2 advised her to take
3 reminded him to bring
4 ordered them to leave
5 asked him to come

Unit 102

A 1 if/whether . 6 What ?
2 Why ? 7 when .
3 how many . 8 why .
4 if/whether . 9 where .
5 if/whether . 10 if/whether .

B 1 Does James often play football?
... James often played football.
2 What have the children eaten?
... what the children had eaten.
3 Where is Mark going?
... where Mark was going.
4 When will the next bus leave?
... when the next bus would leave.
5 Has Anna seen this film?
... if/whether Anna had seen the film.

C 1 if/whether he had worked since then
2 if/whether his sister gave him money
3 who else gave him money
4 if/whether he knew Steve Ellis
5 how long he had known him
6 if/whether he had seen Steve recently

Unit 103

A 1 but, so 3 so, but 5 but, so
2 so, but 4 so, but 6 so, but

B 1 This restaurant is both cheap and good.
2 Jo bought both a dress and a jumper.
3 They play both golf and tennis.
4 The film was both funny and exciting.

C 1 Paul's either at home or at the gym.
2 The shop is either in East Street or Fox Street.
3 Her father is either a doctor or a dentist.
4 The museum is either in Oxford or Bath.

D 1 Neither the train nor the bus arrived on time.
2 Neither David nor Mike plays tennis.
3 Neither the restaurants nor the hotels are good.
4 Neither the English team nor the Scottish team played well.

E 1 either of them 4 both of us
2 both of them 5 neither of us
3 neither of them 6 neither of us

Unit 104

A 1 Mary was tired, she went to bed
2 I couldn't sleep because of
3 Charlotte doesn't eat apples, she doesn't like them
4 The streets were crowded because
5 I'll give Jasmine a key to the house, she gets home before me

B 1 in case she's at home.
2 because I want to lose weight.
3 because he lost his passport.
4 so I'll take a book to read.
5 in case more people come to the party.
6 because his wife was ill.

C 1 Last week, my brother lent me £60 so that I could buy some new trainers.
2 Last month, the Government passed new traffic laws so that fewer people would have accidents.
3 Our school has opened a new library so that we can have more books.
4 Anna always writes everything in her diary so that she doesn't forget her appointments.
5 Last Friday, we left home early so that we could avoid the morning traffic.

D 1 ~~that~~ 2 ✓ 3 ~~so~~ because 4 ~~of, so~~ for, ✓

Unit 105

A 1 for the children
2 for the best drawing
3 Since Carolyn's a vegetarian
4 due to a problem with the brakes
5 for some bottled water
6 owing to the underground strike

B 1 misbehaving
2 the fact that
3 hitting his sister
4 the fact that they were repairing
5 working
6 Emily's in the bathroom
7 the fact that some trees have fallen
8 the sheep to

C 1 for
2 Since
3 due to the fact that
4 for
5 because
6 owing to the fact that
7 Since
8 for
9 to
10 for
11 due to
12 owing to
13 for

Unit 106

A 1 it was dangerous
2 Despite/In spite of
3 however
4 the fact that
5 my work is interesting
6 However

B 1 while/although
2 Although/While
3 however
4 Despite
5 although/while/however
6 although/while
7 however
8 although/while

C 1 However
2 although
3 in spite of the fact that
4 though
5 despite

Unit 107

A 1 which bit me
2 who wrote to me
3 which crashed
4 who had won a lot of money
5 which she wears for parties
6 who designed the new city library

B 1 that I had seen on TV
2 that Jasmine made
3 that Mary sent me
4 that my sister wrote
5 that I was talking to
6 that my brother wants to buy

C 1 who has visited so many different countries
2 who interviewed me
3 whose wives have just had babies
4 whose book won a prize last week
5 who complain all the time
6 whose car had broken down

D 1 –
2 –
3 who/that
4 that
5 that
6 who/that
7 –

Unit 108

A 1 ~~that~~
2 ~~they~~
3 ✓
4 ✓
5 ~~it~~
6 ✓
7 ✓

B 1 … the person who takes …
2 ✓
3 ✓
4 … the train that goes …
5 ✓
6 ✓
7 … anybody who plays …

C 1 which/that takes brilliant photos
2 they lived in
3 who was very clever
4 they are paid
5 nobody else wanted
6 where we ran out of petrol

D 1 you can take onto the plane
2 that's a bit heavy
3 that covers all the Mediterranean islands
4 we bought in that second-hand bookshop
5 that have just been mended
6 I can walk all day in
7 that go with the green dress
8 I knitted myself

Unit 109

A 1 The sun, which is really a star, is 93 million miles from the earth.
2 John F. Kennedy, who died in 1963, was a very famous American President.
3 Charlie Chaplin, who was from a poor family, became a very rich man.
4 The 2016 Olympics were held in Rio de Janeiro, which was the capital of Brazil until 1960.
5 We went to see the Crown Jewels, which are kept in the Tower of London.

B 1 Football, which first started in Britain, is now one of the most popular sports worldwide.
2 Margaret Thatcher, who was the Prime Minister of Britain for 11 years, studied science at university.
3 Michelangelo, who lived until he was 90, was one of Italy's greatest artists.
4 Barack Obama, whose wife is a brilliant lawyer and role model, became President of the USA in 2009.
5 The Nile, which runs through several countries, is the longest river in Africa.
6 Madonna, whose parents were born in Italy, is a famous American singer.
7 Gandhi, who was born in 1869, was assassinated in 1948.
8 Elephants, which are found in Africa and India, are the largest land animals.
9 The Beatles, whose music is still popular, were probably the most famous pop group in the world.
10 Brands Hatch, which is not far from London, is famous for its motor races.

C 1 whose
2 who
3 whose
4 which
5 which
6 who

Key to the tests

The numbers after the answer tell you which unit and unit section of the book has information and practice on that grammar point. For example, the numbers 3.1, 3 refer to Unit 3, sections 1 and 3.

Test A

A
1 My sister goes 3.1, 3
2 I don't get up 3.2, 3
3 Mike tries 3.1, 3
4 he doesn't usually succeed 3.2, 3
5 I'm not 2.1
6 Do you eat 4.2
7 I don't usually like 4.1
8 Mike studies 3.1, 3
9 he eats 3.1, 3
10 Does he have 4.2
11 I don't know 4.1
12 He doesn't tell 3.2
13 Do you drive 4.2
14 There aren't 3.2, 3
15 my sister wants 4.1
16 we both walk 3.1, 3

B
1 sitting 5.3
2 swimming 5.3
3 ✓ 5.4
4 shopping 5.3
5 We like 6.4
6 ✓ 5.4
7 ✓ 6.2
8 I know 6.4
9 ✓ 6.2
10 shining 5.4
11 ✓ 5.4
12 I understand 6.4

C
1 I'm finishing 7.2
2 I'm thinking 7.4
3 I'm not actually doing 7.1
4 Do you want 7.3
5 It's raining 7.4
6 I never go out 7.1
7 you know 7.3
8 I think 7.3
9 she comes 7.1
10 she's staying 7.2
11 She's doing well 7.2
12 she speaks 7.1
13 I don't speak any languages 7.1

D Today is the 1 June 1964. The sun ~~shines~~ is shining [7.1] and the birds ~~sing~~ are singing. What is ~~does~~ everyone doing ~~do~~ [7.1]? Well, Mrs Green is ~~reads~~ reading [7.1] a newspaper. She ~~is~~ reads ~~reading~~ [7.2] a newspaper every day before breakfast. Her husband, Mr Green, is ~~danceing~~ dancing [7.1] in the garden. He likes ~~is liking~~ [7.3] dancing in the morning.
'Have ~~you~~ [8.3] another cup of coffee, darling,' says Mr Green.
'But I'm still ~~drink~~ drinking [7.1] my first cup, dear,' replies Mrs Green, 'and anyway, where's our daughter today? She ~~is~~ usually ~~bringing~~ brings [7.2] me my coffee.'
'Mary,' says Mr Green (but he doesn't stop ~~dance~~ dancing [7.1]), 'she's ~~she works~~ working [7.2] in London this week. Don't you remember?'
'~~Stopping~~ Stop [8.3] dancing and ~~listening~~ listen [8.3] to me. I never forget ~~forgetting~~ [7.2] anything. I was just giving you a little test. Anyway, it's time for work.'
'All right, darling, but don't forget ~~not~~ [8.2] your briefcase.'
'Thank you, dear. Don't ~~dancing~~ dance [8.2] too hard!'

E
1 Check 8.1, 3
2 Don't give 8.2, 3
3 Show 8.1, 3
4 Don't smoke 8.2, 3
5 Don't copy 8.2, 3

Test B

A
1 ✓ 12.2
2 I started 12.3
3 we met 16.1
4 ✓ 16.1
5 ✓ 12.2
6 I have never forgotten 14.1
7 ✓ 16.2
8 Were you 16.1
9 I haven't seen 15.3
10 I was walking 12.2
11 I visited 16.1
12 ✓ 14.1

B
1 I saw it before anyway. I had seen it before anyway. 19.3
2 So you already decided you liked me! So you had already decided you liked me! 19.2
3 but it closed a week before! but it had closed a week before! 19.3
4 Everyone went home, Everyone had gone home, 19.3
5 because I left my keys because I had left my keys 19.3

C
1 I did some maths I was doing some maths 11.3
2 I've worked harder I've been working harder 17.2
3 You've read books You've been reading books 17.4
4 you learnt French verbs you were learning French verbs 11.2
5 she has worked hard she has been working hard 17.4

D
1 You lost 10.4
2 We were sailing12.3
3 it just dropped 12.3
4 Have you two visited 13.3
5 We've/We have been 13.3
6 We flew 16.1
7 I wasn't/was not listening 11.3
8 I've/I have had 13.3
9 I was falling 12.2
10 Paul rang 12.2
11 Paul and I went 10.4
12 We were reading 12.2
13 we saw 12.3
14 Paul hasn't/has not stopped 14.2
15 Did it have 10.4
16 Was there 10.4
17 you've/you have never seen 13.4
18 Rob and I stayed 10.4
19 It was 10.4
20 we were talking 12.2
21 I haven't/have not enjoyed 14.2

Test C

A
1 I'll finish 22.4, 23.2
2 are you going to do 21.4, 23.2
3 Shall we meet up 22.5
4 I'm going to watch 21.4, 23.2
5 I'll get 22.5
6 you'll enjoy 23.3
7 I'm going to buy 21.4, 23.2
8 I'll lend 22.5

B
1 I'm meeting 26.5
2 I'm flying 26.5
3 Shall I send 22.5
4 you're coming 24.3
5 you're staying 24.2
6 will you bring 22.3
7 I won't be able 23.2
8 I'm visiting 22.5

C
1 you're 24.2
2 won't 22.4, 23.2
3 Shall 22.5
4 am 21.4
5 arrive 25.1
6 I'm 21.4
7 taking 24.2
8 will 22.3
9 I'll 22.4

D 'You'll meet Tim, one of the team guides, as soon as you ~~will~~ arrive [25.2] at the centre. He'll show you where to eat and sleep. Tim will check your bags when you ~~will~~ get up [25.2], to make sure you're ready for the day. It's important to have food and drink and an extra pullover. Before you~~'ll~~ start walking [25.1], Tim will make sure you have your own map, in case you get lost. It's a fantastic place to go walking. You'll be able to see the sea after you ~~will~~ get [25.1] to the top of the mountain! But it can become cold very quickly.

You'll have to listen to Tim until you~~'ll~~ know [25.2] the right thing to do if the weather changes suddenly. Don't worry, though. You'll have a good time. You'll enjoy the views as soon as you ~~will~~ get [25.2] there!'

E 1 comes/~~will come~~ 23.2
2 ~~doing~~/going to do 21.4, 23.2
3 ~~I'm carrying~~/I'll carry 22.4
4 finish/~~will finish~~ 25.1
5 I'm playing/~~I'll play~~ 24.2
6 I'll/~~I'm going to~~ 22.4, 23.2
7 ~~Am I calling~~/Shall I call 22.5
8 ~~I'm dying~~/I'm going to die 26.2

Test D

A 1 Do you normally take the bus home? 29.2
2 I don't 37.2
3 Is your wife coming home soon? 29.2
4 she is 37.2
5 Does she travel by bus? 29.2
6 she doesn't 37.2
7 Was she tired yesterday? 29.2
8 she was 37.2

B 1 How 30.1
2 What 31.2
3 Who 31.1
4 Do 29.2
5 How 30.1
6 What 31.2
7 What 31.2
8 Why 30.1
9 Do 29.2
10 Were 29.2
11 What 31.2
12 Who 31.1
13 Did 29.2
14 Why 30.1

C 1 so do I 38.2
2 so can he 38.2
3 so have I 38.2
4 neither does he 38.4
5 so did I 38.2
6 neither will he 38.4
7 neither have I 38.4

D 1 How far is 32.2
2 How old is 32.7
3 How often are (OR How much are) 32.5, 3
4 How long will 32.1
5 How much did 32.5

E 1 did you 36.5
2 isn't he 36.4
3 doesn't he 36.4
4 has he 36.5
5 can you 36.5
6 don't they 36.4
7 will he 36.5
8 should he 36.5
9 was he 36.5
10 did you 36.5
11 weren't they 36.4
12 isn't it 36.4

Test E

A 1 ~~You should~~ 46.2
2 ~~I must~~ 43.5
3 ~~you have~~ 43.1
4 ~~Had I~~ 45.4
5 ~~you don't ought~~ 47.3, 46.2
6 ~~I be possible~~ 39.5
7 ~~I could~~ 39.4
8 ~~I must~~ 48.2
9 ~~I can~~ 44.4
10 ~~Should I better~~ 46.3
11 ~~you need~~ 41.2
12 ~~You ought~~ 41.3

B I've had a terrible day! I **4** have [48.2] got up early, but I couldn't get out of bed! It was too late to go by bus, so I **9** to [48.1] get a taxi. Luckily, I **5** to [39.4] find one quite quickly. Of course, when we arrived outside the office, I didn't have any money, so I **8** [39.3, 2] pay the driver. Anyway, I was **1** to [39.4] borrow some from the receptionist. I've paid her back already, but do you think I **7** to [46.2] give her a present as well? My boss was waiting for me in her office. I should **2** arrived [48.2] at nine o'clock, and I was half an hour late. I **6** have [47.4] taken a taxi at all, though! She told me the company was closing, so I had **3** find [48.1] a new job.

C 1 hotels might be full. 44.4
2 'll/will have to sleep in the car. 42.7
3 must be the sun cream we got in Brighton. 44.2
4 needn't have bought it. 47.4
5 Should we take it with us this time? 45.4
6 can't make the sun shine. 44.3
7 Are you feeling OK, George? You'd better have a rest. 46.3

D 1 Do I need to use 47.1
2 should really 45.3
3 could you pass 40.4
4 don't need to 47.1
5 mustn't forget 41.5
6 got to finish 42.5
7 better start 46.3
8 might not 44.4
9 should have 45.3

E 1 ✓ 42.3
2 can't be 44.3
3 had to 42.3
4 ✓ 44.2
5 must have 44.2
6 ✓ 44.4
7 ✓ 22.5
8 don't need/have 47.1
9 ✓ 40.2

Test F

A 1 Would you like to learn to play the ~~a~~ piano? 49.3
2 All you need is half an hour a day and a ~~the~~ simple book! 49.2
3 What's the name of the ~~a~~ book? *Bob Bryant's Big Piano Book*! 49.2
4 ~~The~~ friends are great, but ~~the~~ music will be your partner forever! Don't just stand there! Buy this book today!! 50.5
5 You'll also get ~~the~~ a free download of piano music from around ~~a~~ the world! 49.2

B 1 nothing 62.4
2 everywhere 62.5
3 somewhere 62.2
4 everyone 62.5
5 nobody 62.4
6 someone 62.2

C 1 a 49.2
2 the 49.2
3 the 49.3
4 an 50.2
5 – 50.5
6 – 50.5
7 the 50.4, 49.3
8 the 50.4
9 the 50.4
10 – 50.6
11 the 50.3
12 a 49.2
13 the 50.3

D 1 ✓ 60.1
2 How much luggage 60.3
3 ✓ 64.4
4 How much does it cost 60.3
5 any presents [some presents is possible with a different meaning] 54.6
6 some more 54.5
7 ✓ 60.1, 3
8 ✓ 61.1
9 a few things 61.5
10 some/any advice 54.4
11 ✓ 61.1, 2
12 a few big ones 61.5
13 a little/bit more 61.5
14 ✓ 61.2

E 1 that 52.2
2 there's 56.1
3 yours 57.4
4 me 55.2
5 yourself 58.2
6 some 54.3
7 them 55.2
8 ones 51.2
9 there 56.1
10 mine 57.4
11 them 55.2
12 one 51.2

Test G

A 1 the biggest 72.2
2 the brightest 72.2
3 better 71.2
4 the farthest/furthest 72.2
5 more happily 73.3
6 the most expensive 72.2
7 harder 73.5
8 more quickly 73.5
9 the tallest 72.2

B
1 excited 66.1
2 tiring 66.1
3 such 70.2
4 worried 66.1
5 quiet 73.2
6 16th 67.2
7 disappointed 66.1
8 so 70.1
9 28th 67.2
10 well 73.2, 4
11 beautifully 73.2
12 bored 66.1
13 slow 73.1
14 interesting 66.1

C
1 (Our son) Andy was, watch the football match (with me on Saturday). 69.2, 3
2 He hasn't got, buy a house. 69.5, 6
3 It was, we didn't buy it. 70.3
4 most beautiful machine 72.2, 3
5 a wonderful driver, Tom! 73.2
6 is faster than me. 71.2, 3
7 met a worse driver (than Raphael). 71.3
8 You're, open your eyes in the car. 69.3
9 I haven't got, argue with you. 69.6

D
1 usually stay there for four or five days 74.2
2 the amazing old Roman baths 65.5
3 will probably take a bus up to the Royal Crescent 77.2
4 can either relax in one of Bath's beautiful green parks 65.5
5 the very elegant 18th-century Pump Rooms 65.5
6 it's always difficult to get tickets 74.2
7 the really unusual American Museum 65.5
8 can just drive around peacefully in the countryside. 77.4

E
1 away 75.2
2 outside 75.2
3 fairly 76.1
4 bags 76.3
5 address 76.3
6 as far as 68.1
7 on the left 75.3
8 garden 76.3
9 upstairs 75.2
10 sideways 75.2
11 table 76.3

Test H

A
1 on 79.1
2 outside 78.2
3 on 78.1
4 in front 78.2
5 between 78.2
6 in 78.1
7 this 79.2
8 along 78.3
9 next to 78.2
10 through 78.3
11 last 79.2
12 past 78.3
13 every 79.2
14 from 79.3
15 in 79.1
16 to 79.3

B
Anthony: Jack says he can learn a new language **without** working. [81.5]
Michelle: Who's Jack?
Anthony: He's that new boy in the bright blue jumper. [81.1] The one **with** long hair. [81.2] He's bought an audiobook [81.3], and he says he learns **by** [81.5] listening to it while he's asleep.
Michelle: I think that's silly.
Anthony: But you're good **at** learning [84.1, 2] new words, aren't you? I might try Jack's audiobook. I'm sick **of** making [84.2] mistakes all the time.
Michelle: It's no use worrying about mistakes. We learn **by** making [81.5] mistakes.
Anthony: It's easy for you. You can pass French exams **without** doing [81.5] much work. How do you do it?
Michelle: I just sit down **with** a dictionary [81.4] and a French newspaper. It's not **worth** buying [84.3] an expensive audiobook, in my view.

C
1 ~~as~~ 80.5
2 ~~on~~ 82.1
3 ~~like~~ 80.9
4 ~~in~~ 82.5
5 ~~at~~ 82.4
6 ~~like~~ 80.1
7 ~~Like~~ 80.4
8 ~~in~~ 82.2
9 ~~like~~ 80.9
10 ~~on~~ 82.4
11 ~~by~~ 82.5
12 ~~Like~~ 80.2

D
1 talk 83.2
2 surprised 84.1
3 waiting 83.1
4 depended 83.1
5 brilliant 84.1
6 interested 84.1
7 waiting 83.1
8 sure 84.1
9 proud 84.1
10 grateful 84.1
11 reach 83.4

E
1 behind 78.2
2 under 78.2
3 of 78.3
4 up 78.3
5 as 80.9
6 to 78.3
7 like 80.5
8 for 82.3
9 on 78.1
10 for 83.1
11 in 81.1
12 of 82.6
13 for 83.1
14 with 84.1
15 at 82.1
16 at 84.1
17 of 84.1
18 like 80.8
19 to 84.1
20 of 84.1

Test I

A
1 ✓ 85.3
2 ~~I'm making~~ I'm getting 86.6
3 ~~I got~~ I've/have got 85.3
4 ✓ 85.3
5 ✓ 86.7
6 ~~We haven't done~~ We haven't made 86.2
7 ✓ 86.2
8 ~~We'll have got~~ We'll get 86.5
9 ~~to make~~ to do 86.4
10 ✓ 85.3
11 ~~to make~~ to do 86.4
12 ~~to have got~~ to have 85.4
13 ✓ 86.8

B
I'm worried about my husband. He **gets** up [87.2] very late. He never wants to go **out** [87.2]. You can't stay **in** [88.3] all your life, can you, Doctor? If the TV is on when our friends come round, he doesn't turn **it** off [87.2]. Last Saturday we **ran** out of [87.2] milk. When we reached the supermarket, he said to me: 'I don't like your hat. Take **it** off [87.2]! Put **it** away [87.2]!' That's a strange thing to say, Doctor. I'm getting more and more worried. I don't think I can **put** up with [88.4] the situation much longer. When I try to talk to him he just says: 'Calm **down** [87.2]! I'm all right.' What shall I do?

C
1 was decorated last month. 89.2, 3
2 is being designed for the garden. 89.1, 3
3 was also stolen last week. 89.2, 3
4 their new house hadn't been built. 90.1
5 their windows were repaired, 89.2, 3
6 was mended. 89.2, 3
7 has been made. 90.1
8 was booked yesterday. 89.2, 3
9 is being sold next month. 90.1

D
1 washing 94.3
2 drive 92.3
3 to learn 92.1
4 smoking 88.2
5 smoke 3.2 [sic]
6 tell 92.3
7 cry 92.4
8 dancing 93.3
9 walking 93.1
10 to get 86.7
11 Jogging 93.4
12 feel 92.4
13 cycling 93.1
14 eating 93.1
15 to continue 92.1

E 1 finish doing 93.1
2 prefer to start 94.3
3 to be patient (OR being patient) 92.1
4 to do something 92.1
5 you to do 96.1
6 me to do 96.1
7 you improve 96.3
8 me stay 92.4
9 you to think 96.1

Test J

A 1 're 97.2
2 would have got 99.1
3 were 98.4
4 had 98.3
5 would 98.1
6 don't talk 97.3
7 could 98.3
8 hadn't met 99.1
9 don't speak 97.1
10 knew 98.3
11 sing 97.2
12 would be 98.1

B 1 had voted for me at the last election, your lives would have improved. 99.1
2 was alive today. 98.3
3 be better if he was our Prime Minister. 98.1
4 be happy if our schools had more money. 98.1
5 became Prime Minister I would give every child a new phone. 98.1
6 had brought my wife with me today. 99.2
7 busy with her own work, she would be here. 98.1

C 1 He advised me to get enough sleep. 102.1
2 He told me to get some qualifications. 101.3
3 He warned me not to take drugs. 101.4
4 He asked why he left the flat. 102.2
5 He asked me where I work(ed). 102.2(, 4)
6 he persuaded me to give him my address in Sheffield. 101.4

D 1 I'll give you the name of my doctor. 100.1
2 You should eat more fruit. 100.1, 101.4
3 I'm living in a flat on my own. 100.1
4 I tried sharing with Paul, but he left. 100.1
5 I'm going to (go and) live in Sheffield. 100.1

Test K

A 1 nor 103.5
2 so 103.3
3 in case 104.2
4 because 104.1
5 either 103.4
6 or 103.4
7 so that 104.4
8 Both 103.1
9 and 103.1

B 1 ~~as~~ 105.3
2 ~~While~~ 106.3
3 ~~Since~~ 105.1
4 ~~as~~ 105.2
5 ~~However~~ 106.5
6 ~~Although~~ 106.4
7 ~~However~~ 106.1

C 1 ✓ 107.1-3
2 ~~when~~ 108.3
3 ~~that~~ 108.1
4 ✓ 107.3
5 ✓ 107.3
6 ~~that~~ 108.1
7 ✓ 107.3
8 ~~that~~ 108.1
9 ~~why~~ 108.3

D 1 you see 108.1
2 which means 109.5
3 that thousands 107.2
4 that has 107.3
5 which has 109.2
6 that visit 107.3

E 1 who 107.2, 3
2 however 106.3
3 due 105.6
4 case 104.2
5 neither 103.5
6 nor 103.5
7 but 103.2
8 which 109.1

Exit test

Choose the right answer **(a, b, c, d)** and write a, b, c, or d, as in the example.

♦ Russia is the __a__ country in the world.
a) *largest* **b)** *larger* **c)** *most large* **d)** *most largest*

Tenses: present

1 My sister and I _____ from Scotland.
a) *we are* **b)** *am* **c)** *are* **d)** *is*

2 How old _____?
a) *are you* **b)** *you are* **c)** *you have* **d)** *have you*

3 They _____ in London.
a) *no live* **b)** *don't live* **c)** *live not* **d)** *doesn't live*

4 Where _____ Mary live?
a) *does* **b)** *do* **c)** *are* **d)** *is*

5 Where are Sam and Anna? _____ in the garden.
a) *They're siting* **b)** *They sitting* **c)** *There sitting* **d)** *They're sitting*

6 What _____, Ellie?
a) *you are* **b)** *are you* **c)** *do you* **d)** *are you doing*

7 It's very cold today and _____.
a) *it's snowing* **b)** *it snows* **c)** *its snowing* **d)** *it snowing*

8 _____ close the window please.
a) *No* **b)** *Not* **c)** *Don't* **d)** *You don't*

Tenses: past

9 Where _____ yesterday?
a) *was you* **b)** *you were* **c)** *were you* **d)** *did you be*

10 They _____ last week.
a) *didn't come* **b)** *came not* **c)** *don't came* **d)** *didn't came*

11 What _____ doing at nine o'clock yesterday evening?
a) *Peter were* **b)** *Peter was* **c)** *did Peter* **d)** *was Peter*

12 I didn't hear the phone because when it rang, I _____ a shower.
a) *had* **b)** *was having* **c)** *have had* **d)** *having*

13 My cousins _____ seen a kangaroo.
a) *have never* **b)** *never have* **c)** *has never* **d)** *haven't never*

14 Have you _____ to Canada?
a) *ever been* **b)** *ever gone* **c)** *been ever* **d)** *gone ever*

15 I'm sorry. Mrs Johnson hasn't _____.
a) *arrived just* **b)** *already arrived* **c)** *arrived already* **d)** *arrived yet*

16 My husband and I _____ to Edinburgh in 2001.
a) *have moved* **b)** *moved* **c)** *did moved* **d)** *has moved*

17 I _____ to London five times already this week.
a) *went* **b)** *have gone* **c)** *have been* **d)** *was going*

18 Maddie has _____ here since February.
a) *being worked* **b)** *working* **c)** *been working* **d)** *been worked*

19 I'm a vegetarian. I ..... meat since I was a child.
a) *haven't eaten* b) *don't eat* c) *haven't been eating* d) *am not eating*

20 When we arrived, the train ..... the station.
a) *already left* b) *had already left* c) *had left already* d) *has left already*

21 When Laura was younger, she ..... in a jazz band.
a) *use to sing* b) *sang usually* c) *was singing* d) *used to sing*

Tenses: future

22 What ..... do tomorrow?
a) *you are going to* b) *are you going* c) *you are going* d) *are you going to*

23 Are you thirsty? ..... make you a drink?
a) *Will I* b) *Shall I* c) *Do I* d) *I'll*

24 My cousins ..... visit us next weekend.
a) *will to* b) *going to* c) *are going to* d) *are going*

25 I can't see you tomorrow. ..... lunch with Paul.
a) *I'm having* b) *I'll have* c) *I'm going have* d) *I will to have*

26 We can start as soon as they ..... .
a) *arrive* b) *are arriving* c) *will arrive* d) *are going to arrive*

27 Can somebody come and help me? ~ Yes, ... you.
a) *I'll help* b) *I'm helping* c) *I will to help* d) *I help*

Sentences and questions

28 They bought ..... .
a) *in the country a big old house* b) *a big old house in the country* c) *an old big house in the country* d) *in the country an old big house*

29 Joe was thirsty so I made ..... .
a) *a cup of tea to him* b) *him a cup of tea* c) *for him a cup of tea* d) *to him a cup of tea*

30 Are you hungry? ~ ..... .
a) *Yes, I am* b) *Yes, I'm* c) *No, I aren't* d) *No, I no*

31 ..... did you get to Brighton? By train?
a) *When* b) *Where* c) *Why* d) *How*

32 Do you know that girl? ..... is her name?
a) *How* b) *Which* c) *What* d) *Who*

33 How ..... will the journey take? Two hours *a* more?
a) *often* b) *far* c) *much* d) *long*

34 Julie ..... her mother: very tall.
a) *is like* b) *is liking* c) *likes* d) *like*

35 How do you know? ..... you?
a) *Who did tell* b) *Who have told* c) *Who has told* d) *Who did told*

36 Whose is that bike? ~ ..... .
a) *It's Tom's* b) *It's Toms'* c) *Its Tom's* d) *Its Toms'*

37 Marc lives in Paris, ...
a) *isn't it?* b) *isn't he?* c) *don't he?* d) *doesn't he?*

38 Did they go to Canada? ~ Yes, they ..... .
a) *went* b) *did* c) *did go* d) *gone*

39 Jack doesn't speak French and ..... .
a) *Charlotte doesn't neither* b) *Charlotte neither* c) *neither Charlotte* d) *neither does Charlotte*

Modal verbs

40 When Raphael was at school, he ..... speak French quite well.
a) *was able* b) *could* c) *able to* d) *can*

41 Excuse me. ..... you help me?
a) *Could* b) *May* c) *Shall* d) *Do*

42 You ..... buy a ticket before boarding the bus.
a) *might* b) *must* c) *might to* d) *must to*

43 ..... go to the supermarket after work.
a) *I've got to* b) *I've get to* c) *I was getting to* d) *I have got*

44 It's a present so you ..... pay anything.
a) *don't get to* b) *haven't to* c) *mustn't to* d) *don't have to*

45 Who's the woman in that car? ~ ..... be Laura. She's in Germany.
a) *It mustn't* b) *She mustn't* c) *It can't* d) *She can't*

46 In my opinion, you ..... smoke so much.
a) *shouldn't to* b) *shouldn't* c) *needn't* d) *don't have to*

47 If you have stomach pains, you ..... to go to the doctor's.
a) *had better* b) *should* c) *ought* d) *must*

48 We've got enough blue paint. Your sister ..... to buy any more.
a) *don't need* b) *doesn't need* c) *needn't* d) *hasn't need*

49 ..... wear a uniform when you were at school?
a) *Must you have worn* b) *Must you wear* c) *Had you to wear* d) *Did you have to*

Articles, nouns, pronouns, etc:

50 What's her job? ~ She's ..... lecturer.
a) *an university* b) *a university* c) *one university* d) *university*

51 Are you a vegetarian? ~ Yes, I never eat ..... .
a) *meat* b) *the meat* c) *some meat* d) *a meat*

52 ..... is my favourite art.
a) *A music* b) *The music* c) *Music* d) *Some music*

53 ..... is your favourite – the White Horse *a* the Golden Hart?
a) *Which one* b) *What one* c) *Which ones* d) *What ones*

54 I'd like ....., please.
a) *four loaves of bread and two boxes of tomatoes* b) *four loafs of bread and two boxs of tomatoes*
c) *four loave of bread and two boxes of tomatos* d) *four loaves of bread and two boxes of tomato*

55 Look at ..... cows in the field over there.
a) *these* b) *that* c) *those* d) *this*

56 Her eyes are blue and her ..... dark.
a) *hair are* b) *hair is* c) *hairs are* d) *hairs is*

57 We don't need to buy ..... milk.
a) *a* b) *some* c) *any* d) *no*

58 We saw Mary, but ..... .
a) *him didn't see us* b) *she didn't see we* c) *her didn't see us* d) *she didn't see us*

59 How many cinemas ..... near here?
a) *are they* b) *is there* c) *are there* d) *is it*

60 My bike is red but ..... blue.
a) *she's* b) *her is* c) *hers is* d) *her one is*

61 Your children are very good. They always help ..... a lot.
a) *each other* b) *themselves* c) *them* d) *each the other*

62 I want to check the meaning of these words. Can you ..... ?
a) *get the dictionary for me* b) *give to me the dictionary* c) *get the dictionary to me*
d) *give the dictionary for me*

63 Have you got ..... ?
a) *many luggages* b) *many luggage* c) *much luggages* d) *much luggage*

64 Have you got any money? ~ I've only got ..... .
a) *little* b) *a little* c) *few* d) *a few*

65 I don't know ..... near here to have lunch.
a) *anything* b) *something* c) *anywhere* d) *something*

66 They've got two cars. One is a Rover and ..... is a Mini.
a) *the other* b) *another* c) *other* d) *one other*

67 I didn't speak to all the people but I spoke to ..... .
a) *most them* b) *most of it* c) *them most* d) *most of them*

Adjectives and adverbs

68 Mrs Pearson had everything in a ..... bag.
a) *plastic green large* b) *large green plastic* c) *green large plastic* d) *green plastic large*

69 We thought the film was ..... .
a) *very bored* b) *much boring* c) *very boring* d) *much bored*

70 My birthday is the ..... of May.
a) *twenty-eighth* b) *twentyeth* c) *twenty-nineth* d) *twenty-forth*

71 Paris isn't ..... London.
a) *big as* b) *as big as* c) *as big that* d) *so big that*

72 Sara is only 15. She isn't ..... drive a car.
a) *enough old to* b) *enough old for* c) *old enough for* d) *old enough to*

73 It was ..... night that we didn't see the animals.
a) *a so dark* b) *so a dark* c) *such a dark* d) *a such dark*

74 In the photo Tom looks ..... his friends.
a) *happier that* b) *happier than* c) *more happy than* d) *more happy*

75 Which is the ..... the world?
a) *longer river in* b) *longer river of* c) *longest river of* d) *longest river in*

76 Jasmine drives carefully but her sister drives ..... .
a) *fastly* b) *very fast* c) *more quick* d) *very quick*

77 I take the bus but Tim ..... to work.
a) *hardly ever walks* b) *walks hardly ever c often walks* d) *walks often*

78 Turn left at the garage then go ..... until you get to the school.
a) *ahead* b) *straight on* c) *on ahead* d) *on straight*

79 The way she said that made me ..... .
a) *extreme angrily* b) *angrily extreme* c) *extremely angry* d) *angry extremely*

80 He doesn't talk much and he doesn't listen much ..... .
a) *too* b) *neither* c) *either* d) *as well*

81 After 25 minutes take the meat ..... the oven.
a) *out from* b) *out of* c) *from of* d) *from out*

Prepositions

82 I think we can meet ..... the bus stop.
a) *on* b) *at* c) *in* d) *behind*

83 The train has to go ..... three tunnels.
a) *across* b) *along* c) *through* d) *under*

84 It happened ..... Friday.
a) *at lunch-time in* b) *at lunch-time on* c *in lunch-time on* d) *on lunch-time at*

85 She described the thief ..... a tall, bearded man.
a) *like* b) *such as* c) *as* d) *as though*

86 That student over there – the one ..... .
a) *in the blonde hair* b) *with the blonde hair* c) *in blonde hair* d) *blonde haired*

87 It was very late but ..... last we reached the hotel.
a) *in the* b) *at the* c) *in* d) *at*

88 What time did they arrive ..... the airport?
a) *at* b) *in* c) *on* d) *to*

89 She learnt French ..... listening to tapes.
a) *by* b) *for* c) *on* d) *with*

90 The rooms were full ..... old furniture.
a) *of* b) *with* c) *from* d) *off*

Verbs

91 Peter ..... a car.
a) *hasn't got* b) *hasn't* c) *haven't got* d) *doesn't have got*

92 We're going to ..... some shopping.
a) *make* b) *get* c) *do* d) *have*

93 The plane ..... in bad weather.
a) *pulled off* b) *put up* c) *got up* d) *took off*

94 There was no truth to his story. He simply ..... .
a) *made up it* b) *made it up* c) *drew it out* d) *drew out it*

95 Fiat ..... a group of Italian businessmen.
a) *is started for* b) *is started by* c) *was started by* d) *was started for*

96 Oh, no! My camera isn't here. It ..... stolen!
a) *has been* b) *is* c) *is being* d) *has*

97 His hair is too long. He should ..... cut.
a) *let it be* b) *get it be* c) *make it* d) *have it*

98 The film was very sad. It ..... cry.
a) *made us to* b) *made us* c) *let us* d) *let us to*

99 The teacher ..... go home early.
a) *wanted that we* b) *made us to* c) *decided us to* d) *let us*

100 When you've ..... , I'll tell you what I think.
a) *stopped talking* b) *stopped to talk* c) *been stopping talking* d) *been stopped to talk*

101 Would you ..... to the cinema?
a) *to like go* b) *like to go* c) *like going* d) *to like to going*

102 I'm going to India next year. ..... Kerala, Goa and Mumbai.
a) *I'm going to plan visiting* b) *I plan visiting* c) *I'm going to plan to visit* d) *I plan to visit*

103 This is a machine ..... boxes.
a) *for make* b) *for to make* c) *for making* d) *to making*

104 We invited ..... come to the party.
a) *them to* b) *to them* c) *that they* d) *that they*

Conditionals and reported speech

105 Tomorrow we can go for a picnic if the weather ..... fine.
a) *is being* b) *will be* c) *would be* d) *is*

106 If I ..... you, I'd go to the police.
a) *would be* b) *should be* c) *were* d) *am*

107 I wish I ..... to bed earlier last night.
a) *went* b) *had gone* c) *was going* d) *have gone*

108 Your cousin ..... she lived in a small flat.
a) *said me* b) *said to me* c) *told* d) *told me*

109 Jasmine had a lot of work and so she asked ..... help her.
a) *me to* b) *to me* c) *that I* d) *that I should*

110 Do you know where ..... ?
a) *lives Joe* b) *do Joe lives* c) *does Joe live* d) *Joe lives*

Building sentences

111 Mr and Mrs Simpson neither came ..... sent a message.
a) a b) *neither* c) *nor* d) *either*

112 Take your umbrella ..... it rains.
a) *because* b) *because of* c) *for* d) *in case*

113 His mother told him off ..... .
a) *for laughing* b) *because laughing* c) *for he laughed* d) *because of laughing*

114 Most people go by train. The bus, ..., is cheaper and faster.
a) *although* b) *despite* c) *while* d) *however*

115 ..... the fact that nobody thought he should do it, he did it.
a) *However* b) *While* c) *In spite of* d) *Because*

116 The team ..... scored the most goals won the competition.
a) *, which* b) *, that* c) *that* d) *which it*

117 Do you know those boys ..... are talking to Yvonne?
a) *which* b) *that they* c) *who* d) *who's*

118 We saw that woman ..... was on TV.
a) *the son of her* b) *whose son* c) *that the son* d) *that the son*

119 I received your letter of 22 March, ... I'm very grateful.
a) *which* b) *that* c) *for which* d) *to which*

120 Raphael went to see the film *Robocop 4*, ... had already seen three times.
a) *which* b) *which he* c) *that* d) *that he*

Key to the Exit test

The number after the answer tells you which unit of the book has information and practice on that grammar point.

Tenses: present

1	c)	*1*
2	a)	*2*
3	b)	*3*
4	a)	*4*
5	d)	*5*
6	d)	*6*
7	a)	*7*
8	c)	*8*

Tenses: past

9	c)	*9*
10	a)	*10*
11	d)	*11*
12	b)	*12*
13	a)	*13*
14	a)	*14*
15	d)	*15*
16	b)	*16*
17	c)	*16*
18	c)	*17*
19	a)	*18*
20	b)	*19*
21	d)	*20*

Tenses: future

22	d)	*21*
23	b)	*22*
24	c)	*23*
25	a)	*24*
26	a)	*25*
27	a)	*26*

Sentences and questions

28	b)	*27*
29	b)	*28*
30	a)	*29*
31	d)	*30*
32	c)	*31*
33	d)	*32*
34	a)	*33*
35	c)	*34*
36	a)	*35*
37	d)	*36*
38	b)	*37*
39	d)	*38*

Modal verbs

40	b)	*39*
41	a)	*40*
42	b)	*41*
43	a)	*42*
44	d)	*43*
45	c)	*44*
46	b)	*45*
47	c)	*46*
48	b)	*47*
49	d)	*48*

Articles, nouns, pronouns, etc.

50	b)	*49*
51	a)	*50*
52	c)	*50*
53	a)	*51*
54	a)	*51*
55	c)	*52*
56	b)	*53*
57	c)	*54*
58	d)	*55*
59	c)	*56*
60	c)	*57*
61	a)	*58*
62	a)	*59*
63	d)	*60*
64	b)	*61*
65	c)	*62*
66	a)	*63*
67	d)	*64*

Adjectives and adverbs

68	b)	*65*
69	c)	*66*
70	a)	*67*
71	b)	*68*
72	d)	*69*
73	c)	*70*
74	b)	*71*
75	d)	*72*
76	b)	*73*
77	c)	*74*
78	b)	*75*
79	c)	*76*
80	c)	*77*
81	b)	*78*

Prepositions

82	b)	*78*
83	c)	*78*
84	b)	*79*
85	c)	*80*
86	b)	*81*
87	d)	*82*
88	a)	*83*
89	a)	*83*
90	a)	*84*

Verbs

91	a)	*85*
92	c)	*86*
93	d)	*87*
94	b)	*88*
95	c)	*89*
96	a)	*90*
97	d)	*91*
98	b)	*92*
99	d)	*92*
100	a)	*93*
101	b)	*94*
102	d)	*94*
103	c)	*95*
104	a)	*96*

Conditionals and reported speech

105	d)	*97*
106	c)	*98*
107	b)	*99*
108	d)	*100*
109	a)	*101*
110	d)	*102*

Building sentences

111	c)	*103*
112	d)	*104*
113	a)	*105*
114	d)	*106*
115	c)	*106*
116	c)	*107*
117	c)	*107*
118	b)	*107*
119	c)	*108*
120	b)	*109*

Index

The numbers in this index are unit numbers unless they have the letter 'p' for 'page.'

a 49–50, 54, **Test F** pp140–1
  or **an** 49
  or no article 50
  or **the** 49, 50
a few 61
a little 61
a lot of 61
  such a lot of 70
ability: **can, can't, could, couldn't** 39
above 78
abroad 75
across 78
adjectives 27, **Test G** pp168–9, p245
  + adjective 76
  adverb + adjective 76
  and adverbs 73
  as ... as 68
  comparative 71, p245
  -ed or **-ing** 66
  order 65
  possessive 57
  + preposition 84
  'size' 76
  superlative 72, p245
adverbs 27, 73–7, **Test G** pp168–9, p245
  + adjective 76
  and adjectives 73
  as ... as 68
  comparative 73
  -ly ending 73, p245
  of certainty 77
  of completeness 77
  of direction 75
  of emphasis 77
  of frequency 74
  of manner 77
  of place 75, 77
  of sequence 75
  of time 77
  position in sentence 77
  superlative 73
advice 45, 101
advise 101
after
  after that 75
  for the future 25
afterwards 75
all 64
almost 77
along 78
already 15, 19
also 77
although 106
always 74
am 1, 2
an 49–50, **Test F** pp140–1
and 103
another 63
answers, short 37, 43, **Test D** p84
any 54, **Test F** pp140–1
any more 60
anybody 62
anyone 62
anything 62
anywhere 62
apostrophe (') 35, 57
are 1, 2
arrive at/in 83
articles 49–50, **Test F** pp140–1
as 80
  as ... as 68
  reason 105
  the same as 80
  such as 80
as if 80
as soon as: for the future 25
as though 80
as usual 80
ask 101
at
  place 78
  speed 82
  time 79, 82
auxiliary verbs 27
away 75

be
  Past Simple 9
  Present Simple 1–2
  questions 2
  there + **be** 2, 56
be going to 21, **Test C** pp58–9
  or **will** 23, 26
because 104
because of 104
been to and **gone to** 14
before: for the future 25
behind 78
beside 78
best 73
better 73
between 78
both ... and 103
but 103
by
  by car/bike/bus 82
  by chance/accident/mistake 82
  + **-ing** 81
  by post/email/phone 82

can **Test E** pp106–7
  ability 39
  permission 40
  questions 40
  requests 40
cannot 39
can't
  ability 39
  impossibility 44
cardinal numbers 67
case: in case 104
certainly 77
certainty
  adverbs 77
  must 44
comparative **Test G** pp168–9
  adjectives 71, p245
  adverbs 73
  (**not**) **as ... as** 68
conditionals 97–9, **Test J** p224
could **Test E** pp106–7
  ability 39
  possibility 44
  questions 40
couldn't: ability 39
countable nouns 53

dates 55, 67
definitely 77
despite 106
did: in questions 29
direct objects 59
do 86
  in negative forms 3
  in the Present Simple 3, 4
  in question tags 36
  in questions 4, 29, 30
  in short answers 43
does
  in negative forms 3
  in the Present Simple 3, 4
  in question tags 36
  in questions 4, 29, 30
  in short answers 43
don't have to 43
down 78
due to 105

each 63
each other 58
either 77, 103
  I'm not either 38
either ... or 103
else 62
enough 69
even 77
ever 13
  hardly ever 74
every 63, 74, 79
everybody 62
everyone 62
everything 62
everywhere 62
except (for) 82
extremely 76

fact: the fact that 105
fairly 76
fast 73
few 61
fewer p245
First Conditional 97
first(ly) 75
for
  for example/sale/ever 82
  purpose 95, 105
  reason 105
  and since 14, 17
forbid 101
forget 94
from
  place 78
  time 32, 79
front: in front of 78
future 26, **Test C** pp58–9
  be going to 21, 23, 26
  Present Continuous 24, 26
  when/before/after/until + Present Simple 25
  will 22, 23, 26
get 86
  get something done 91
go + -ing 93
going to see be going to
gone to and been to 14
got 85

had: in Past Perfect 19
had better 46, **Test E** pp106–7
had to do/go 42, 48
hard 73
hardly ever 74
have 85
  and have got 85
  + noun 86
  Present Continuous 6
  will have to 42
have got 85
have got to 42
have something done 91
have to 42, 43, **Test E** pp106–7
  don't have to 42
he 55, 58
her 55, 57, 58
here 75
hers 57
herself 58
him 55, 57, 58
himself 58
his 57
how 30, 33, **Test D** p85
How far? 32
How long? 17, 18, 32
How many? 18, 32, 60, **Test F** p141
How much? 18, 32, 60, **Test F** p141
How often? 32
How old? 32
however 106

I 55, 58
I am too 38
if: as if 80
I'm not either 38
imperative 8
impossibility 44
in 82
  clothing 81
  phrases 82
  place 78
  time 79
  transport 82
in case 104
in cash 82
in spite of 106
indirect objects 59
infinitive **Test I** p211
  to + infinitive 94
  with/without to 92
-ing forms **Test I** p 211, p243
  adjectives 66
  after a preposition 81
  after a verb 93, 94
  Past Continuous 11
  Present Continuous 5
  Present Perfect Continuous 17
  spelling 5, p243
instead of 82
into 78
is 1, 2
it 55, 56, 57, 58
its 57
itself 58

just
  = simply 77
  + past participle 15

last 79
least
  the least + adjective 72
  the least + adverb 73
left 75
less 73
let + someone + infinitive 92
like 80
  + -ing 93
  What ... like? 33
  would like 93, 94
little 61
look at/for 83
lots of 61 see also a lot of

make 86
  make + someone + infinitive 92
many 60
  as many ... as 68
  so many 70
may **Test E** pp106–7
  permission 40
  possibility 44
  questions 40
  requests 40
me 55, 57, 58
might 44
mine 57
modal verbs 39–48, **Test E** pp106–7
more
  comparative adjective 71, p245
  more + adverb 73
  quantity 60
most 64
  the most + adverb 73
  superlative adjective 72, p245
much 60
  as much ... as 68
  so much 70
must **Test E** pp106–7
  certainty 44
  for the future 41
  necessity 41, 43
  recommendation 41
mustn't 41, 43
my 57
myself 58

nearly 77
necessity 41, 43
need 47, **Test E** pp106–7
needn't 47
needn't have 47
negative forms 1, 3
neither 103
neither ... nor 103
Neither am I 38, **Test D** p85

never 13, 19, 74
next
sequence 75
time 79
next to 78
no 54
no one 62
nobody 62
none 64
normally 74
not ... any 54
nothing 62
nouns 27, **Test F** pp140–1
countable 53
+ noun 76
plural 51, **Test F** pp140–1, p242
uncountable 32, 53, p242
nowhere 62
numbers 67

object pronouns 55, 57, 58, **Test F** p141
off 78
often 74
on
on business/holiday/a trip 82
place 78, 82
time 79
transport 82
on TV/the radio/the internet 82
once a ... 74
one 51, **Test F** pp140–1
one + singular noun/verb 63
one of the/possessive + plural 63
and ones 51
ones 51
only 77
onto 78
opinion 45
opposite 78
or 103
orders 101
ordinal numbers 67
other
each other 58
the/possessive + other + singular 63
the/possessive/quantifier + other + plural noun 63
others 63
the others 63
ought to 46, **Test E** pp106–7
our 57
ours 57
ourselves 58
out 75
out of 78
outside 78
owing to 105

passive sentences 89–90, **Test I** pp210–11
passive tenses 90
past 78
Past Continuous 11, **Test B** pp44–5
or Past Simple 12
passive 90
past participles 13, p243
irregular verbs p244
in passive 90
Past Perfect 19, **Test B** pp44–5
passive 90
Past Simple 9–10, **Test B** pp44–5, p243
be 9
irregular verbs p244
or Past Continuous 12
or Present Perfect 16
passive 89, 90
and used to 20
pay 83
permission 40
persuade 101
phrasal verbs 87–8 see also prepositional verbs
place
adverbs 75, 77
prepositions 78, 82
relative clauses 108
possessive forms **Test F** p141
adjectives 57
pronouns 57
's, s' 35, 57
possibility 44, 103
prepositional verbs 83
prepositions 27, **Test H** pp184–5
after adjectives 84
after verbs 83
+ -ing 81
of movement 78
of place 78, 82
of time 32, 79, 82
phrases 82
Present Continuous 5–6, **Test A** p19
for the future 24, 26, **Test C** pp58–9
-ing form 5
or Present Simple 7
passive 90
questions 6
Present Perfect 13–16, **Test B** pp44–5
for the future 25
or Past Simple 16
or Present Perfect Continuous 18
passive 90
Present Perfect Continuous 17, **Test B** pp44–5
or Present Perfect Simple 18
Present Simple 1–4, **Test A** pp18–19
be 1–2
for the future 25, 26
negative 3
or Present Continuous 7
passive 89, 90
questions 2, 4
regular verbs p243
present tense: when, before, after, until, etc. 25
probably 77
pronouns 27, **Test F** pp140–1
object 55, 57, 58
possessive 57
reflexive 58
subject 55, 58
purpose 95, 104, 105

question tags 36, **Test D** p85
questions 29–33, **Test D** pp84–5
be 2
Can? May? Could? 40
How long/far/often ...? 32
Present Continuous 6
Present Simple 2, 4
reported questions 102
short answers 37, 43
What ... like? 33
where, when, why, how 30
who, what, which 31
'yes/no' questions 29
quite 76

rarely 74
rather 76
really 76
reason 104, 105
reason 108
reflexive pronouns 58, **Test F** p141
relative clauses 107–9
remember 94
remind 101
reported speech 19, 100–2, **Test J** p225
advice 101
orders 101
questions 102
requests 101
say and tell 100, 101
requests 40, 101
result 103, 104
right 75

's, s' 35, 57
same: the same as 80

say 100
Second Conditional 98
shall 22, Test C pp58–9
she 55, 58
short answers, 37, 43, Test D pp84
short forms: be 1
should 45, 46, Test E pp106–7
  do you think I should ...? 45
  I think we should 45
  should I? 45
should have done/gone 48
shouldn't 45
since
  and for 14, 17
  reason 105
so
  or such 70
  result 103, 104
so am I 38, Test D p85
so many 70
so much 70
so that 104
some 54, 64, Test F pp140–1
some more 60
somebody 62
someone 62
something 62
sometimes 74
somewhere 62, 108
soon: as soon as 25
straight on 75
subject pronouns 55, 58
such a lot of 70
such a/an 70
such as 80
such or so 70
superlative Test G pp168–9
  adjectives 72, p245
  adverbs 73

talk to/about 83
tell 100, 101
tests
  adjectives Test G pp168–9
  adverbs Test G pp168–9
  articles Test F pp140–1
  building sentences Test K pp240–1
  conditionals Test J p224
  infinitives Test I p211
  -ing forms Test I p211
  modal verbs Test E pp106–7
  nouns Test F pp140–1
  passive Test I pp210–11
  prepositions Test H pp184–5
  pronouns Test F pp140–1
  questions and answers Test D pp84–5
  reported speech Test J p225
  sentences Test D pp84–5
  tenses – future Test C pp58–9
  tenses – past Test B pp44–5
  tenses – present Test A pp18–19
  verbs Test I pp210–11
that 52
  relative pronoun 107, 108
  in reported speech 100
  so that 104
the Test F pp140–1
  or a/an 49
  or no article 50
their 57
theirs 57
them 55, 57, 58
themselves 58
then 75
there 75
there is/are 2, 56, Test F p141
these 52
they 55, 56, 58
think: Present Continuous 6
Third Conditional 99
this 52, 79
those 52
though 106
  as though 80
through 78
time
  adverbial phrases 77
  it 55, 56
  prepositions 32, 79, 82
to
  with infinitive 92, 94
  movement 78
too 69, 77
try 94
twice a ... 74

uncountable nouns 32, 53, p242
under 78
until 25, 32
up 78
us 55, 57, 58
used to 20
usual: as usual 80
usually 74

verbs 27, Test I pp210–11
  + to 94
  auxiliary verbs 27
  + -ing 93, 94
  irregular verbs p244
  + object (+ to) + infinitive 96
  phrasal verbs 87–8
  + preposition 83
  regular verbs p243
very 76

warn 101
was 9
way 108
we 55, 58
weather 55, 56
well 73
were 9
what
  what 31
  what: subject and object 34
What ... like? 33
when
  for the future 25
  in past tenses 11, 19
  relative adverb 108
  when 30
where
  relative adverb 108
  where 30
which
  relative pronoun 107, 108, 109
  which 31
Which one/ones? 51
while
  contrast 106
  in past tenses 11
who
  relative pronoun 107, 108, 109
  who 31
  who: subject and object 34
whom 108, 109
who's 35
whose 107, 109
Whose is this? 35
why
  after reason 108
  why 30
will 22, Test C pp58–9
  or be going to 23, 26
will be able to 39, Test E pp106–7
with 81
without + -ing 81
word order
  adjectives 65
  adverbs 77
  subject, verb, object 28
worst 73
would like 93, 94
Would you? 40

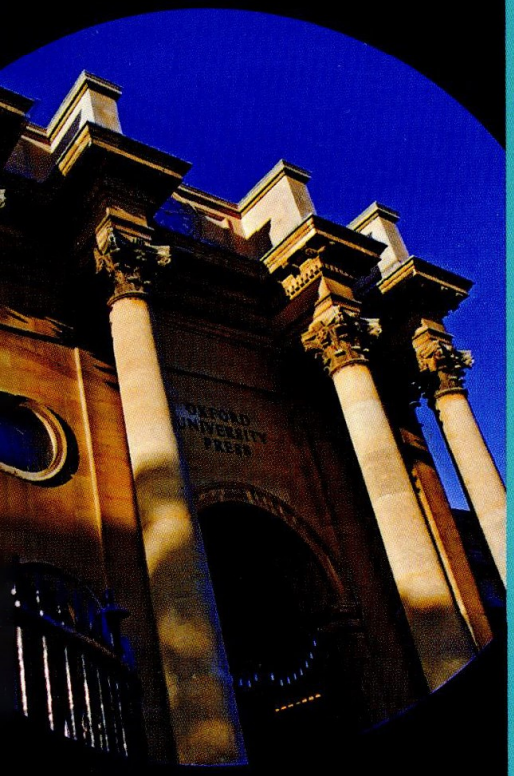
'yes/no' questions 29
yet 15
you 55, 57, 58
your 57
yours 57
yourself 58
yourselves 58

Zero Conditional 97

Oxford University Press is the world's authority on the English language.

As part of the University of Oxford, we are committed to furthering English language learning worldwide.

We continuously bring together our experience, expertise and research to create resources such as this one, helping millions of learners of English to achieve their potential.



Oxford Practice Grammar

Updated edition

Understand the basics

- Learn the **most important** grammar points in English
- **Short explanations** make it easy for you to work in class or on your own

Build your confidence

- Examples help you understand how the grammar is used
- **100s of activities** for you to practise

Pass your exams

- **Progress tests** help you find out what you have learned – and what needs more practice
- Preparation for the **Oxford Test of English** and Cambridge **A2 Key** and **B1 Preliminary** exams

More vocabulary and grammar resources at www.oxfordlearnersdictionaries.com

irlanguage

مرجع زبان ایرانیان

OXFORD UNIVERSITY PRESS

www.oup.com/elt

w.oup.

OXFORD TEST OF ENGLISH

This book can be used as part of preparation for the Oxford Test of English.

www.oxfordtestofenglish.com

CEFR B1 A2 A1